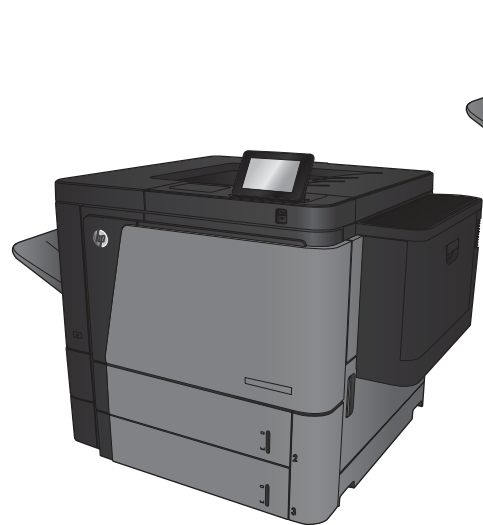




# LASERJET ENTERPRISE M806 LASERJET ENTERPRISE FLOW MFP M830

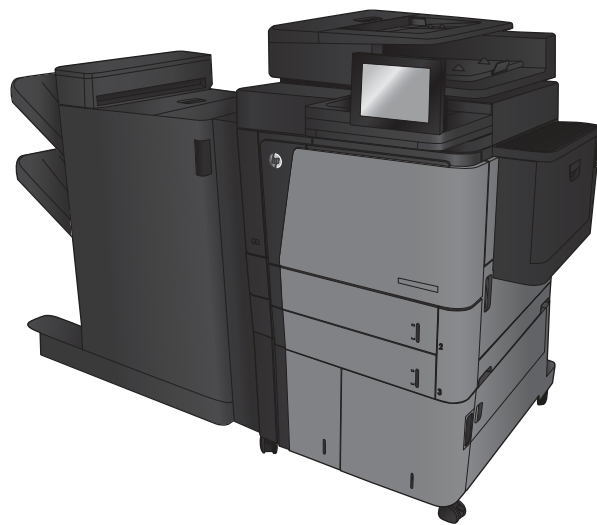
## Repair Manual



M806dn



M806x+



M830z





# HP LaserJet Enterprise M806 and/or HP LaserJet Enterprise Flow MFP M830

Repair Manual

**Copyright and License**

© 2013 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Part number: CZ244-90966

Edition 1, 11/2013

**Trademark Credits**

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.



## Conventions used in this guide

---

 **TIP:** Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.

 **NOTE:** Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.

 **CAUTION:** Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

 **WARNING!** Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

---



---

# Table of contents

|                                                        |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| <b>1 Removal and replacement .....</b>                 | <b>1</b> |
| Removal and replacement strategy .....                 | 2        |
| Cautions during removal and replacement .....          | 2        |
| Required tools .....                                   | 3        |
| Types of screws .....                                  | 3        |
| Service approach .....                                 | 3        |
| Before performing service .....                        | 4        |
| After performing service .....                         | 4        |
| Parts removal order .....                              | 4        |
| Customer-self repair assemblies .....                  | 5        |
| Toner cartridge .....                                  | 5        |
| Reinstall the toner cartridge .....                    | 7        |
| Transfer-roller assembly .....                         | 8        |
| .....                                                  | 8        |
| Duplexer .....                                         | 9        |
| Fuser .....                                            | 10       |
| Remove the fuser .....                                 | 10       |
| Formatter .....                                        | 12       |
| Remove the formatter .....                             | 12       |
| Reinstall the formatter .....                          | 15       |
| Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory(SSM) ..... | 16       |
| Identify the component type .....                      | 16       |
| Remove the HDD .....                                   | 17       |
| Reinstall the HDD .....                                | 18       |
| Remove the SSM (M806 only) .....                       | 19       |
| Reinstall the SSM (M806 only) .....                    | 21       |
| Reinstall the product firmware .....                   | 22       |
| Memory DIMM .....                                      | 24       |
| Remove the memory DIMM .....                           | 24       |
| Reinstall the memory DIMM .....                        | 25       |
| Fax PCA (M830 only) .....                              | 26       |
| Remove the fax PCA (M830 only) .....                   | 26       |

|                                                                       |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Document feeder mylar strip (M830 only) .....                         | 27 |
| Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830 only) .....   | 28 |
| Document feeder white backing (M830 only) .....                       | 30 |
| Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830 only) ..... | 31 |
| Background selector (M830 only) .....                                 | 35 |
| Reinstall the background selector (M830 only) .....                   | 37 |
| Control-panel assembly (M806 only) .....                              | 38 |
| Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M806 only) .....                | 43 |
| Control-panel assembly (M830 only) .....                              | 44 |
| Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830 only) .....                | 47 |
| Keyboard assembly (M830 only) .....                                   | 49 |
| Remove the keyboard assembly (M830 only) .....                        | 49 |
| Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830 only) .....                     | 53 |
| Pickup, feed, and separation rollers and pads .....                   | 57 |
| Document-feeder roller (M830 only) .....                              | 58 |
| Remove the document-feeder roller (M830 only) .....                   | 58 |
| Reinstall the document-feeder roller (M830 only) .....                | 59 |
| Document-feeder separation pad (M830 only) .....                      | 60 |
| Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830 only) .....           | 60 |
| Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830 only) .....        | 62 |
| Tray 1 rollers .....                                                  | 65 |
| Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers .....                                    | 67 |
| Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers .....                                       | 68 |
| Reinstall the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers .....                         | 69 |
| High-capacity input (HCI) rollers .....                               | 70 |
| Reinstall the HCI rollers .....                                       | 71 |
| Covers and doors .....                                                | 72 |
| Location of major components .....                                    | 73 |
| Scanner back cover (M830 only) .....                                  | 75 |
| Scanner left cover (M830 only) .....                                  | 76 |
| Remove the scanner left cover (M830 only) .....                       | 76 |
| Scanner right cover (M830 only) .....                                 | 78 |
| Remove the scanner right cover (M830 only) .....                      | 78 |
| Scanner front cover (M830 only) .....                                 | 80 |
| Remove the scanner front cover (M830 only) .....                      | 80 |
| Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) .....                                      | 84 |
| Tray 2 and Tray 3 .....                                               | 86 |
| Face-up tray (output bin) .....                                       | 87 |
| Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only) .....             | 88 |
| Reinstall the HIP cover (M806 only) .....                             | 90 |
| Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M830 only) .....             | 91 |

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Reinstall the HIP cover (M830 only) .....                | 93  |
| Control-panel base cover (M806 only) .....               | 94  |
| Remove the control-panel base cover (M806 only) .....    | 94  |
| Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806 only) ..... | 96  |
| Right top cover (M806 only) .....                        | 98  |
| Remove the right top cover (M806 only) .....             | 98  |
| Reinstall the right top cover (M806 only) .....          | 100 |
| Left top cover (M806 only) .....                         | 102 |
| Remove the left top cover (M806 only) .....              | 102 |
| Reinstall the left top cover (M806 only) .....           | 103 |
| Front door assembly .....                                | 104 |
| Reinstall the front door assembly .....                  | 105 |
| Front inner cover .....                                  | 106 |
| Remove the front inner cover .....                       | 106 |
| Reinstall the front inner cover .....                    | 108 |
| Left rear cover .....                                    | 109 |
| Reinstall the left rear cover .....                      | 109 |
| Rear cover .....                                         | 110 |
| Reinstall the rear cover .....                           | 111 |
| Right rear cover .....                                   | 113 |
| Remove the right rear cover .....                        | 113 |
| Left door assembly .....                                 | 116 |
| Right door assembly .....                                | 118 |
| Remove the right door assembly .....                     | 118 |
| Reinstall the right door assembly .....                  | 120 |
| Left front cover .....                                   | 121 |
| .....                                                    | 121 |
| Upper left cover (M806 only) .....                       | 122 |
| Remove the upper left cover (M806 only) .....            | 122 |
| Reinstall the upper left cover (M806 only) .....         | 123 |
| Upper left cover (M830 only) .....                       | 124 |
| Remove the upper left cover (M830 only) .....            | 124 |
| Reinstall the upper left cover (M830 only) .....         | 125 |
| Right lower front cover .....                            | 126 |
| Right lower cover .....                                  | 128 |
| Remove the right lower cover .....                       | 128 |
| Main assemblies .....                                    | 130 |
| Location of major components .....                       | 132 |
| Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only) .....            | 135 |
| Remove the SCB (M830 only) .....                         | 135 |
| Install a replacement SCB (M830 only) .....              | 140 |

|                                                           |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Document feeder assembly (M830 only) .....                | 141 |
| Remove the document feeder assembly (M830 only) .....     | 141 |
| Reinstall the document feeder assembly (M830 only) .....  | 145 |
| Scanner assembly (M830 only) .....                        | 146 |
| Remove the scanner assembly (M830 only) .....             | 146 |
| Reinstall the scanner assembly (M830 only) .....          | 149 |
| Cartridge-release lever .....                             | 151 |
| Remove the cartridge-release lever .....                  | 151 |
| Registration-jam-removal knob .....                       | 154 |
| Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob .....         | 155 |
| Power supply fan .....                                    | 157 |
| Remove the power supply fan .....                         | 157 |
| Reinstall the power supply fan .....                      | 158 |
| Cartridge fan .....                                       | 160 |
| Remove the cartridge fan .....                            | 160 |
| Reinstall the cartridge fan .....                         | 163 |
| Controller fan .....                                      | 164 |
| Remove the controller fan .....                           | 164 |
| Reinstall the controller fan .....                        | 166 |
| Paper-pickup assembly .....                               | 167 |
| Remove the paper-pickup assembly .....                    | 167 |
| Registration assembly .....                               | 171 |
| Remove the registration assembly .....                    | 171 |
| Auto-close assembly .....                                 | 173 |
| Remove the auto-close assembly .....                      | 173 |
| Reinstall the auto-close assembly .....                   | 176 |
| Low-voltage power supply (M806 only) .....                | 177 |
| Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806 only) .....     | 177 |
| Low-voltage power supply (M830 only) .....                | 179 |
| Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830 only) .....     | 179 |
| High-voltage power supply (M806 only) .....               | 182 |
| Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806 only) .....    | 182 |
| Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M806 only) ..... | 183 |
| High-voltage power supply (M830 only) .....               | 184 |
| Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830 only) .....    | 184 |
| Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M830 only) ..... | 186 |
| DC controller (M806 only) .....                           | 187 |
| Remove the DC controller (M806 only) .....                | 187 |
| DC controller (M830 only) .....                           | 190 |
| Remove the DC controller (M830 only) .....                | 190 |
| Cartridge contact assembly .....                          | 193 |

|                                                                |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Remove the cartridge contact assembly .....                    | 193 |
| Reinstall the cartridge contact assembly .....                 | 194 |
| Drum motor .....                                               | 195 |
| Remove the drum motor .....                                    | 195 |
| Drive assembly (M806 only) .....                               | 196 |
| Remove the drive assembly (M806 only) .....                    | 196 |
| Reinstall the drive assembly (M806 only) .....                 | 198 |
| Drive assembly (M830 only) .....                               | 199 |
| Remove the drive assembly (M830 only) .....                    | 199 |
| Reinstall the drive assembly (M830 only) .....                 | 201 |
| Transfer paper-feed assembly .....                             | 202 |
| Remove the transfer paper-feed assembly .....                  | 202 |
| Reinstall the transfer paper-feed assembly .....               | 203 |
| Transfer-holder assembly .....                                 | 205 |
| Remove the transfer-holder assembly .....                      | 206 |
| Reinstall the transfer-holder assembly .....                   | 207 |
| Cartridge-lifter assembly (M806 only) .....                    | 208 |
| Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806 only) .....         | 208 |
| Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806 only) .....      | 214 |
| Cartridge-lifter assembly (M830 only) .....                    | 217 |
| Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830 only) .....         | 217 |
| Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830 only) .....      | 224 |
| Driver PCA .....                                               | 228 |
| Remove the driver PCA .....                                    | 228 |
| Reinstall the driver PCA .....                                 | 229 |
| Laser/scanner assembly .....                                   | 231 |
| Remove the laser/scanner assembly .....                        | 231 |
| Face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806 only) .....            | 234 |
| Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806 only) ..... | 234 |
| Paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only) .....                  | 237 |
| Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only) .....       | 237 |
| Reinstall the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only) .....    | 241 |
| Fuser drive assembly .....                                     | 242 |
| Remove the fuser drive assembly .....                          | 243 |
| Reinstall the fuser drive assembly .....                       | 246 |
| Power switch assembly .....                                    | 247 |
| Remove the power switch assembly .....                         | 247 |
| Reinstall the power switch assembly .....                      | 247 |
| Interconnect PCA .....                                         | 248 |
| Remove the interconnect PCA .....                              | 248 |
| Reinstall the interconnect PCA .....                           | 250 |

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Formatter cage .....                                  | 252 |
| Remove the formatter cage .....                       | 252 |
| Reinstall the formatter cage .....                    | 253 |
| Fuser bias contact assembly .....                     | 254 |
| Remove the fuser bias contact assembly .....          | 255 |
| Reinstall the fuser bias contact assembly .....       | 256 |
| Cooling-unit assembly .....                           | 258 |
| Remove the cooling-unit assembly .....                | 258 |
| Reinstall the cooling unit assembly .....             | 260 |
| Tag assembly .....                                    | 261 |
| Remove the tag assembly .....                         | 261 |
| Option-connector assembly .....                       | 263 |
| Remove the option-connector assembly .....            | 263 |
| Reinstall the option-connector assembly .....         | 266 |
| Input accessory .....                                 | 267 |
| High capacity input feeder .....                      | 268 |
| Location of major components .....                    | 268 |
| HCI right tray .....                                  | 272 |
| HCI left tray .....                                   | 273 |
| HCI rear and right-rear corner covers .....           | 274 |
| HCI right door assembly .....                         | 276 |
| Remove the HCI right door assembly .....              | 276 |
| HCI left cover .....                                  | 277 |
| Remove the HCI left cover .....                       | 277 |
| HCI center right cover .....                          | 278 |
| Remove the HCI center right cover .....               | 278 |
| HCI lower right cover .....                           | 280 |
| Remove the HCI lower right cover .....                | 280 |
| HCI right tray pickup motor .....                     | 282 |
| Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor .....          | 282 |
| HCI right tray pickup drive .....                     | 283 |
| Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive .....          | 283 |
| HCI left tray pickup motor .....                      | 284 |
| Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor .....           | 284 |
| HCI left tray pickup drive .....                      | 285 |
| Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive .....           | 285 |
| HCI merge drive assembly .....                        | 286 |
| Remove the HCI merge drive assembly .....             | 286 |
| HCI right tray lifter drive assembly .....            | 287 |
| Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly ..... | 287 |
| HCI left tray lifter drive assembly .....             | 288 |



|                                                             |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly .....        | 288 |
| HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly .....            | 289 |
| Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly ..... | 289 |
| HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly .....             | 290 |
| Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly .....  | 290 |
| HCI right tray automatic close assembly .....               | 291 |
| Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly .....    | 291 |
| HCI left tray automatic close assembly .....                | 292 |
| Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly .....     | 292 |
| HCI right tray pickup assembly .....                        | 293 |
| Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly .....             | 293 |
| HCI left tray pickup assembly .....                         | 295 |
| Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly .....              | 295 |
| HCI merge assembly .....                                    | 297 |
| Remove the HCI merge assembly .....                         | 297 |
| HCI controller PCA .....                                    | 299 |
| Remove the HCI controller PCA .....                         | 299 |
| Finishing accessories .....                                 | 300 |
| Identify the finishing accessories .....                    | 301 |
| Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product .....     | 303 |
| Identifying finishing accessory covers and doors .....      | 305 |
| Shared finishing accessory assemblies .....                 | 307 |
| Upper cover lock assembly .....                             | 309 |
| Right cover assembly .....                                  | 311 |
| Pre-reverse cover assembly .....                            | 312 |
| Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly .....                 | 312 |
| Rear reverse cover assembly .....                           | 314 |
| Remove the rear reverse cover assembly .....                | 314 |
| Upper reverse cover assembly .....                          | 316 |
| Remove the upper reverse cover assembly .....               | 316 |
| Bin cable guide cover .....                                 | 317 |
| Reinstall the bin cable guide cover .....                   | 320 |
| Open/closed stepped cover assembly .....                    | 321 |
| Upper stepped cover assembly .....                          | 322 |
| Lower stepped cover assembly .....                          | 324 |
| Remove the lower stepped cover assembly .....               | 324 |
| Reinstall the lower stepped cover .....                     | 327 |
| Top door assembly .....                                     | 328 |
| Front door .....                                            | 330 |
| Remove the front door .....                                 | 330 |
| Remove only the front door .....                            | 331 |

|                                                               |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Inner upper cover assembly .....                              | 333 |
| Inner upper cover assembly (remove) .....                     | 334 |
| Clutch assembly (front side) .....                            | 336 |
| Remove the clutch assembly (front side) .....                 | 336 |
| Sensor switch assembly .....                                  | 337 |
| Remove the sensor switch assembly .....                       | 337 |
| Inner lower cover assembly .....                              | 339 |
| Inner lower cover assembly (remove) .....                     | 341 |
| Front foot cover assembly .....                               | 344 |
| Remove the front foot cover assembly .....                    | 344 |
| Lower lock release handle assembly .....                      | 347 |
| Remove the lower lock release handle cover assembly .....     | 347 |
| Rear cover assembly .....                                     | 349 |
| Remove the rear cover assembly .....                          | 349 |
| Remove only the rear cover .....                              | 351 |
| Main controller PCA assembly .....                            | 353 |
| Remove the main controller PCA assembly .....                 | 353 |
| Entrance upper guide assembly .....                           | 368 |
| Remove the entrance upper guide assembly .....                | 368 |
| Rear foot cover assembly .....                                | 371 |
| Remove the rear foot cover assembly .....                     | 371 |
| Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly ..... | 375 |
| Remove the stack wall upper cover assembly .....              | 375 |
| Upper crossmember assembly .....                              | 378 |
| Remove the upper crossmember assembly .....                   | 378 |
| Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly .....                | 386 |
| Paper feed drive assembly .....                               | 390 |
| Remove the paper feed drive assembly .....                    | 390 |
| Pressure roller assembly .....                                | 392 |
| Remove the pressure roller assembly .....                     | 392 |
| Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies .....                | 397 |
| Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assembly .....       | 397 |
| Reinstall the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies .....  | 400 |
| Height wall assembly .....                                    | 401 |
| Remove the height wall center assembly .....                  | 401 |
| Reinstall the height wall assembly .....                      | 402 |
| Paper face sensor and flag assembly .....                     | 403 |
| Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly .....          | 403 |
| Staple sub assembly .....                                     | 408 |
| Remove the staple sub assembly .....                          | 408 |
| Staple connecting cable assembly .....                        | 411 |

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Remove the staple connecting cable assembly .....       | 411 |
| Staple assembly .....                                   | 413 |
| Remove the staple assembly .....                        | 413 |
| Paper detect holder assembly .....                      | 417 |
| Remove the paper detect holder assembly .....           | 417 |
| Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly .....        | 418 |
| Operation tray assembly .....                           | 419 |
| Remove the operation tray assembly .....                | 420 |
| Reinstall the operation tray assembly .....             | 426 |
| Swing guide assembly .....                              | 430 |
| Remove the swing guide assembly .....                   | 431 |
| Reinstall the swing guide assembly .....                | 437 |
| Return roller assembly .....                            | 441 |
| Remove the return roller assembly .....                 | 442 |
| Clutch assembly (rear side) .....                       | 443 |
| Remove the clutch assembly (rear side) .....            | 443 |
| Stack ejection motor assembly .....                     | 446 |
| Remove the stack ejection motor assembly .....          | 446 |
| Press motor assembly .....                              | 450 |
| Remove the press motor assembly .....                   | 450 |
| Common driver PCA assembly .....                        | 454 |
| Remove the common controller PCA .....                  | 454 |
| Interface cable assembly .....                          | 456 |
| Remove the interface cable assembly .....               | 456 |
| Reverse driver PCA assembly .....                       | 458 |
| Remove the reverse driver PCA assembly .....            | 458 |
| Reverse assembly .....                                  | 459 |
| Remove the reverse assembly .....                       | 459 |
| Paper pass assembly .....                               | 462 |
| Remove the paper pass assembly .....                    | 462 |
| Booklet maker accessory .....                           | 466 |
| Knob .....                                              | 467 |
| Saddle output bin assembly .....                        | 468 |
| Reinstall the saddle output bin .....                   | 469 |
| Right cover assembly (BM PCA) .....                     | 470 |
| Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA) .....          | 470 |
| Booklet maker controller PCA .....                      | 471 |
| Remove the booklet maker controller PCA .....           | 471 |
| Inner side plate assembly .....                         | 472 |
| Remove the inner side plate assembly .....              | 472 |
| Before reinstalling the inner side plate assembly ..... | 476 |

|                                                                       |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Guide sensor assembly .....                                           | 479 |
| Remove the guide sensor assembly .....                                | 479 |
| Guide motor assembly .....                                            | 481 |
| Remove the guide motor assembly .....                                 | 481 |
| Saddle motor assembly .....                                           | 483 |
| Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM) .....                    | 483 |
| Saddle feed motor assembly .....                                      | 485 |
| Remove the saddle feed assembly .....                                 | 485 |
| Folding-motor mount assembly .....                                    | 489 |
| Remove the motor mount assembly .....                                 | 489 |
| Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly .....                      | 493 |
| Delivery switch mount assembly .....                                  | 494 |
| Remove the delivery switch mount assembly .....                       | 494 |
| Saddle stapler assembly .....                                         | 497 |
| Remove the saddle stapler assembly .....                              | 497 |
| Lower left guide assembly .....                                       | 499 |
| Remove the lower left guide assembly .....                            | 499 |
| Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly .....                     | 501 |
| Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly .....          | 501 |
| Saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly .....                      | 503 |
| Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly .....           | 503 |
| Saddle guide assembly .....                                           | 505 |
| Remove the saddle guide assembly .....                                | 506 |
| Reinstall the saddle guide assembly .....                             | 509 |
| Saddle feed assembly .....                                            | 511 |
| Remove the saddle feed assembly .....                                 | 511 |
| Saddle assembly .....                                                 | 514 |
| Remove the saddle assembly .....                                      | 515 |
| Reinstall the saddle assembly .....                                   | 523 |
| Upper delivery guide assembly .....                                   | 524 |
| Remove the upper delivery guide assembly .....                        | 524 |
| Saddle paper delivery assembly .....                                  | 526 |
| Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly .....                       | 526 |
| Saddle rear end sensor assembly .....                                 | 531 |
| Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly .....                      | 531 |
| Stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker with hole punch accessories ..... | 537 |
| Punch controller PCA assembly .....                                   | 538 |
| Remove the punch controller PCA assembly .....                        | 538 |
| Dust collector assembly .....                                         | 539 |
| Punch inner cover assembly .....                                      | 540 |
| Remove the punch inner cover assembly .....                           | 540 |

|                                                       |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Punch top cover .....                                 | 541        |
| Remove the punch top cover .....                      | 541        |
| Punch hole assembly .....                             | 545        |
| Remove the punch hole assembly .....                  | 545        |
| Reinstall the punch hole assembly .....               | 548        |
| <b>2 Parts and diagrams .....</b>                     | <b>551</b> |
| Order parts by authorized service providers .....     | 552        |
| Order parts, accessories, and supplies .....          | 552        |
| Related documentation and software .....              | 552        |
| Supplies part numbers .....                           | 553        |
| Customer self-repair parts .....                      | 553        |
| Service replacement parts .....                       | 555        |
| Accessories .....                                     | 556        |
| How to use the parts lists and diagrams .....         | 556        |
| Assembly locations .....                              | 557        |
| Base product (no optional trays or accessories) ..... | 557        |
| Document feeder and scanner (M830) .....              | 560        |
| High capacity input (HCI) feeder .....                | 561        |
| Finishing accessories .....                           | 562        |
| Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) .....   | 564        |
| Document feeder assemblies (M830) .....               | 566        |
| Scanner assemblies (M830) .....                       | 570        |
| Covers .....                                          | 572        |
| Internal assemblies .....                             | 574        |
| Internal assemblies (1 of 4) .....                    | 574        |
| Internal assemblies (2 of 4) .....                    | 576        |
| Internal assemblies (3 of 4) .....                    | 578        |
| Internal assemblies (4 of 4) .....                    | 580        |
| 3500-sheet paper feeder (HCI) .....                   | 582        |
| 3500-sheet paper feeder covers .....                  | 582        |
| 3500-sheet paper deck components .....                | 584        |
| Stapler stacker/booklet maker .....                   | 588        |
| Stapler stacker covers .....                          | 588        |
| Booklet maker covers .....                            | 590        |
| Finisher main body (1 of 3) .....                     | 592        |
| Finisher main body (2 of 3) .....                     | 594        |
| Finisher main body (3 of 3) .....                     | 596        |
| Stapler/stacker finisher main body .....              | 598        |
| Booklet maker finisher main body .....                | 600        |
| Booklet maker saddle assembly .....                   | 602        |

Alphabetical parts list ..... 606

Numerical parts list ..... 617

**Index ..... 629**

---

# List of tables

|            |                                                                  |     |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 1-1  | Covers and doors .....                                           | 73  |
| Table 1-2  | Main assemblies (1 of 2) .....                                   | 132 |
| Table 1-3  | Main assemblies (2 of 2) .....                                   | 133 |
| Table 1-4  | Printed circuit assemblies (PCAs) .....                          | 134 |
| Table 1-5  | External covers and doors .....                                  | 268 |
| Table 1-6  | Main assemblies (1 of 2) .....                                   | 269 |
| Table 1-7  | Main assemblies (2 of 2) .....                                   | 270 |
| Table 1-8  | Printed circuit assembly (PCA) .....                             | 271 |
| Table 1-9  | Finishing accessory covers and doors (1 of 2) .....              | 305 |
| Table 1-10 | Finishing accessory covers and doors (2 of 2) .....              | 306 |
| Table 1-11 | DIPSW settings .....                                             | 364 |
| Table 1-12 | Do not use these DIPSW settings .....                            | 364 |
| Table 2-1  | Order parts, accessories, and supplies .....                     | 552 |
| Table 2-2  | Related documentation and software .....                         | 552 |
| Table 2-3  | Supplies part numbers .....                                      | 553 |
| Table 2-4  | Customer self-repair parts .....                                 | 553 |
| Table 2-5  | Service replacement parts .....                                  | 555 |
| Table 2-6  | M830 product integrated scanner assembly (ISA) .....             | 557 |
| Table 2-7  | Base product (no optional trays or accessories) .....            | 558 |
| Table 2-8  | Document feeder and scanner (M830) .....                         | 560 |
| Table 2-9  | High capacity input (HCI) feeder covers .....                    | 561 |
| Table 2-10 | Stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker with hole punch covers ..... | 562 |
| Table 2-11 | Booklet maker only covers .....                                  | 563 |
| Table 2-12 | Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) .....              | 565 |
| Table 2-13 | Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) .....                  | 567 |
| Table 2-14 | Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) .....                  | 569 |
| Table 2-15 | Scanner assemblies .....                                         | 571 |
| Table 2-16 | Covers .....                                                     | 573 |
| Table 2-17 | Internal assemblies (1 of 4) .....                               | 575 |
| Table 2-18 | Internal assemblies (2 of 4) .....                               | 577 |
| Table 2-19 | Internal assemblies (3 of 4) .....                               | 579 |
| Table 2-20 | Internal assemblies (4 of 4) .....                               | 581 |

|            |                                          |     |
|------------|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 2-21 | 3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) .....   | 583 |
| Table 2-22 | 3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) .....   | 585 |
| Table 2-23 | 3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) .....   | 587 |
| Table 2-24 | Stapler stacker covers .....             | 589 |
| Table 2-25 | Booklet maker covers .....               | 591 |
| Table 2-26 | Finisher main body (1 of 3) .....        | 593 |
| Table 2-27 | Finisher main body (2 of 3) .....        | 595 |
| Table 2-28 | Finisher main body (3 of 3) .....        | 597 |
| Table 2-29 | Stapler/stacker finisher main body ..... | 599 |
| Table 2-30 | Booklet maker finisher main body .....   | 601 |
| Table 2-31 | Booklet maker saddle assembly .....      | 605 |
| Table 2-32 | Alphabetical parts list .....            | 606 |
| Table 2-33 | Numerical parts list .....               | 617 |



---

# List of figures

|             |                                                                        |    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 1-1  | Screwdrivers .....                                                     | 3  |
| Figure 1-2  | Remove the toner cartridge (1 of 3) .....                              | 5  |
| Figure 1-3  | Remove the toner cartridge (2 of 3) .....                              | 5  |
| Figure 1-4  | Remove the toner cartridge (3 of 3) .....                              | 6  |
| Figure 1-5  | Reinstall the toner cartridge .....                                    | 7  |
| Figure 1-6  | Remove the transfer-roller assembly (1 of 2) .....                     | 8  |
| Figure 1-7  | Remove the transfer-roller assembly (2 of 2) .....                     | 8  |
| Figure 1-8  | Remove the duplexer (1 of 2) .....                                     | 9  |
| Figure 1-9  | Remove the duplexer (2 of 2) .....                                     | 9  |
| Figure 1-10 | Remove the fuser (1 of 3) .....                                        | 10 |
| Figure 1-11 | Remove the fuser (2 of 3) .....                                        | 10 |
| Figure 1-12 | Remove the fuser (3 of 3) .....                                        | 11 |
| Figure 1-13 | Remove the formatter (1 of 3) .....                                    | 12 |
| Figure 1-14 | Remove the formatter (2 of 3) .....                                    | 13 |
| Figure 1-15 | Remove the formatter (3 of 3) .....                                    | 13 |
| Figure 1-16 | Remove the HDD (1 of 2) .....                                          | 17 |
| Figure 1-17 | Remove the HDD (2 of 2) .....                                          | 17 |
| Figure 1-18 | Reinstall the HDD .....                                                | 18 |
| Figure 1-19 | Remove the SSM (M806; 1 of 3) .....                                    | 19 |
| Figure 1-20 | Remove the SSM (M806; 2 of 3) .....                                    | 19 |
| Figure 1-21 | Remove the SSM (M806; 3 of 3) .....                                    | 20 |
| Figure 1-22 | Reinstall the SSM (M806; 1 of 2) .....                                 | 21 |
| Figure 1-23 | Reinstall the SSM (M806; 2 of 2) .....                                 | 21 |
| Figure 1-24 | Remove the memory DIMM (1 of 2) .....                                  | 24 |
| Figure 1-25 | Remove the memory DIMM (2 of 2) .....                                  | 24 |
| Figure 1-26 | Reinstall the memory DIMM .....                                        | 25 |
| Figure 1-27 | Remove the fax PCA (M830; 1 of 2) .....                                | 26 |
| Figure 1-28 | Remove the fax PCA (M830; 2 of 2) .....                                | 26 |
| Figure 1-29 | Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M830; 1 of 3) .....            | 27 |
| Figure 1-30 | Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M830; 2 of 3) .....            | 27 |
| Figure 1-31 | Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M830; 3 of 3) .....            | 28 |
| Figure 1-32 | Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830; 1 of 3) ..... | 28 |

|             |                                                                    |    |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 1-33 | Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830; 2 of 3)   | 29 |
| Figure 1-34 | Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830; 3 of 3)   | 29 |
| Figure 1-35 | Remove the document feeder white backing (M830; 1 of 3)            | 30 |
| Figure 1-36 | Remove the document feeder white backing (M830; 2 of 3)            | 30 |
| Figure 1-37 | Remove the document feeder white backing (M830; 3 of 3)            | 31 |
| Figure 1-38 | Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 1 of 6) | 31 |
| Figure 1-39 | Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 2 of 6) | 32 |
| Figure 1-40 | Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 3 of 6) | 32 |
| Figure 1-41 | Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 4 of 6) | 33 |
| Figure 1-42 | Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 5 of 6) | 33 |
| Figure 1-43 | Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 6 of 6) | 34 |
| Figure 1-44 | Remove the background selector (M830; 1 of 4)                      | 35 |
| Figure 1-45 | Remove the background selector (M830; 2 of 4)                      | 35 |
| Figure 1-46 | Remove the background selector (M830; 3 of 4)                      | 36 |
| Figure 1-47 | Remove the background selector (M830; 4 of 4)                      | 36 |
| Figure 1-48 | Reinstall the background selector (M830)                           | 37 |
| Figure 1-49 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 1 of 10)                  | 38 |
| Figure 1-50 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 2 of 10)                  | 38 |
| Figure 1-51 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 3 of 10)                  | 39 |
| Figure 1-52 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 4 of 10)                  | 39 |
| Figure 1-53 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 5 of 10)                  | 40 |
| Figure 1-54 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 6 of 10)                  | 40 |
| Figure 1-55 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 7 of 10)                  | 41 |
| Figure 1-56 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 8 of 10)                  | 41 |
| Figure 1-57 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 9 of 10)                  | 42 |
| Figure 1-58 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 10 of 10)                 | 42 |
| Figure 1-59 | Reinstall the control panel (M806)                                 | 43 |
| Figure 1-60 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 1 of 7)                   | 44 |
| Figure 1-61 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 2 of 7)                   | 44 |
| Figure 1-62 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 3 of 7)                   | 45 |
| Figure 1-63 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 4 of 7)                   | 45 |
| Figure 1-64 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 5 of 7)                   | 46 |
| Figure 1-65 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 6 of 7)                   | 46 |
| Figure 1-66 | Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 7 of 7)                   | 47 |
| Figure 1-67 | Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830; 1 of 3)                | 47 |
| Figure 1-68 | Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830; 2 of 3)                | 48 |
| Figure 1-69 | Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830; 3 of 3)                | 48 |
| Figure 1-70 | Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 1 of 7)                        | 49 |
| Figure 1-71 | Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 2 of 7)                        | 50 |
| Figure 1-72 | Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 3 of 7)                        | 50 |
| Figure 1-73 | Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 4 of 7)                        | 51 |

|              |                                                             |    |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 1-74  | Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 5 of 7)                 | 51 |
| Figure 1-75  | Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 6 of 7)                 | 52 |
| Figure 1-76  | Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 7 of 7)                 | 52 |
| Figure 1-77  | Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 1 of 7)              | 53 |
| Figure 1-78  | Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 2 of 7)              | 53 |
| Figure 1-79  | Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 3 of 7)              | 54 |
| Figure 1-80  | Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 4 of 7)              | 54 |
| Figure 1-81  | Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 5 of 7)              | 55 |
| Figure 1-82  | Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 6 of 7)              | 55 |
| Figure 1-83  | Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 7 of 7)              | 56 |
| Figure 1-84  | Remove the document-feeder roller (M830; 1 of 3)            | 58 |
| Figure 1-85  | Remove the document-feeder roller (M830; 2 of 3)            | 58 |
| Figure 1-86  | Remove the document-feeder roller (M830; 3 of 3)            | 59 |
| Figure 1-87  | Remove the document-feeder roller (M830)                    | 59 |
| Figure 1-88  | Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 1 of 4)    | 60 |
| Figure 1-89  | Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 2 of 4)    | 60 |
| Figure 1-90  | Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 3 of 4)    | 61 |
| Figure 1-91  | Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 4 of 4)    | 61 |
| Figure 1-92  | Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 1 of 5) | 62 |
| Figure 1-93  | Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 2 of 5) | 62 |
| Figure 1-94  | Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 3 of 5) | 63 |
| Figure 1-95  | Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 4 of 5) | 63 |
| Figure 1-96  | Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 5 of 5) | 64 |
| Figure 1-97  | Remove the Tray 1 rollers (1 of 3)                          | 65 |
| Figure 1-98  | Remove the Tray 1 rollers (2 of 3)                          | 65 |
| Figure 1-99  | Remove the Tray 1 rollers (3 of 3)                          | 66 |
| Figure 1-100 | Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers (1 of 2)                       | 67 |
| Figure 1-101 | Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers (2 of 2)                       | 67 |
| Figure 1-102 | Remove the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers (1 of 2)               | 68 |
| Figure 1-103 | Remove the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers (2 of 2)               | 68 |
| Figure 1-104 | Reinstall the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers                     | 69 |
| Figure 1-105 | Remove the HCI rollers (1 of 2)                             | 70 |
| Figure 1-106 | Remove the HCI rollers (2 of 2)                             | 70 |
| Figure 1-107 | Reinstall the HCI rollers                                   | 71 |
| Figure 1-108 | Covers and doors                                            | 73 |
| Figure 1-109 | Remove the scanner back cover (M830; 1 of 2)                | 75 |
| Figure 1-110 | Remove the scanner back cover (M830; 2 of 2)                | 75 |
| Figure 1-111 | Remove the scanner left cover (M830; 1 of 3)                | 76 |
| Figure 1-112 | Remove the scanner left cover (M830; 2 of 3)                | 76 |
| Figure 1-113 | Remove the scanner left cover (M830; 3 of 3)                | 77 |
| Figure 1-114 | Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 1 of 4)               | 78 |

|              |                                                       |     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-115 | Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 2 of 4)         | 78  |
| Figure 1-116 | Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 3 of 4)         | 79  |
| Figure 1-117 | Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 4 of 4)         | 79  |
| Figure 1-118 | Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 1 of 7)         | 80  |
| Figure 1-119 | Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 2 of 7)         | 81  |
| Figure 1-120 | Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 3 of 7)         | 81  |
| Figure 1-121 | Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 4 of 7)         | 82  |
| Figure 1-122 | Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 5 of 7)         | 82  |
| Figure 1-123 | Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 6 of 7)         | 83  |
| Figure 1-124 | Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 7 of 7)         | 83  |
| Figure 1-125 | Remove Tray 1 (1 of 3)                                | 84  |
| Figure 1-126 | Remove Tray 1 (2 of 3)                                | 84  |
| Figure 1-127 | Remove Tray 1 (3 of 3)                                | 85  |
| Figure 1-128 | Remove Tray 2 and Tray 3                              | 86  |
| Figure 1-129 | Remove the face-up tray                               | 87  |
| Figure 1-130 | Remove the HIP cover (M806; 1 of 3)                   | 88  |
| Figure 1-131 | Remove the HIP cover (M806; 2 of 3)                   | 88  |
| Figure 1-132 | Remove the HIP cover (M806; 3 of 3)                   | 89  |
| Figure 1-133 | Reinstall the HIP cover (M806; 1 of 2)                | 90  |
| Figure 1-134 | Reinstall the HIP cover (M806; 2 of 2)                | 90  |
| Figure 1-135 | Remove the HIP cover (M830; 1 of 3)                   | 91  |
| Figure 1-136 | Remove the HIP cover (M830; 2 of 3)                   | 91  |
| Figure 1-137 | Remove the HIP cover (M830; 3 of 3)                   | 92  |
| Figure 1-138 | Reinstall the HIP cover (M830; 1 of 2)                | 93  |
| Figure 1-139 | Reinstall the HIP cover (M830; 2 of 2)                | 93  |
| Figure 1-140 | Remove the control-panel base cover (M806; 1 of 3)    | 94  |
| Figure 1-141 | Remove the control-panel base cover (M806; 2 of 3)    | 94  |
| Figure 1-142 | Remove the control-panel base cover (M806; 3 of 3)    | 95  |
| Figure 1-143 | Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806; 1 of 3) | 96  |
| Figure 1-144 | Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806; 2 of 3) | 96  |
| Figure 1-145 | Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806; 3 of 3) | 97  |
| Figure 1-146 | Remove the right top cover (M806; 1 of 4)             | 98  |
| Figure 1-147 | Remove the right top cover (M806; 2 of 4)             | 99  |
| Figure 1-148 | Remove the right top cover (M806; 3 of 4)             | 99  |
| Figure 1-149 | Remove the right top cover (M806; 4 of 4)             | 100 |
| Figure 1-150 | Reinstall the right top cover (M806; 1 of 3)          | 100 |
| Figure 1-151 | Reinstall the right top cover (M806; 2 of 3)          | 101 |
| Figure 1-152 | Reinstall the right top cover (M806; 3 of 3)          | 101 |
| Figure 1-153 | Remove the left top cover (M806; 1 of 2)              | 102 |
| Figure 1-154 | Remove the left top cover (M806; 2 of 2)              | 103 |
| Figure 1-155 | Reinstall the left top cover (M806)                   | 103 |

|              |                                                   |     |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-156 | Remove the front door assembly (1 of 3) .....     | 104 |
| Figure 1-157 | Remove the front door assembly (2 of 3) .....     | 104 |
| Figure 1-158 | Remove the front door assembly (3 of 3) .....     | 105 |
| Figure 1-159 | Reinstall the front door assembly .....           | 105 |
| Figure 1-160 | Remove the front inner cover (1 of 3) .....       | 106 |
| Figure 1-161 | Remove the front inner cover (2 of 3) .....       | 107 |
| Figure 1-162 | Remove the front inner cover (3 of 3) .....       | 107 |
| Figure 1-163 | Remove the left rear cover. ....                  | 109 |
| Figure 1-164 | Reinstall the left rear cover .....               | 109 |
| Figure 1-165 | Remove the rear cover (1 of 3) .....              | 110 |
| Figure 1-166 | Remove the rear cover (2 of 3) .....              | 110 |
| Figure 1-167 | Remove the rear cover (3 of 3) .....              | 111 |
| Figure 1-168 | Reinstall the rear cover (1 of 2) .....           | 111 |
| Figure 1-169 | Reinstall the rear cover (2 of 2) .....           | 112 |
| Figure 1-170 | Remove the right rear cover (1 of 5) .....        | 113 |
| Figure 1-171 | Remove the right rear cover (2 of 5) .....        | 113 |
| Figure 1-172 | Remove the right rear cover (3 of 5) .....        | 114 |
| Figure 1-173 | Remove the right rear cover (4 of 5) .....        | 114 |
| Figure 1-174 | Remove the right rear cover (5 of 5) .....        | 115 |
| Figure 1-175 | Remove the left door assembly (1 of 4). ....      | 116 |
| Figure 1-176 | Remove the left door assembly (2 of 4). ....      | 116 |
| Figure 1-177 | Remove the left door assembly (3 of 4). ....      | 117 |
| Figure 1-178 | Remove the left door assembly (4 of 4). ....      | 117 |
| Figure 1-179 | Remove the right door assembly (1 of 3). ....     | 118 |
| Figure 1-180 | Remove the right door assembly (2 of 3). ....     | 118 |
| Figure 1-181 | Remove the right door assembly (3 of 3). ....     | 119 |
| Figure 1-182 | Reinstall the right door assembly .....           | 120 |
| Figure 1-183 | Reinstall the right door assembly .....           | 120 |
| Figure 1-184 | Remove the left front cover (1 of 2). ....        | 121 |
| Figure 1-185 | Remove the left front cover (2 of 2). ....        | 121 |
| Figure 1-186 | Remove the upper left cover (M806; 1 of 2). ....  | 122 |
| Figure 1-187 | Remove the upper left cover (M806; 2 of 2). ....  | 123 |
| Figure 1-188 | Reinstall the upper left cover (M806) .....       | 123 |
| Figure 1-189 | Remove the upper left cover (M830; 1 of 2) .....  | 124 |
| Figure 1-190 | Remove the upper left cover (M830; 2 of 2) .....  | 124 |
| Figure 1-191 | Reinstall the upper left cover (M830) .....       | 125 |
| Figure 1-192 | Remove the right lower front cover (1 of 3). .... | 126 |
| Figure 1-193 | Remove the right lower front cover (2 of 3). .... | 126 |
| Figure 1-194 | Remove the right lower front cover (3 of 3) ..... | 127 |
| Figure 1-195 | Remove the right lower cover (1 of 2). ....       | 128 |
| Figure 1-196 | Remove the right lower cover (2 of 2). ....       | 129 |

|              |                                                      |     |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-197 | Main assemblies (1 of 2)                             | 132 |
| Figure 1-198 | Main assemblies (2 of 2)                             | 133 |
| Figure 1-199 | Printed circuit assemblies (PCAs)                    | 134 |
| Figure 1-200 | Remove the SCB (M830; 1 of 10)                       | 135 |
| Figure 1-201 | Remove the SCB (M830; 2 of 10)                       | 135 |
| Figure 1-202 | Remove the SCB (M830; 3 of 10)                       | 136 |
| Figure 1-203 | Remove the SCB (M830; 4 of 10)                       | 136 |
| Figure 1-204 | Remove the SCB (M830; 5 of 10)                       | 137 |
| Figure 1-205 | Remove the SCB (M830; 6 of 10)                       | 137 |
| Figure 1-206 | Remove the SCB (M830; 7 of 10)                       | 138 |
| Figure 1-207 | Remove the SCB (M830; 8 of 10)                       | 138 |
| Figure 1-208 | Remove the SCB (M830; 9 of 10)                       | 139 |
| Figure 1-209 | Remove the SCB (M830; 10 of 10)                      | 139 |
| Figure 1-210 | Install a replacement SCB (M830)                     | 140 |
| Figure 1-211 | Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 1 of 7)   | 141 |
| Figure 1-212 | Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 2 of 7)   | 142 |
| Figure 1-213 | Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 3 of 7)   | 142 |
| Figure 1-214 | Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 4 of 7)   | 143 |
| Figure 1-215 | Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 5 of 7)   | 143 |
| Figure 1-216 | Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 6 of 7)   | 144 |
| Figure 1-217 | Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 7 of 7)   | 144 |
| Figure 1-218 | Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 1 of 4)           | 146 |
| Figure 1-219 | Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 2 of 4)           | 147 |
| Figure 1-220 | Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 3 of 4)           | 147 |
| Figure 1-221 | Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 4 of 4)           | 148 |
| Figure 1-222 | Scanner assembly grommets (M830)                     | 149 |
| Figure 1-223 | Scanner assembly clips (M830)                        | 150 |
| Figure 1-224 | Remove the cartridge-release lever (1 of 4)          | 151 |
| Figure 1-225 | Remove the cartridge-release lever (2 of 4)          | 152 |
| Figure 1-226 | Remove the cartridge-release lever (3 of 4)          | 152 |
| Figure 1-227 | Remove the cartridge-release lever (4 of 4)          | 153 |
| Figure 1-228 | Remove the registration-jam-removal knob (1 of 3)    | 154 |
| Figure 1-229 | Remove the registration-jam-removal knob (2 of 3)    | 154 |
| Figure 1-230 | Remove the registration-jam-removal knob (3 of 3)    | 155 |
| Figure 1-231 | Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob (1 of 3) | 155 |
| Figure 1-232 | Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob (2 of 3) | 156 |
| Figure 1-233 | Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob (3 of 3) | 156 |
| Figure 1-234 | Remove the power supply fan (1 of 2)                 | 157 |
| Figure 1-235 | Remove the power supply fan (2 of 2)                 | 157 |
| Figure 1-236 | Reinstall the power supply fan (1 of 3)              | 158 |
| Figure 1-237 | Reinstall the power supply fan (2 of 3)              | 158 |

|              |                                                           |     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-238 | Reinstall the power supply fan (3 of 3) .....             | 159 |
| Figure 1-239 | Remove the cartridge fan (1 of 5) .....                   | 160 |
| Figure 1-240 | Remove the cartridge fan (2 of 5) .....                   | 161 |
| Figure 1-241 | Remove the cartridge fan (3 of 5) .....                   | 161 |
| Figure 1-242 | Remove the cartridge fan (4 of 5) .....                   | 162 |
| Figure 1-243 | Remove the cartridge fan (5 of 5) .....                   | 162 |
| Figure 1-244 | Reinstall the cartridge fan .....                         | 163 |
| Figure 1-245 | Remove the controller fan (1 of 3) .....                  | 164 |
| Figure 1-246 | Remove the controller fan (2 of 3) .....                  | 164 |
| Figure 1-247 | Remove the controller fan (3 of 3) .....                  | 165 |
| Figure 1-248 | Reinstall the controller fan (1 of 2) .....               | 166 |
| Figure 1-249 | Reinstall the controller fan (2 of 2) .....               | 166 |
| Figure 1-250 | Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1 of 7) .....           | 167 |
| Figure 1-251 | Remove the paper-pickup assembly (2 of 7) .....           | 168 |
| Figure 1-252 | Remove the paper-pickup assembly (3 of 7) .....           | 168 |
| Figure 1-253 | Remove the paper-pickup assembly (4 of 7) .....           | 169 |
| Figure 1-254 | Remove the paper-pickup assembly (5 of 7) .....           | 169 |
| Figure 1-255 | Remove the paper-pickup assembly (6 of 7) .....           | 170 |
| Figure 1-256 | Remove the paper-pickup assembly (7 of 7) .....           | 170 |
| Figure 1-257 | Remove the registration assembly (1 of 3) .....           | 171 |
| Figure 1-258 | Remove the registration assembly (2 of 3) .....           | 172 |
| Figure 1-259 | Remove the registration assembly (3 of 3) .....           | 172 |
| Figure 1-260 | Remove the auto-close assembly (1 of 5) .....             | 173 |
| Figure 1-261 | Remove the auto-close assembly (2 of 5) .....             | 174 |
| Figure 1-262 | Remove the auto-close assembly (3 of 5) .....             | 174 |
| Figure 1-263 | Remove the auto-close assembly (4 of 5) .....             | 175 |
| Figure 1-264 | Remove the auto-close assembly (5 of 5) .....             | 175 |
| Figure 1-265 | Reinstall the auto-close assembly .....                   | 176 |
| Figure 1-266 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 1 of 4) .....  | 177 |
| Figure 1-267 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 2 of 4) .....  | 177 |
| Figure 1-268 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 3 of 4) .....  | 178 |
| Figure 1-269 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 4 of 4) .....  | 178 |
| Figure 1-270 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 1 of 6) .....  | 179 |
| Figure 1-271 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 2 of 6) .....  | 179 |
| Figure 1-272 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 3 of 6) .....  | 180 |
| Figure 1-273 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 4 of 6) .....  | 180 |
| Figure 1-274 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 5 of 6) .....  | 181 |
| Figure 1-275 | Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 6 of 6) .....  | 181 |
| Figure 1-276 | Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806; 1 of 3) ..... | 182 |
| Figure 1-277 | Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806; 2 of 3) ..... | 182 |
| Figure 1-278 | Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806; 3 of 3) ..... | 183 |

|              |                                                        |     |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-279 | Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M806)         | 183 |
| Figure 1-280 | Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 1 of 4)    | 184 |
| Figure 1-281 | Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 2 of 4)    | 184 |
| Figure 1-282 | Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 3 of 4)    | 185 |
| Figure 1-283 | Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 4 of 4)    | 185 |
| Figure 1-284 | Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M830; 1 of 2) | 186 |
| Figure 1-285 | Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M830; 2 of 2) | 186 |
| Figure 1-286 | Remove the DC controller (M806; 1 of 4)                | 187 |
| Figure 1-287 | Remove the DC controller (M806; 2 of 4)                | 188 |
| Figure 1-288 | Remove the DC controller (M806; 3 of 4)                | 188 |
| Figure 1-289 | Remove the DC controller (M806; 4 of 4)                | 189 |
| Figure 1-290 | Remove the DC controller (M830; 1 of 5)                | 190 |
| Figure 1-291 | Remove the DC controller (M830; 2 of 5)                | 191 |
| Figure 1-292 | Remove the DC controller (M830; 3 of 5)                | 191 |
| Figure 1-293 | Remove the DC controller (M830; 4 of 5)                | 192 |
| Figure 1-294 | Remove the DC controller (M830; 5 of 5)                | 192 |
| Figure 1-295 | Remove the cartridge contact assembly (1 of 2)         | 193 |
| Figure 1-296 | Remove the cartridge contact assembly (2 of 2)         | 194 |
| Figure 1-297 | Reinstall the cartridge contact assembly               | 194 |
| Figure 1-298 | Remove the drum motor                                  | 195 |
| Figure 1-299 | Remove the drive assembly (M806; 1 of 3)               | 196 |
| Figure 1-300 | Remove the drive assembly (M806; 2 of 3)               | 197 |
| Figure 1-301 | Remove the drive assembly (M806; 3 of 3)               | 197 |
| Figure 1-302 | Reinstall the drive assembly (M806; 1 of 2)            | 198 |
| Figure 1-303 | Reinstall the drive assembly (M806; 2 of 2)            | 198 |
| Figure 1-304 | Remove the drive assembly (M830; 1 of 3)               | 199 |
| Figure 1-305 | Remove the drive assembly (M830; 2 of 3)               | 200 |
| Figure 1-306 | Remove the drive assembly (M830; 3 of 3)               | 200 |
| Figure 1-307 | Reinstall the drive assembly (M830; 1 of 2)            | 201 |
| Figure 1-308 | Reinstall the drive assembly (M830; 2 of 2)            | 201 |
| Figure 1-309 | Remove the transfer paper-feed assembly (1 of 2)       | 202 |
| Figure 1-310 | Remove the transfer paper-feed assembly (2 of 2)       | 203 |
| Figure 1-311 | Reinstall the transfer paper-feed assembly (1 of 2)    | 203 |
| Figure 1-312 | Reinstall the transfer paper-feed assembly (2 of 2)    | 204 |
| Figure 1-313 | Remove the transfer-holder assembly (1 of 3)           | 206 |
| Figure 1-314 | Remove the transfer-holder assembly (2 of 3)           | 206 |
| Figure 1-315 | Remove the transfer-holder assembly (3 of 3)           | 207 |
| Figure 1-316 | Reinstall the transfer-holder assembly                 | 207 |
| Figure 1-317 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 1 of 11)   | 208 |
| Figure 1-318 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 2 of 11)   | 209 |
| Figure 1-319 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 3 of 11)   | 209 |



|              |                                                        |     |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-320 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 4 of 11)   | 210 |
| Figure 1-321 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 5 of 11)   | 210 |
| Figure 1-322 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 6 of 11)   | 211 |
| Figure 1-323 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 7 of 11)   | 211 |
| Figure 1-324 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 8 of 11)   | 212 |
| Figure 1-325 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 9 of 11)   | 212 |
| Figure 1-326 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 10 of 11)  | 213 |
| Figure 1-327 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 11 of 11)  | 213 |
| Figure 1-328 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 1 of 6) | 214 |
| Figure 1-329 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 2 of 6) | 214 |
| Figure 1-330 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 3 of 6) | 215 |
| Figure 1-331 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 4 of 6) | 215 |
| Figure 1-332 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 5 of 6) | 216 |
| Figure 1-333 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 6 of 6) | 216 |
| Figure 1-334 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 1 of 14)   | 217 |
| Figure 1-335 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 2 of 14)   | 218 |
| Figure 1-336 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 3 of 14)   | 218 |
| Figure 1-337 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 4 of 14)   | 219 |
| Figure 1-338 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 5 of 14)   | 219 |
| Figure 1-339 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 6 of 14)   | 220 |
| Figure 1-340 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 7 of 14)   | 220 |
| Figure 1-341 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 8 of 14)   | 221 |
| Figure 1-342 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 9 of 14)   | 221 |
| Figure 1-343 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 10 of 14)  | 222 |
| Figure 1-344 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 11 of 14)  | 222 |
| Figure 1-345 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 12 of 14)  | 223 |
| Figure 1-346 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 13 of 14)  | 223 |
| Figure 1-347 | Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 14 of 14)  | 224 |
| Figure 1-348 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 1 of 6) | 224 |
| Figure 1-349 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 2 of 6) | 225 |
| Figure 1-350 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 3 of 6) | 225 |
| Figure 1-351 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 4 of 6) | 226 |
| Figure 1-352 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 5 of 6) | 227 |
| Figure 1-353 | Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 6 of 6) | 227 |
| Figure 1-354 | Remove the driver PCA (1 of 2)                         | 228 |
| Figure 1-355 | Remove the driver PCA (2 of 2)                         | 229 |
| Figure 1-356 | Reinstall the driver PCA (1 of 2)                      | 229 |
| Figure 1-357 | Reinstall the driver PCA (2 of 2)                      | 230 |
| Figure 1-358 | Remove the laser/scanner assembly (1 of 4)             | 231 |
| Figure 1-359 | Remove the laser/scanner assembly (2 of 4)             | 232 |
| Figure 1-360 | Remove the laser/scanner assembly (3 of 4)             | 232 |

|              |                                                             |     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-361 | Remove the laser/scanner assembly (4 of 4)                  | 233 |
| Figure 1-362 | Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 1 of 4) | 234 |
| Figure 1-363 | Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 2 of 4) | 235 |
| Figure 1-364 | Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 3 of 4) | 235 |
| Figure 1-365 | Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 4 of 4) | 236 |
| Figure 1-366 | Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 1 of 7)       | 237 |
| Figure 1-367 | Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 2 of 7)       | 238 |
| Figure 1-368 | Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 3 of 7)       | 238 |
| Figure 1-369 | Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 4 of 7)       | 239 |
| Figure 1-370 | Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 5 of 7)       | 239 |
| Figure 1-371 | Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 6 of 7)       | 240 |
| Figure 1-372 | Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 7 of 7)       | 240 |
| Figure 1-373 | Reinstall the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830)            | 241 |
| Figure 1-374 | Remove the fuser drive assembly (1 of 5)                    | 243 |
| Figure 1-375 | Remove the fuser drive assembly (2 of 5)                    | 243 |
| Figure 1-376 | Remove the fuser drive assembly (3 of 5)                    | 244 |
| Figure 1-377 | Remove the fuser drive assembly (4 of 5)                    | 244 |
| Figure 1-378 | Remove the fuser drive assembly (5 of 5)                    | 245 |
| Figure 1-379 | Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (1 of 2)                 | 246 |
| Figure 1-380 | Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (2 of 2)                 | 246 |
| Figure 1-381 | Remove the power switch assembly)                           | 247 |
| Figure 1-382 | Reinstall the power switch assembly                         | 247 |
| Figure 1-383 | Remove the interconnect PCA (1 of 4)                        | 248 |
| Figure 1-384 | Remove the interconnect PCA (2 of 4)                        | 249 |
| Figure 1-385 | Remove the interconnect PCA (3 of 4)                        | 249 |
| Figure 1-386 | Remove the interconnect PCA (4 of 4)                        | 250 |
| Figure 1-387 | Reinstall the interconnect PCA)                             | 250 |
| Figure 1-388 | Reinstall the interconnect PCA)                             | 251 |
| Figure 1-389 | Remove the formatter cage                                   | 252 |
| Figure 1-390 | Reinstall the formatter cage                                | 253 |
| Figure 1-391 | Remove the fuser bias contact assembly (1 of 3)             | 255 |
| Figure 1-392 | Remove the fuser bias contact assembly (2 of 3)             | 255 |
| Figure 1-393 | Remove the fuser bias contact assembly (3 of 3)             | 256 |
| Figure 1-394 | Reinstall the fuser bias contact assembly (1 of 2)          | 256 |
| Figure 1-395 | Reinstall the fuser bias contact assembly (2 of 2)          | 257 |
| Figure 1-396 | Remove the cooling-unit assembly (1 of 5)                   | 258 |
| Figure 1-397 | Remove the cooling-unit assembly (2 of 5)                   | 258 |
| Figure 1-398 | Remove the cooling-unit assembly (3 of 5)                   | 259 |
| Figure 1-399 | Remove the cooling-unit assembly (4 of 5)                   | 259 |
| Figure 1-400 | Remove the cooling-unit assembly (5 of 5)                   | 260 |
| Figure 1-401 | Reinstall the cooling unit assembly                         | 260 |

|              |                                                                |     |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-402 | Remove the tag assembly (1 of 2)                               | 261 |
| Figure 1-403 | Remove the tag assembly (2 of 2)                               | 262 |
| Figure 1-404 | Remove the option-connector assembly (1 of 6)                  | 263 |
| Figure 1-405 | Remove the option-connector assembly (2 of 6)                  | 263 |
| Figure 1-406 | Remove the option-connector assembly (3 of 6)                  | 264 |
| Figure 1-407 | Remove the option-connector assembly (4 of 6)                  | 264 |
| Figure 1-408 | Remove the option-connector assembly (5 of 6)                  | 265 |
| Figure 1-409 | Remove the option-connector assembly (6 of 6)                  | 265 |
| Figure 1-410 | Reinstall the option connector assembly                        | 266 |
| Figure 1-411 | External covers and doors                                      | 268 |
| Figure 1-412 | Main assemblies (1 of 2)                                       | 269 |
| Figure 1-413 | Main assemblies (2 of 2)                                       | 270 |
| Figure 1-414 | Printed circuit assembly (PCA)                                 | 271 |
| Figure 1-415 | Remove the HCI right tray                                      | 272 |
| Figure 1-416 | Remove the HCI left tray                                       | 273 |
| Figure 1-417 | Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (1 of 4)      | 274 |
| Figure 1-418 | Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (2 of 4)      | 274 |
| Figure 1-419 | Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (3 of 4)      | 275 |
| Figure 1-420 | Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (4 of 4)      | 275 |
| Figure 1-421 | Remove the HCI right door assembly (1 of 2)                    | 276 |
| Figure 1-422 | Remove the HCI right door assembly (2 of 2)                    | 276 |
| Figure 1-423 | Remove the HCI left cover (1 of 2)                             | 277 |
| Figure 1-424 | Remove the HCI left cover (2 of 2)                             | 277 |
| Figure 1-425 | Remove the HCI center right cover (1 of 4)                     | 278 |
| Figure 1-426 | Remove the HCI center right cover (2 of 4)                     | 278 |
| Figure 1-427 | Remove the HCI center right cover (3 of 4)                     | 279 |
| Figure 1-428 | Remove the HCI center right cover (4 of 4)                     | 279 |
| Figure 1-429 | Remove the HCI lower right cover (1 of 3)                      | 280 |
| Figure 1-430 | Remove the HCI lower right cover (2 of 3)                      | 280 |
| Figure 1-431 | Remove the HCI lower right cover (3 of 3)                      | 281 |
| Figure 1-432 | Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor                         | 282 |
| Figure 1-433 | Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive                         | 283 |
| Figure 1-434 | Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor.                         | 284 |
| Figure 1-435 | Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive (1 of 2)                 | 285 |
| Figure 1-436 | Remove the HCI merge drive assembly (1 of 2)                   | 286 |
| Figure 1-437 | Remove the HCI merge drive assembly (2 of 2)                   | 286 |
| Figure 1-438 | Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly                | 287 |
| Figure 1-439 | Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly                 | 288 |
| Figure 1-440 | Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2) | 289 |
| Figure 1-441 | Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2) | 289 |
| Figure 1-442 | Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2)  | 290 |

|              |                                                               |     |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-443 | Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2) | 290 |
| Figure 1-444 | Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2)   | 291 |
| Figure 1-445 | Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2)   | 291 |
| Figure 1-446 | Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2)    | 292 |
| Figure 1-447 | Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2)    | 292 |
| Figure 1-448 | Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (1 of 2)            | 293 |
| Figure 1-449 | Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (2 of 2)            | 294 |
| Figure 1-450 | Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (1 of 2)             | 295 |
| Figure 1-451 | Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (2 of 2)             | 296 |
| Figure 1-452 | Remove the HCI merge assembly (1 of 2)                        | 297 |
| Figure 1-453 | Remove the HCI merge assembly (2 of 2)                        | 298 |
| Figure 1-454 | Remove the HCI controller PCA                                 | 299 |
| Figure 1-455 | Identify the BM finishing accessory                           | 301 |
| Figure 1-456 | Identify the SS finishing accessory                           | 301 |
| Figure 1-457 | Identify the SSHP finishing accessory                         | 302 |
| Figure 1-458 | Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (1 of 4)    | 303 |
| Figure 1-459 | Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (2 of 4)    | 303 |
| Figure 1-460 | Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (3 of 4)    | 304 |
| Figure 1-461 | Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (4 of 4)    | 304 |
| Figure 1-462 | Finishing accessory covers and doors (1 of 2)                 | 305 |
| Figure 1-463 | Finishing accessory covers and doors (2 of 2)                 | 306 |
| Figure 1-464 | Remove the upper cover lock assembly (1 of 3)                 | 309 |
| Figure 1-465 | Remove the upper cover lock assembly (2 of 3)                 | 309 |
| Figure 1-466 | Remove the upper cover lock assembly (3 of 3)                 | 310 |
| Figure 1-467 | Remove the right cover assembly (1 of 2)                      | 311 |
| Figure 1-468 | Remove the right cover assembly (2 of 2)                      | 311 |
| Figure 1-469 | Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly (1 of 3)                | 312 |
| Figure 1-470 | Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly (2 of 3)                | 312 |
| Figure 1-471 | Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly (3 of 3)                | 313 |
| Figure 1-472 | Remove the rear reverse cover assembly (1 of 3)               | 314 |
| Figure 1-473 | Remove the rear reverse cover assembly (2 of 3)               | 314 |
| Figure 1-474 | Remove the rear reverse cover assembly (3 of 3)               | 315 |
| Figure 1-475 | Remove the upper reverse cover assembly (1 of 2)              | 316 |
| Figure 1-476 | Remove the upper reverse cover assembly (2 of 2)              | 316 |
| Figure 1-477 | Remove the bin cable guide cover (1 of 6)                     | 317 |
| Figure 1-478 | Remove the bin cable guide cover (2 of 6)                     | 317 |
| Figure 1-479 | Remove the bin cable guide cover (3 of 6)                     | 318 |
| Figure 1-480 | Remove the bin cable guide cover (4 of 6)                     | 318 |
| Figure 1-481 | Remove the bin cable guide cover (5 of 6)                     | 319 |
| Figure 1-482 | Remove the bin cable guide cover (6 of 6)                     | 319 |
| Figure 1-483 | Bin cable guide cover correctly installed                     | 320 |

|              |                                                             |     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-484 | Bin cable guide cover incorrectly installed .....           | 320 |
| Figure 1-485 | Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (1 of 2) ..... | 321 |
| Figure 1-486 | Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (2 of 2) ..... | 321 |
| Figure 1-487 | Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (1 of 4) .....      | 322 |
| Figure 1-488 | Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (2 of 4) .....      | 322 |
| Figure 1-489 | Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (3 of 4) .....      | 323 |
| Figure 1-490 | Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (4 of 4) .....      | 323 |
| Figure 1-491 | Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (1 of 5) .....      | 324 |
| Figure 1-492 | Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (2 of 5) .....      | 325 |
| Figure 1-493 | Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (3 of 5) .....      | 325 |
| Figure 1-494 | Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (4 of 5) .....      | 326 |
| Figure 1-495 | Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (5 of 5) .....      | 326 |
| Figure 1-496 | Reinstall the lower stepped cover (1 of 2) .....            | 327 |
| Figure 1-497 | Reinstall the lower stepped cover (2 of 2) .....            | 327 |
| Figure 1-498 | Remove the top door assembly (1 of 3) .....                 | 328 |
| Figure 1-499 | Remove the top door assembly (2 of 3) .....                 | 328 |
| Figure 1-500 | Remove the top door assembly (3 of 3) .....                 | 329 |
| Figure 1-501 | Remove the front door (1 of 2) .....                        | 330 |
| Figure 1-502 | Remove the front door (2 of 2) .....                        | 331 |
| Figure 1-503 | Remove only the front door (1 of 2) .....                   | 331 |
| Figure 1-504 | Remove only the front door (2 of 2) .....                   | 332 |
| Figure 1-505 | Move the inner upper cover out of the way (1 of 2) .....    | 333 |
| Figure 1-506 | Move the inner upper cover out of the way (2 of 2) .....    | 333 |
| Figure 1-507 | Remove the inner upper cover assembly (1 of 2) .....        | 334 |
| Figure 1-508 | Remove the inner upper cover assembly (2 of 2) .....        | 335 |
| Figure 1-509 | Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 1 of 2) .....       | 336 |
| Figure 1-510 | Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 2 of 2) .....       | 336 |
| Figure 1-511 | Remove the sensor switch assembly (1 of 4) .....            | 337 |
| Figure 1-512 | Remove the sensor switch assembly (2 of 4) .....            | 337 |
| Figure 1-513 | Remove the sensor switch assembly (3 of 4) .....            | 338 |
| Figure 1-514 | Remove the sensor switch assembly (4 of 4) .....            | 338 |
| Figure 1-515 | Move the inner lower cover out of the way (1 of 3) .....    | 339 |
| Figure 1-516 | Move the inner lower cover out of the way (2 of 3) .....    | 339 |
| Figure 1-517 | Move the inner lower cover out of the way (3 of 3) .....    | 340 |
| Figure 1-518 | Remove the inner lower cover assembly (1 of 5) .....        | 341 |
| Figure 1-519 | Remove the inner lower cover assembly (2 of 5) .....        | 342 |
| Figure 1-520 | Remove the inner lower cover assembly (3 of 5) .....        | 342 |
| Figure 1-521 | Remove the inner lower cover assembly (4 of 5) .....        | 343 |
| Figure 1-522 | Remove the inner lower cover assembly (5 of 5) .....        | 343 |
| Figure 1-523 | Remove the front foot cover assembly (1 of 5) .....         | 344 |
| Figure 1-524 | Remove the front foot cover assembly (2 of 5) .....         | 345 |

|              |                                                        |     |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-525 | Remove the front foot cover assembly (3 of 5)          | 345 |
| Figure 1-526 | Remove the front foot cover assembly (4 of 5)          | 346 |
| Figure 1-527 | Remove the front foot cover assembly (5 of 5)          | 346 |
| Figure 1-528 | Remove the lower lock release handle assembly (1 of 3) | 347 |
| Figure 1-529 | Remove the lower lock release handle assembly (2 of 3) | 348 |
| Figure 1-530 | Remove the lower lock release handle assembly (3 of 3) | 348 |
| Figure 1-531 | Remove the rear cover assembly (1 of 3)                | 349 |
| Figure 1-532 | Remove the rear cover assembly (2 of 3)                | 350 |
| Figure 1-533 | Remove the rear cover assembly (3 of 3)                | 350 |
| Figure 1-534 | Remove only the rear cover (1 of 3)                    | 351 |
| Figure 1-535 | Remove only the rear cover (2 of 3)                    | 351 |
| Figure 1-536 | Remove only the rear cover (3 of 3)                    | 352 |
| Figure 1-537 | Remove the main controller PCA assembly (1 of 6)       | 353 |
| Figure 1-538 | Remove the main controller PCA assembly (2 of 6)       | 354 |
| Figure 1-539 | Remove the main controller PCA assembly (3 of 6)       | 354 |
| Figure 1-540 | Remove the main controller PCA assembly (4 of 6)       | 355 |
| Figure 1-541 | Remove the main controller PCA assembly (5 of 6)       | 355 |
| Figure 1-542 | Remove the main controller PCA assembly (6 of 6)       | 356 |
| Figure 1-543 | Install a replacement main controller PCA assembly     | 357 |
| Figure 1-544 | Main controller PCA switches                           | 358 |
| Figure 1-545 | Booklet maker controller PCA switches (BM only)        | 359 |
| Figure 1-546 | DIPSW4 alignment settings                              | 359 |
| Figure 1-547 | DIPSW4 staple position settings                        | 360 |
| Figure 1-548 | DIPSW folding position settings                        | 361 |
| Figure 1-549 | Mark the paper                                         | 362 |
| Figure 1-550 | Folding position adjustment (1 of 2)                   | 362 |
| Figure 1-551 | Folding position adjustment (2 of 2)                   | 363 |
| Figure 1-552 | Positive and negative width adjustment                 | 364 |
| Figure 1-553 | Adjust the stitcher (1 of 6)                           | 365 |
| Figure 1-554 | Adjust the stitcher (2 of 6)                           | 365 |
| Figure 1-555 | Adjust the stitcher (3 of 6)                           | 366 |
| Figure 1-556 | Adjust the stitcher (4 of 6)                           | 366 |
| Figure 1-557 | Adjust the stitcher (5 of 6)                           | 366 |
| Figure 1-558 | Adjust the stitcher (6 of 6)                           | 367 |
| Figure 1-559 | Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (1 of 3)      | 368 |
| Figure 1-560 | Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (2 of 3)      | 369 |
| Figure 1-561 | Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (3 of 3)      | 370 |
| Figure 1-562 | Remove the rear foot cover assembly (1 of 7)           | 371 |
| Figure 1-563 | Remove the rear foot cover assembly (2 of 7)           | 372 |
| Figure 1-564 | Remove the rear foot cover assembly (3 of 7)           | 372 |
| Figure 1-565 | Remove the rear foot cover assembly (4 of 7)           | 373 |

|              |                                                                             |     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-566 | Remove the rear foot cover assembly (5 of 7)                                | 373 |
| Figure 1-567 | Remove the rear foot cover assembly (6 of 7)                                | 374 |
| Figure 1-568 | Remove the rear foot cover assembly (7 of 7)                                | 374 |
| Figure 1-569 | Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (1 of 5) | 375 |
| Figure 1-570 | Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (2 of 5) | 376 |
| Figure 1-571 | Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (3 of 5) | 376 |
| Figure 1-572 | Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (4 of 5) | 377 |
| Figure 1-573 | Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (5 of 5) | 377 |
| Figure 1-574 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (1 of 13)                             | 378 |
| Figure 1-575 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (2 of 13)                             | 379 |
| Figure 1-576 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (3 of 13)                             | 379 |
| Figure 1-577 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (4 of 13)                             | 380 |
| Figure 1-578 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (5 of 13)                             | 380 |
| Figure 1-579 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (6 of 13)                             | 381 |
| Figure 1-580 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (7 of 13)                             | 381 |
| Figure 1-581 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (8 of 13)                             | 382 |
| Figure 1-582 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (9 of 13)                             | 382 |
| Figure 1-583 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (10 of 13)                            | 383 |
| Figure 1-584 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (11 of 13)                            | 383 |
| Figure 1-585 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (12 of 13)                            | 384 |
| Figure 1-586 | Remove the upper crossmember assembly (13 of 13)                            | 385 |
| Figure 1-587 | Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (1 of 7)                           | 386 |
| Figure 1-588 | Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (2 of 7)                           | 386 |
| Figure 1-589 | Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (3 of 7)                           | 387 |
| Figure 1-590 | Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (4 of 7)                           | 387 |
| Figure 1-591 | Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (5 of 7)                           | 388 |
| Figure 1-592 | Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (6 of 7)                           | 388 |
| Figure 1-593 | Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (7 of 7)                           | 389 |
| Figure 1-594 | Remove the paper feed drive assembly (1 of 2)                               | 390 |
| Figure 1-595 | Remove the paper feed drive assembly (2 of 2)                               | 391 |
| Figure 1-596 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (1 of 8)                                | 392 |
| Figure 1-597 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (2 of 8)                                | 393 |
| Figure 1-598 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (3 of 8)                                | 393 |
| Figure 1-599 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (4 of 8)                                | 394 |
| Figure 1-600 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (5 of 8)                                | 394 |
| Figure 1-601 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (6 of 8)                                | 395 |
| Figure 1-602 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (7 of 8)                                | 395 |
| Figure 1-603 | Remove the pressure roller assembly (8 of 8)                                | 396 |
| Figure 1-604 | Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (1 of 5)                | 398 |
| Figure 1-605 | Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (2 of 5)                | 398 |
| Figure 1-606 | Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (3 of 5)                | 399 |

|              |                                                              |     |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-607 | Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (4 of 5) | 399 |
| Figure 1-608 | Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (5 of 5) | 400 |
| Figure 1-609 | Reinstall the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies       | 400 |
| Figure 1-610 | Remove the height wall assembly (1 of 2)                     | 401 |
| Figure 1-611 | Remove the height wall assembly (2 of 2)                     | 402 |
| Figure 1-612 | Reinstall the height wall assembly                           | 402 |
| Figure 1-613 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (1 of 9)      | 403 |
| Figure 1-614 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (2 of 9)      | 404 |
| Figure 1-615 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (3 of 9)      | 404 |
| Figure 1-616 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (4 of 9)      | 405 |
| Figure 1-617 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (5 of 9)      | 405 |
| Figure 1-618 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (6 of 9)      | 406 |
| Figure 1-619 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (7 of 9)      | 406 |
| Figure 1-620 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (8 of 9)      | 407 |
| Figure 1-621 | Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (9 of 9)      | 407 |
| Figure 1-622 | Remove the staple sub assembly (1 of 6)                      | 408 |
| Figure 1-623 | Remove the staple sub assembly (2 of 6)                      | 408 |
| Figure 1-624 | Remove the staple sub assembly (3 of 6)                      | 409 |
| Figure 1-625 | Remove the staple sub assembly (4 of 6)                      | 409 |
| Figure 1-626 | Remove the staple sub assembly (5 of 6)                      | 410 |
| Figure 1-627 | Remove the staple sub assembly (6 of 6)                      | 410 |
| Figure 1-628 | Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (1 of 2)         | 411 |
| Figure 1-629 | Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (2 of 2)         | 412 |
| Figure 1-630 | Remove the staple assembly (1 of 7)                          | 413 |
| Figure 1-631 | Remove the staple assembly (2 of 7)                          | 414 |
| Figure 1-632 | Remove the staple assembly (3 of 7)                          | 414 |
| Figure 1-633 | Remove the staple assembly (4 of 7)                          | 415 |
| Figure 1-634 | Remove the staple assembly (5 of 7)                          | 415 |
| Figure 1-635 | Remove the staple assembly (6 of 7)                          | 416 |
| Figure 1-636 | Remove the staple assembly (7 of 7)                          | 416 |
| Figure 1-637 | Remove the paper detect holder assembly                      | 417 |
| Figure 1-638 | Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly                   | 418 |
| Figure 1-639 | Identify the operation tray assembly                         | 419 |
| Figure 1-640 | Remove the operation tray assembly (1 of 11)                 | 420 |
| Figure 1-641 | Remove the operation tray assembly (2 of 11)                 | 421 |
| Figure 1-642 | Remove the operation tray assembly (3 of 11)                 | 422 |
| Figure 1-643 | Remove the operation tray assembly (4 of 11)                 | 422 |
| Figure 1-644 | Remove the operation tray assembly (5 of 11)                 | 423 |
| Figure 1-645 | Remove the operation tray assembly (6 of 11)                 | 423 |
| Figure 1-646 | Remove the operation tray assembly (7 of 11)                 | 424 |
| Figure 1-647 | Remove the operation tray assembly (8 of 11)                 | 424 |



|              |                                                   |     |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-648 | Remove the operation tray assembly (9 of 11)      | 425 |
| Figure 1-649 | Remove the operation tray assembly (10 of 11)     | 425 |
| Figure 1-650 | Remove the operation tray assembly (11 of 11)     | 426 |
| Figure 1-651 | Reinstall the operation tray assembly (1 of 5)    | 426 |
| Figure 1-652 | Reinstall the operation tray assembly (2 of 5)    | 427 |
| Figure 1-653 | Reinstall the operation tray assembly (3 of 5)    | 427 |
| Figure 1-654 | Reinstall the operation tray assembly (4 of 5)    | 428 |
| Figure 1-655 | Reinstall the operation tray assembly (5 of 5)    | 429 |
| Figure 1-656 | Identify the operation tray assembly              | 430 |
| Figure 1-657 | Remove the swing guide assembly (1 of 12)         | 431 |
| Figure 1-658 | Remove the swing guide assembly (2 of 12)         | 431 |
| Figure 1-659 | Remove the swing guide assembly (3 of 12)         | 432 |
| Figure 1-660 | Remove the swing guide assembly (4 of 12)         | 432 |
| Figure 1-661 | Remove the swing guide assembly (5 of 12)         | 433 |
| Figure 1-662 | Remove the swing guide assembly (6 of 12)         | 433 |
| Figure 1-663 | Remove the swing guide assembly (7 of 12)         | 434 |
| Figure 1-664 | Remove the swing guide assembly (8 of 12)         | 434 |
| Figure 1-665 | Remove the swing guide assembly (9 of 12)         | 435 |
| Figure 1-666 | Remove the swing guide assembly (10 of 12)        | 435 |
| Figure 1-667 | Remove the swing guide assembly (11 of 12)        | 436 |
| Figure 1-668 | Remove the swing guide assembly (12 of 12)        | 436 |
| Figure 1-669 | Reinstall the swing guide assembly (1 of 7)       | 437 |
| Figure 1-670 | Reinstall the swing guide assembly (2 of 7)       | 437 |
| Figure 1-671 | Reinstall the swing guide assembly (3 of 7)       | 438 |
| Figure 1-672 | Reinstall the swing guide assembly (4 of 7)       | 438 |
| Figure 1-673 | Reinstall the swing guide assembly (5 of 7)       | 439 |
| Figure 1-674 | Reinstall the swing guide assembly (6 of 7)       | 439 |
| Figure 1-675 | Reinstall the swing guide assembly (7 of 7)       | 440 |
| Figure 1-676 | Remove the return roller assembly (1 of 2)        | 442 |
| Figure 1-677 | Remove the return roller assembly (2 of 2)        | 442 |
| Figure 1-678 | Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 1 of 6)    | 443 |
| Figure 1-679 | Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 2 of 6)    | 443 |
| Figure 1-680 | Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 3 of 6)    | 444 |
| Figure 1-681 | Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 4 of 6)    | 444 |
| Figure 1-682 | Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 5 of 6)    | 445 |
| Figure 1-683 | Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 6 of 6)    | 445 |
| Figure 1-684 | Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (1 of 7) | 446 |
| Figure 1-685 | Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (2 of 7) | 446 |
| Figure 1-686 | Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (3 of 7) | 447 |
| Figure 1-687 | Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (4 of 7) | 447 |
| Figure 1-688 | Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (5 of 7) | 448 |

|              |                                                   |     |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-689 | Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (6 of 7) | 448 |
| Figure 1-690 | Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (7 of 7) | 449 |
| Figure 1-691 | Remove the press motor assembly (1 of 7)          | 450 |
| Figure 1-692 | Remove the press motor assembly (2 of 7)          | 450 |
| Figure 1-693 | Remove the press motor assembly (3 of 7)          | 451 |
| Figure 1-694 | Remove the press motor assembly (4 of 7)          | 451 |
| Figure 1-695 | Remove the press motor assembly (5 of 7)          | 452 |
| Figure 1-696 | Remove the press motor assembly (6 of 7)          | 452 |
| Figure 1-697 | Remove the press motor assembly (7 of 7)          | 453 |
| Figure 1-698 | Remove the common driver PCA assembly (1 of 2)    | 454 |
| Figure 1-699 | Remove the common driver PCA assembly (2 of 2)    | 455 |
| Figure 1-700 | Remove the interface cable assembly (1 of 3)      | 456 |
| Figure 1-701 | Remove the interface cable assembly (2 of 3)      | 456 |
| Figure 1-702 | Remove the interface cable assembly (3 of 3)      | 457 |
| Figure 1-703 | Remove the reverse driver PCA assembly            | 458 |
| Figure 1-704 | Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 1 of 5)   | 459 |
| Figure 1-705 | Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 2 of 5)   | 460 |
| Figure 1-706 | Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 3 of 5)   | 460 |
| Figure 1-707 | Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 4 of 5)   | 461 |
| Figure 1-708 | Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 5 of 5)   | 461 |
| Figure 1-709 | Remove the paper pass assembly (1 of 7)           | 462 |
| Figure 1-710 | Remove the paper pass assembly (2 of 7)           | 463 |
| Figure 1-711 | Remove the paper pass assembly (3 of 7)           | 463 |
| Figure 1-712 | Remove the paper pass assembly (4 of 7)           | 464 |
| Figure 1-713 | Remove the paper pass assembly (5 of 7)           | 464 |
| Figure 1-714 | Remove the paper pass assembly (6 of 7)           | 465 |
| Figure 1-715 | Remove the paper pass assembly (7 of 7)           | 465 |
| Figure 1-716 | Remove the knob                                   | 467 |
| Figure 1-717 | Remove the saddle output bin assembly (1 of 2)    | 468 |
| Figure 1-718 | Remove the saddle output bin assembly (2 of 2)    | 468 |
| Figure 1-719 | Reinstall the saddle output bin assembly          | 469 |
| Figure 1-720 | Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 1 of 2)  | 470 |
| Figure 1-721 | Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 2 of 2)  | 470 |
| Figure 1-722 | Remove the booklet maker controller PCA           | 471 |
| Figure 1-723 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (1 of 8)     | 472 |
| Figure 1-724 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (2 of 8)     | 473 |
| Figure 1-725 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (3 of 8)     | 473 |
| Figure 1-726 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (4 of 8)     | 474 |
| Figure 1-727 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (5 of 8)     | 474 |
| Figure 1-728 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (6 of 8)     | 475 |
| Figure 1-729 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (7 of 8)     | 475 |

|              |                                                                 |     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-730 | Remove the inner side plate assembly (8 of 8)                   | 476 |
| Figure 1-731 | Inner plate assembly at the up position                         | 476 |
| Figure 1-732 | Inner plate assembly at the middle position                     | 477 |
| Figure 1-733 | Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (1 of 3)                | 477 |
| Figure 1-734 | Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (2 of 3)                | 478 |
| Figure 1-735 | Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (3 of 3)                | 478 |
| Figure 1-736 | Remove the guide sensor assembly (1 of 4)                       | 479 |
| Figure 1-737 | Remove the guide sensor assembly (2 of 4)                       | 479 |
| Figure 1-738 | Remove the guide sensor assembly (3 of 4)                       | 480 |
| Figure 1-739 | Remove the guide sensor assembly (4 of 4)                       | 480 |
| Figure 1-740 | Remove the guide motor assembly (1 of 3)                        | 481 |
| Figure 1-741 | Remove the guide motor assembly (2 of 3)                        | 482 |
| Figure 1-742 | Remove the guide motor assembly (3 of 3)                        | 482 |
| Figure 1-743 | Remove the saddle motor assembly (1 of 3)                       | 483 |
| Figure 1-744 | Remove the saddle motor assembly (2 of 3)                       | 483 |
| Figure 1-745 | Remove the saddle motor assembly (3 of 3)                       | 484 |
| Figure 1-746 | Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (1 of 6)                  | 485 |
| Figure 1-747 | Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (2 of 6)                  | 486 |
| Figure 1-748 | Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (3 of 6)                  | 486 |
| Figure 1-749 | Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (4 of 6)                  | 487 |
| Figure 1-750 | Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (5 of 6)                  | 487 |
| Figure 1-751 | Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (6 of 6)                  | 488 |
| Figure 1-752 | Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (1 of 6)                | 489 |
| Figure 1-753 | Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (2 of 6)                | 490 |
| Figure 1-754 | Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (3 of 6)                | 490 |
| Figure 1-755 | Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (4 of 6)                | 491 |
| Figure 1-756 | Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (5 of 6)                | 491 |
| Figure 1-757 | Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (6 of 6)                | 492 |
| Figure 1-758 | Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly                      | 493 |
| Figure 1-759 | Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (1 of 4)              | 494 |
| Figure 1-760 | Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (2 of 4)              | 495 |
| Figure 1-761 | Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (3 of 4)              | 495 |
| Figure 1-762 | Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (4 of 4)              | 496 |
| Figure 1-763 | Remove the saddle stapler assembly (1 of 3)                     | 497 |
| Figure 1-764 | Remove the saddle stapler assembly (2 of 3)                     | 498 |
| Figure 1-765 | Remove the saddle stapler assembly (3 of 3)                     | 498 |
| Figure 1-766 | Remove the lower left guide assembly (1 of 3)                   | 499 |
| Figure 1-767 | Remove the lower left guide assembly (2 of 3)                   | 499 |
| Figure 1-768 | Remove the lower left guide assembly (3 of 3)                   | 500 |
| Figure 1-769 | Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (1 of 3) | 501 |
| Figure 1-770 | Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (2 of 3) | 502 |

|              |                                                                 |     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-771 | Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (3 of 3) | 502 |
| Figure 1-772 | Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (1 of 3)  | 503 |
| Figure 1-773 | Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (2 of 3)  | 504 |
| Figure 1-774 | Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (3 of 3)  | 504 |
| Figure 1-775 | Remove the saddle guide assembly (1 of 5)                       | 506 |
| Figure 1-776 | Remove the saddle guide assembly (2 of 5)                       | 506 |
| Figure 1-777 | Remove the saddle guide assembly (3 of 5)                       | 507 |
| Figure 1-778 | Remove the saddle guide assembly (4 of 5)                       | 507 |
| Figure 1-779 | Remove the saddle guide assembly (5 of 5)                       | 508 |
| Figure 1-780 | Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (1 of 4)                    | 509 |
| Figure 1-781 | Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (2 of 4)                    | 509 |
| Figure 1-782 | Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (3 of 4)                    | 510 |
| Figure 1-783 | Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (4 of 4)                    | 510 |
| Figure 1-784 | Remove the saddle feed assembly (1 of 5)                        | 511 |
| Figure 1-785 | Remove the saddle feed assembly (2 of 5)                        | 512 |
| Figure 1-786 | Remove the saddle feed assembly (3 of 5)                        | 512 |
| Figure 1-787 | Remove the saddle feed assembly (4 of 5)                        | 513 |
| Figure 1-788 | Remove the saddle feed assembly (5 of 5)                        | 513 |
| Figure 1-789 | Remove the saddle assembly (1 of 15)                            | 515 |
| Figure 1-790 | Remove the saddle assembly (2 of 15)                            | 515 |
| Figure 1-791 | Remove the saddle assembly (3 of 15)                            | 516 |
| Figure 1-792 | Remove the saddle assembly (4 of 15)                            | 516 |
| Figure 1-793 | Remove the saddle assembly (5 of 15)                            | 517 |
| Figure 1-794 | Remove the saddle assembly (6 of 15)                            | 517 |
| Figure 1-795 | Remove the saddle assembly (7 of 15)                            | 518 |
| Figure 1-796 | Remove the saddle assembly (8 of 15)                            | 518 |
| Figure 1-797 | Remove the saddle assembly (9 of 15)                            | 519 |
| Figure 1-798 | Remove the saddle assembly (10 of 15)                           | 519 |
| Figure 1-799 | Remove the saddle assembly (11 of 15)                           | 520 |
| Figure 1-800 | Remove the saddle assembly (12 of 15)                           | 520 |
| Figure 1-801 | Remove the saddle assembly (13 of 15)                           | 521 |
| Figure 1-802 | Remove the saddle assembly (14 of 15)                           | 521 |
| Figure 1-803 | Remove the saddle assembly (15 of 15)                           | 522 |
| Figure 1-804 | Reinstall the saddle assembly                                   | 523 |
| Figure 1-805 | Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (1 of 3)               | 524 |
| Figure 1-806 | Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (2 of 3)               | 525 |
| Figure 1-807 | Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (3 of 3)               | 525 |
| Figure 1-808 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (1 of 8)              | 526 |
| Figure 1-809 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (2 of 8)              | 527 |
| Figure 1-810 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (3 of 8)              | 527 |
| Figure 1-811 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (4 of 8)              | 528 |

|              |                                                            |     |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1-812 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (5 of 8)         | 528 |
| Figure 1-813 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (6 of 8)         | 529 |
| Figure 1-814 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (7 of 8)         | 529 |
| Figure 1-815 | Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (8 of 8)         | 530 |
| Figure 1-816 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (1 of 10)       | 531 |
| Figure 1-817 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (2 of 10)       | 532 |
| Figure 1-818 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (3 of 10)       | 532 |
| Figure 1-819 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (4 of 10)       | 533 |
| Figure 1-820 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (5 of 10)       | 533 |
| Figure 1-821 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (6 of 10)       | 534 |
| Figure 1-822 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (7 of 10)       | 534 |
| Figure 1-823 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (8 of 10)       | 535 |
| Figure 1-824 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (9 of 10)       | 535 |
| Figure 1-825 | Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (10 of 10)      | 536 |
| Figure 1-826 | Remove the punch controller PCA assembly                   | 538 |
| Figure 1-827 | Remove the dust collector assembly                         | 539 |
| Figure 1-828 | Remove the punch inner cover assembly (1 of 2)             | 540 |
| Figure 1-829 | Remove the punch inner cover assembly (2 of 2)             | 540 |
| Figure 1-830 | Remove the punch top cover (1 of 6)                        | 541 |
| Figure 1-831 | Remove the punch top cover (2 of 6)                        | 542 |
| Figure 1-832 | Remove the punch top cover (3 of 6)                        | 542 |
| Figure 1-833 | Remove the punch top cover (4 of 6)                        | 543 |
| Figure 1-834 | Remove the punch top cover (5 of 6)                        | 543 |
| Figure 1-835 | Remove the punch top cover (6 of 6)                        | 544 |
| Figure 1-836 | Remove the punch hole assembly (1 of 5)                    | 545 |
| Figure 1-837 | Remove the punch hole assembly (2 of 5)                    | 546 |
| Figure 1-838 | Remove the punch hole assembly (3 of 5)                    | 546 |
| Figure 1-839 | Remove the punch hole assembly (4 of 5)                    | 547 |
| Figure 1-840 | Remove the punch hole assembly (5 of 5)                    | 547 |
| Figure 1-841 | Adjust the punch hole location                             | 548 |
| Figure 1-842 | Adjust the punch hole location                             | 549 |
| Figure 2-1   | M830 product integrated scanner assembly (ISA)             | 557 |
| Figure 2-2   | Base product (no optional trays or accessories)            | 558 |
| Figure 2-3   | Document feeder and scanner (M830)                         | 560 |
| Figure 2-4   | High capacity input (HCI) feeder covers                    | 561 |
| Figure 2-5   | Stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker with hole punch covers | 562 |
| Figure 2-6   | Booklet maker only covers                                  | 563 |
| Figure 2-7   | Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830)              | 564 |
| Figure 2-8   | Document feeder assemblies ( M830; 1 of 2)                 | 566 |
| Figure 2-9   | Document feeder assemblies ( M830; 2 of 2)                 | 568 |
| Figure 2-10  | Scanner assemblies                                         | 570 |

|             |                                              |     |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 2-11 | Covers .....                                 | 572 |
| Figure 2-12 | Internal assemblies (1 of 4) .....           | 574 |
| Figure 2-13 | Internal assemblies (2 of 4) .....           | 576 |
| Figure 2-14 | Internal assemblies (3 of 4) .....           | 578 |
| Figure 2-15 | Internal assemblies (4 of 4) .....           | 580 |
| Figure 2-16 | 3500-sheet paper feeder covers .....         | 582 |
| Figure 2-17 | 3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) .....       | 584 |
| Figure 2-18 | 3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) .....       | 586 |
| Figure 2-19 | Stapler stacker covers .....                 | 588 |
| Figure 2-20 | Booklet maker covers .....                   | 590 |
| Figure 2-21 | Finisher main body (1 of 3) .....            | 592 |
| Figure 2-22 | Finisher main body (2 of 3) .....            | 594 |
| Figure 2-23 | Finisher main body (3 of 3) .....            | 596 |
| Figure 2-24 | Stapler/stacker finisher main body .....     | 598 |
| Figure 2-25 | Booklet maker finisher main body .....       | 600 |
| Figure 2-26 | Booklet maker saddle assembly (1 of 3) ..... | 602 |
| Figure 2-27 | Booklet maker saddle assembly (2 of 3) ..... | 603 |
| Figure 2-28 | Booklet maker saddle assembly (3 of 3) ..... | 604 |

---

# 1 Removal and replacement

- [Removal and replacement strategy](#)
- [Customer-self repair assemblies](#)
- [Pickup, feed, and separation rollers and pads](#)
- [Covers and doors](#)
- [Main assemblies](#)
- [Input accessory](#)
- [Finishing accessories](#)

# Removal and replacement strategy

## Cautions during removal and replacement

This chapter describes the removal and replacement of field-replaceable units (FRUs) only.

Replacing FRUs is generally the reverse of removal. Notes are included to provide directions for difficult or critical replacement procedures.

HP does not support repairing individual subassemblies or troubleshooting to the PCA component level.

Never operate or service the product with the protective cover removed from the laser scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can damage your eyes.

The sheet-metal parts can have sharp edges. Be careful when handling sheet-metal parts.



Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing product parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Protect the ESD-sensitive parts by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the product.

**CAUTION:** Do not bend or fold the flat flexible cables (FFCs) during removal or installation.

 **NOTE:** To install a self-tapping screw, first turn it counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. If a self-tapping screw-hole becomes stripped, repair the screw-hole or replace the affected assembly.

 **TIP:** For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the M830 scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for your product.

---



## Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

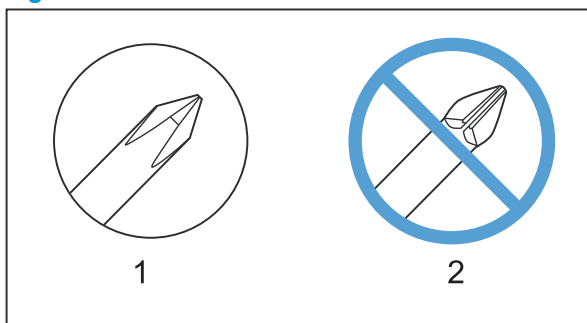


**NOTE:** For the best fit, use a JIS #2 Phillips screwdriver for the stapler/stacker.

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver
- Needle-nose pliers
- ESD strap (if one is available)
- Penlight

**CAUTION:** Always use a Phillips screwdriver (callout 1). Do not use a Pozidriv screwdriver (callout 2) or any motorized screwdriver. These can damage screws or screw threads.

**Figure 1-1** Screwdrivers



## Types of screws

**WARNING!** Make sure that assemblies are replaced with the correct screw type. Using the incorrect screw (for example, substituting a long screw for the correct shorter screw) can cause damage to the product or interfere with product operation. Do not intermix screws that are removed from one assembly with the screws that are removed from another assembly.

For a complete list of screw types and part numbers, see the Parts chapter in the product repair manual.

## Service approach

The products described in this manual use a field repair strategy. Defective parts are diagnosed and replaced at the Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) assembly level. Repair normally begins by using the product internal diagnostics and the following two-step process:

1. Isolate the problem to the major system (for example, the network or server, or the product).
2. Troubleshoot the problem by using the procedures in the troubleshooting manual.

After you locate a faulty part, the product can usually be repaired at the assembly level by replacing FRUs. Some mechanical assemblies might need to be repaired at the subassembly level. Hewlett-Packard Company does not support replacement of components on the printed circuit assemblies.

The user replaces toner cartridges as they are depleted. Additional instructions about other user-replaceable parts are provided in this section.

The product tracks the amount of use on the customer-replaceable supplies by keeping a page count. The product prompts the user to replace certain items when a supply is depleted or a specific number of pages has been printed.

Swapping toner cartridges between products might cause a misrepresentation of supply life values and is not recommended.

## Before performing service

---

 **WARNING!** Turn the product off, wait 5 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed, severe injury and damage to the product can result.* The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power supply should be disconnected during parts removal.

---

1. Remove all paper.
2. Place the product on an ESD mat (if available). If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis *before* touching an ESD-sensitive part.
3. Remove the toner cartridge.
4. Remove the trays.

## After performing service

1. Reinstall the toner cartridge.
2. Reinstall the trays.
3. Return all paper to the trays.
4. Plug in the power cable and turn on the product.
5. Perform print-quality tests by printing from a host computer, the scanner glass, and the document feeder.

## Parts removal order

If multiple components must be removed to gain access to an assembly, the first step of the removal procedure lists all of the components that must be removed to gain access to that assembly. Use these lists to determine which parts must be removed before removing other parts.

# Customer-self repair assemblies

## Toner cartridge

1. Open the front door.
2. Rotate the cartridge release lever down until it clicks into place.

**Figure 1-2** Remove the toner cartridge (1 of 3)

3. Grasp the front handle (callout 1) with one hand, and then pull the toner cartridge out of the product until the top handle (callout 2) is visible.

**Figure 1-3** Remove the toner cartridge (2 of 3)

4. Grasp the top handle, and then continue pulling the toner cartridge out of the product.

**Figure 1-4** Remove the toner cartridge (3 of 3)

## Reinstall the toner cartridge

- Make sure that the transfer-roller assembly (see [Transfer-roller assembly on page 8](#)) is installed before installing the toner cartridge.
- Align the toner cartridge with its guides, and then insert it completely.
- Press and hold the white button on the cartridge release lever (callout 1), and then rotate the lever up until it locks into place (callout 2).

**Figure 1-5** Reinstall the toner cartridge

## Transfer-roller assembly

1. Open the front cover.
2. Rotate the cartridge release lever down until it clicks into place.

**Figure 1-6** Remove the transfer-roller assembly (1 of 2)

3. Press the blue tab, and then slowly pull the transfer roller assembly toward the front of the product until it stops. Lift the assembly up to release the catch on the underside, and then remove the assembly.



---

**Reinstallation tip** Make sure that the transfer roller is completely inserted and latched when it is reinstalled.

---

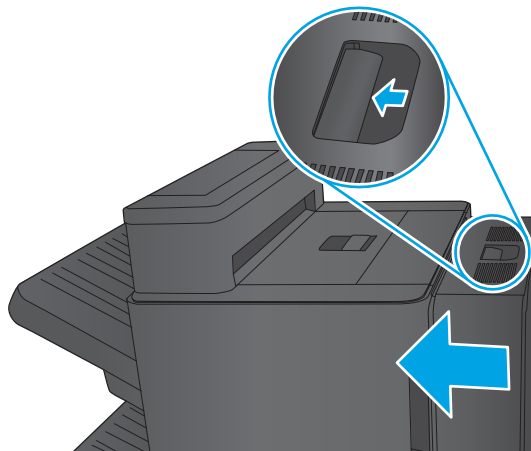
**Figure 1-7** Remove the transfer-roller assembly (2 of 2)



## Duplexer

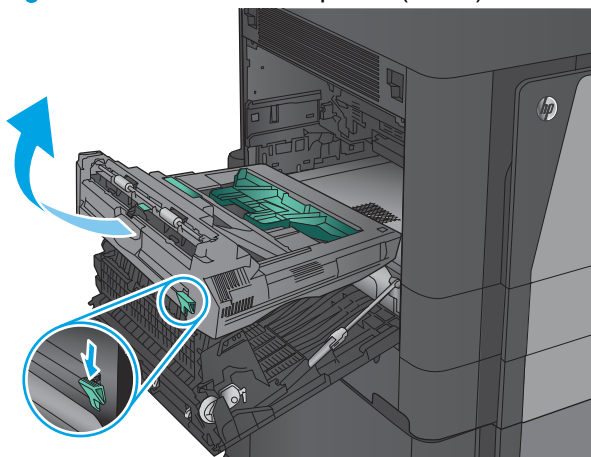
1. If a finishing accessory is attached, release one handle, and then slide the finishing accessory away from the product.

**Figure 1-8** Remove the duplexer (1 of 2)



2. Open the left door, and then push down on the green tab to release the duplexer. Slide the duplexer towards the left door, and then lift it up and away from the product.

**Figure 1-9** Remove the duplexer (2 of 2)



## Fuser

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

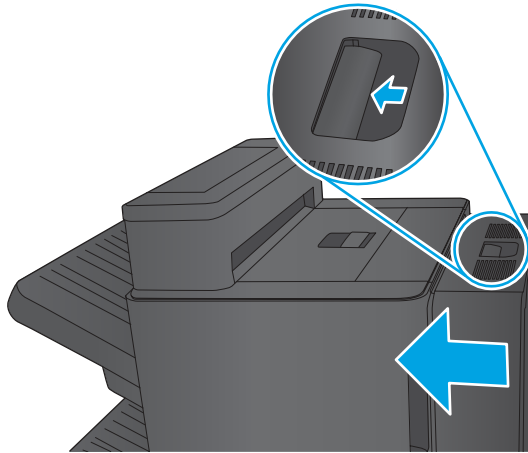
- Duplexer. See [Duplexer on page 9](#).

### Remove the fuser

**⚠ WARNING!** The fuser might be hot.

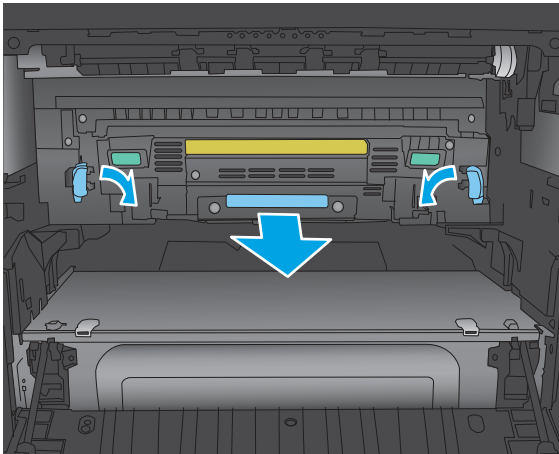
1. If a finishing accessory is attached, release one handle, and then slide the finishing accessory away from the product.

**Figure 1-10** Remove the fuser (1 of 3)



2. Open the left door, release two latches, and then slide the fuser toward the left door.

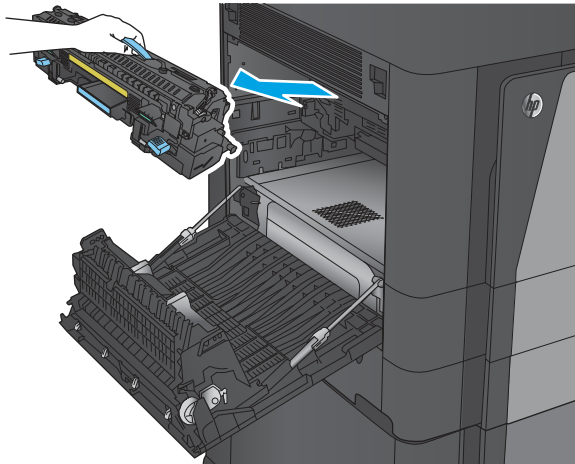
**Figure 1-11** Remove the fuser (2 of 3)





3. Grasp the fuser by the handle, and then lift it out of the product.

**Figure 1-12** Remove the fuser (3 of 3)



## Formatter

### Remove the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

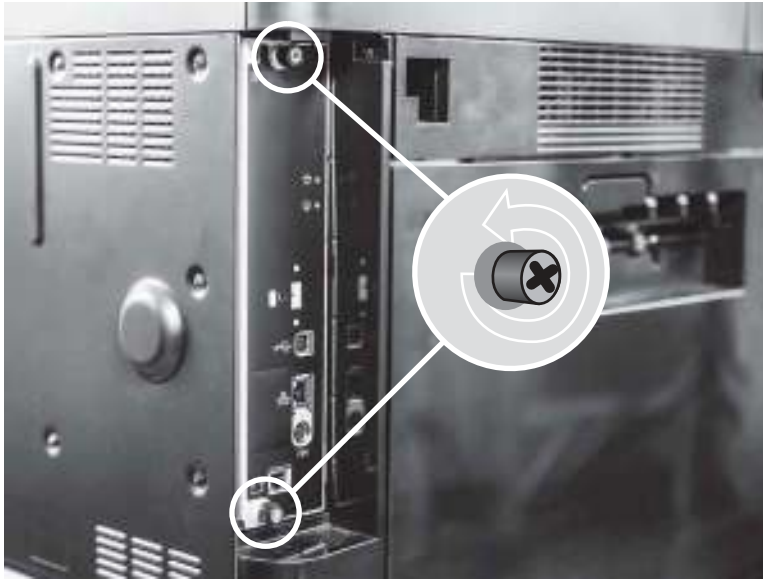
1. If a finishing accessory is attached, release one handle, and then slide the finishing accessory away from the product.

**Figure 1-13** Remove the formatter (1 of 3)



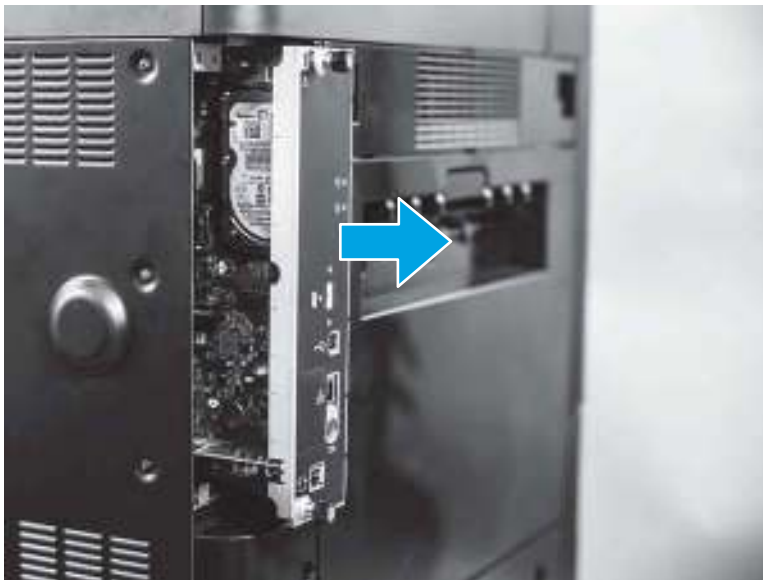
2. Loosen two screws.

**Figure 1-14** Remove the formatter (2 of 3)



3. Grasp the screws, and then slide the formatter out of the product.

**Figure 1-15** Remove the formatter (3 of 3)



4. Remove the following components from the existing formatter, and then reinstall them on the replacement formatter.



**NOTE:** Not all of these components will be present on the existing formatter. Move those components that are currently installed.

- Hard-disk drive. See [Remove the HDD on page 17](#).
- Memory DIMM. See [Memory DIMM on page 24](#).

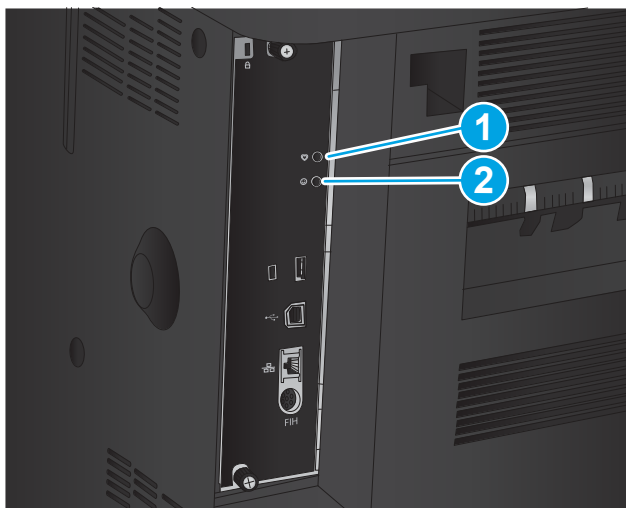
- Solid-state memory (M806 only). See [Remove the SSM \(M806 only\) on page 19](#).
- Fax PCA (M830 only). See [Fax PCA \(M830 only\) on page 26](#).

## Reinstall the formatter

Make sure the formatter is seated completely when reinstalling it. To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, use the power switch to turn on the product power, and then observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter.

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly..
  - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
  - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, see the LED diagnostics section in the product troubleshooting manual.



## Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory(SSM)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).

### Identify the component type

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See [Remove the HDD on page 17](#).
- Solid-state memory (SSM). See [Remove the SSM \(M806 only\) on page 19](#).

## Remove the HDD

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Hold the locking lever on the black plastic HDD case in the release position.

---

 **CAUTION:** The black plastic HDD case is fragile.

---

**Figure 1-16** Remove the HDD (1 of 2)

2. While holding the locking lever, slide the black plastic HDD case in the direction of the arrow to remove it.

**Figure 1-17** Remove the HDD (2 of 2)

## Reinstall the HDD



**NOTE:** If you are installing a replacement drive, you must reinstall the product firmware. See [Reinstall the product firmware on page 22](#).

---

Make sure that the HDD is flat against the formatter (callout 1), and that the locking lever (callout 2) snaps into the locked position.

**Figure 1-18** Reinstall the HDD



## Remove the SSM (M806 only)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Rotate the retainer clip to release it.

**Figure 1-19** Remove the SSM (M806; 1 of 3)

2. Lift the retainer clip up to remove it.

**Figure 1-20** Remove the SSM (M806; 2 of 3)

3. Slide the SSM away from the connector to remove it.

**Figure 1-21** Remove the SSM (M806; 3 of 3)

## Reinstall the SSM (M806 only)



**NOTE:** If you are installing a replacement SSM, you must reinstall the product firmware. See [Reinstall the product firmware on page 22](#).

---

1. Make sure that the retainer clip (callout 1) is positioned correctly in the slot (callout 2).

**Figure 1-22** Reinstall the SSM (M806; 1 of 2)

2. Rotate the retainer clip to secure the SSM.

**Figure 1-23** Reinstall the SSM (M806; 2 of 2)

## Reinstall the product firmware



**NOTE:** If you are installing a replacement HDD or SSM, use the procedure below to reinstall the product firmware on the replacement drive.

If you are removing the HDD or SSM so that it can be installed on a replacement formatter, you can skip this procedure.

1. Locate the product support website.
  - **In the US:**
    - Go to <http://www.hp.com/support/ljM806> or <http://www.hp.com/support/ljflowMFPM830>.
  - **Outside the US:**
    - Go to <http://www.hp.com/support>.
    - Select your country/region.
    - Select **Product Support & Troubleshooting**
    - Enter the product name, and then select **Search**.
2. Select **Drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.)**.
3. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
4. Copy the firmware upgrade file to the root directory of a USB flash drive. The firmware upgrade file has a `.bd1` extension.
5. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB port on the product control panel.
6. The following message displays on the control panel: **Error: 99.09.63 Incorrect Disk**. Touch the **OK** button to continue.
7. Wait for the **Pre-Boot** menu to appear on the control-panel display, and then touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
8. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **6 Manage Disk**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
9. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **4 Clear Disk PWD**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
10. The message **Proceed with Requested Action** displays. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
11. Touch the back ↵ button to return to the **Pre-Boot** menu home screen.
12. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
13. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **1 Download**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
14. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 USB Thumbdrive**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
15. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to the firmware upgrade file that you downloaded in step 4. Touch the **OK** button to select it.



**NOTE:** If no `.bd1` files are listed, try saving the file to a different USB flash drive.

16. Wait while the file transfers. When the transfer is complete, the message **Complete** displays on the screen.
17. Turn the product off, remove the USB flash drive, and then turn the product on. Wait for several minutes while the product initializes.

## Memory DIMM

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).

### Remove the memory DIMM



**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Release two clips.

**Figure 1-24** Remove the memory DIMM (1 of 2)

2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-25** Remove the memory DIMM (2 of 2)



## Reinstall the memory DIMM

Make sure that the memory DIMM snaps into the holder.

**Figure 1-26** Reinstall the memory DIMM

## Fax PCA (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).

### Remove the fax PCA (M830 only)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

**Figure 1-27** Remove the fax PCA (M830; 1 of 2)

2. Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.

**Figure 1-28** Remove the fax PCA (M830; 2 of 2)



## Document feeder mylar strip (M830 only)

1. Open the document feeder cover.

**Figure 1-29** Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M830; 1 of 3)

2. Locate the mylar strip.

**Figure 1-30** Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M830; 2 of 3)

3. Carefully remove the mylar strip.

**Figure 1-31** Remove the document feeder mylar strip (M830; 3 of 3)

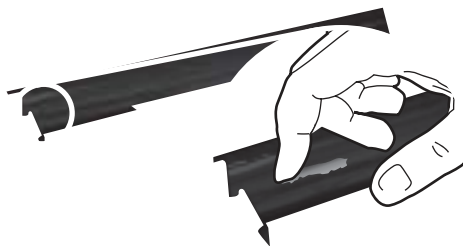


### Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830 only)

Use the following guidelines when you install the replacement mylar strip:

1. Skin oils on the mylar strip can cause paper pickup problems. Wash your hands before handling the replacement mylar strip.
2. When handling the replacement mylar strip, do not touch the adhesive portion of the strip.
3. Use your finger to remove any adhesive that remains after removing the mylar strip.

**Figure 1-32** Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830; 1 of 3)

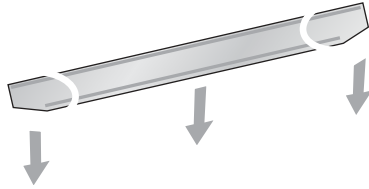


4. Position the replacement mylar strip as shown, with the rounded corners on the strip facing the document tray.



**NOTE:** Make sure that the adhesive side of the guide is face down.

**Figure 1-33** Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830; 2 of 3)



5. Press down firmly on the strip to adhere it to the product.

**Figure 1-34** Install a replacement document feeder mylar strip (M830; 3 of 3)



## Document feeder white backing (M830 only)

1. Open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-35** Remove the document feeder white backing (M830; 1 of 3)

2. Carefully remove the white backing.

**Figure 1-36** Remove the document feeder white backing (M830; 2 of 3)

3. Remove any rubber stoppers that might still be attached to the document feeder.

**Figure 1-37** Remove the document feeder white backing (M830; 3 of 3)

### Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830 only)

1. Position the replacement white backing on the scanner glass. Carefully remove the protective backing from the rubber stoppers.

---

 **CAUTION:** Do not touch the exposed adhesive.

---

**Figure 1-38** Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 1 of 6)

2. Make sure that the arrow on the replacement white backing is positioned in the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.

**Figure 1-39** Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 2 of 6)

3. Completely close the document feeder.

**Figure 1-40** Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 3 of 6)

4. Firmly push down on the four corners of the document feeder to adhere the white backing to the document feeder.

**Figure 1-41** Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 4 of 6)

5. Carefully open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-42** Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 5 of 6)

6. Firmly press on the white backing over the areas shown below to make sure that the rubber stoppers are completely adhered to the document feeder.

**Figure 1-43** Install a replacement document feeder white backing (M830; 6 of 6)



## Background selector (M830 only)

1. Open the document-feeder door.

**Figure 1-44** Remove the background selector (M830; 1 of 4)

2. Rotate the input tray up.

**Figure 1-45** Remove the background selector (M830; 2 of 4)

3. Release two tabs.

**Figure 1-46** Remove the background selector (M830; 3 of 4)

4. Slide the background selector away from the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-47** Remove the background selector (M830; 4 of 4)

## Reinstall the background selector (M830 only)

Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.



**NOTE:** If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

**Figure 1-48** Reinstall the background selector (M830)



## Control-panel assembly (M806 only)

1. Tilt the control panel up.

**Figure 1-49** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 1 of 10)



2. Release one tab.

**Figure 1-50** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 2 of 10)

3. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-51** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 3 of 10)



4. Rotate one blue locking latch to release it.

**Figure 1-52** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 4 of 10)

5. Rotate the back of the control panel up and away from the product.

**Figure 1-53** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 5 of 10)

6. Lift the control-panel assembly up and off of the product.

---

 **CAUTION:** The control panel is still attached to the product by the control-panel cables.

---

**Figure 1-54** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 6 of 10)

7. Tilt the control panel forward to gain access to the control-panel connectors.

**Figure 1-55** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 7 of 10)

8. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one ground wire (callout 2).

**Figure 1-56** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 8 of 10)

9. Disconnect two USB cables (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

**Figure 1-57** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 9 of 10)

10. Lift the control-panel assembly up and away from the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-58** Remove the control-panel assembly (M806; 10 of 10)



## Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M806 only)

Make sure that the USB cables (callout 1) are connected to the correct connectors. See the label (callout 2) next to the connectors.

**Figure 1-59** Reinstall the control panel (M806)

## Control-panel assembly (M830 only)

1. Tilt the control panel up.

**Figure 1-60** Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 1 of 7)



2. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-61** Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 2 of 7)



3. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

**Figure 1-62** Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 3 of 7)

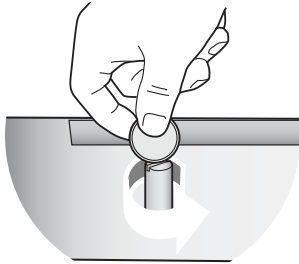
4. Disconnect two connectors.

**Figure 1-63** Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 4 of 7)

5. Remove one screw.

 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

**Figure 1-64** Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 5 of 7)



6. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

**Figure 1-65** Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 6 of 7)



7. Slide the control panel towards the front of the product to remove it.



**Reinstallation tip** If you are installing a replacement control-panel assembly, remove the keyboard assembly so that it can be installed on the replacement control-panel assembly. See [Keyboard assembly \(M830 only\) on page 49](#).

**Figure 1-66** Remove the control-panel assembly (M830; 7 of 7)

### Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830 only)

1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

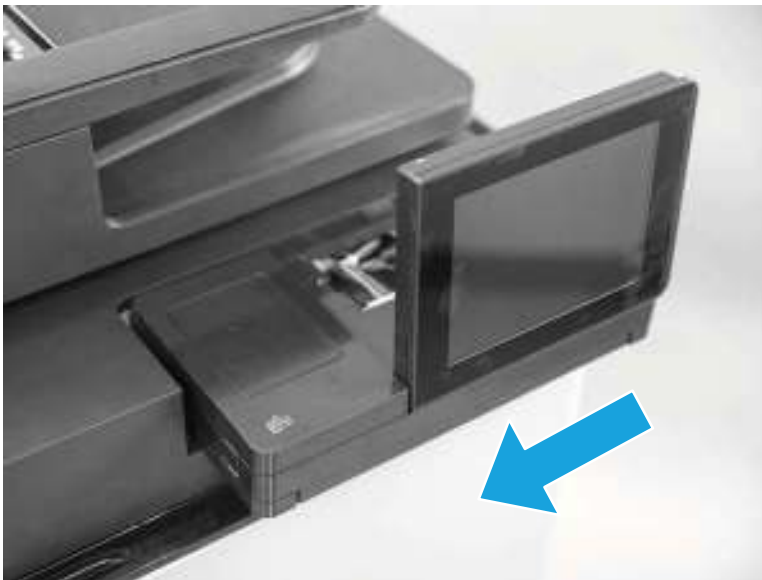
**Figure 1-67** Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830; 1 of 3)

2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

**Figure 1-68** Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830; 2 of 3)

3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

**Figure 1-69** Reinstall the control-panel assembly (M830; 3 of 3)



## Keyboard assembly (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control Panel (M830 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M830 only\) on page 44](#).

### Remove the keyboard assembly (M830 only)

1. Place the control panel on a flat surface.

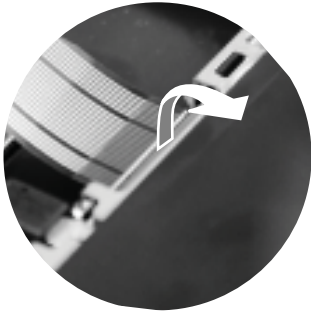
**Figure 1-70** Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 1 of 7)

2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

 **IMPORTANT:** This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

 **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

**Figure 1-71** Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 2 of 7)



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

**Figure 1-72** Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 3 of 7)



4. Tilt the screen down until it lays flat.

**Figure 1-73** Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 4 of 7)



5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

**Figure 1-74** Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 5 of 7)

6. Turn the control panel face-down on the surface.

**Figure 1-75** Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 6 of 7)

7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.

**Figure 1-76** Remove the keyboard assembly (M830; 7 of 7)

## Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830 only)

1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

**Figure 1-77** Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 1 of 7)

2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel.

**Figure 1-78** Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 2 of 7)

3. Turn the control panel face-up.

**Figure 1-79** Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 3 of 7)



4. Tilt the screen up.

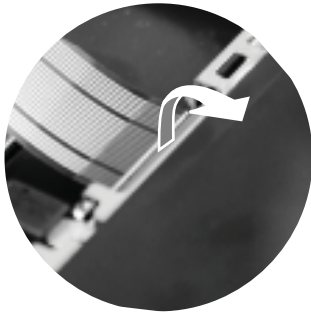
**Figure 1-80** Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 4 of 7)



5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

**CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

**Figure 1-81** Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 5 of 7)



6. Use your finger to carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

**IMPORTANT:** IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

**CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

**Figure 1-82** Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 6 of 7)



7. Slightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

**△ CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not use your full force to pull on the flat cable. A slight pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

**Figure 1-83** Reinstall the keyboard assembly (M830; 7 of 7)



## Pickup, feed, and separation rollers and pads

- [Document-feeder roller \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Document-feeder separation pad \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Tray 1 rollers](#)
- [Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers](#)
- [High-capacity input \(HCI\) rollers](#)

## Document-feeder roller (M830 only)

### Remove the document-feeder roller (M830 only)

**CAUTION:** If you are replacing the rollers, do not touch the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils deposited on the rollers might cause paper pickup problems.

1. Open the document-feeder door.

**Figure 1-84** Remove the document-feeder roller (M830; 1 of 3)

2. Release one tab, and then open the access door.

**Reinstallation tip** When the roller is reinstalled, the access door must be fully closed. When you close the door, you should hear two audible clicks. If, after replacing the roller document feeder, a document feeder jam message appears on the control panel display, make sure that the access door is fully closed.

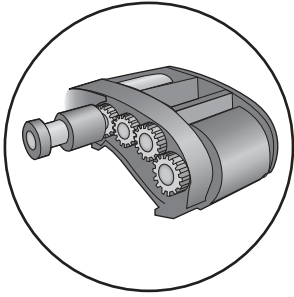
**Figure 1-85** Remove the document-feeder roller (M830; 2 of 3)





3. Slide the roller left, and then lift it up and out of the product.

**Figure 1-86** Remove the document-feeder roller (M830; 3 of 3)



### Reinstall the document-feeder roller (M830 only)

The roller assembly is keyed. When reinstalling the roller assembly, position the hex-shaped fitting on the shaft toward the rear of the product.

**Figure 1-87** Remove the document-feeder roller (M830)



## Document-feeder separation pad (M830 only)

### Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830 only)

 **CAUTION:** If you are replacing the pad, do not touch the surface of the replacement pad. Skin oils deposited on the pad might cause paper pickup problems.

---

1. Open the document-feeder door.

**Figure 1-88** Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 1 of 4)

2. Release one tab.

**Figure 1-89** Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 2 of 4)



3. Hold the access door open to allow the separation pad to partially release and pop up.



**NOTE:** The separation pad is spring-loaded and partially releases when the access door is opened.

**Figure 1-90** Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 3 of 4)



4. Lift the separation pad up and away from the product.



**CAUTION:** If the spring becomes dislodged, securely reinstall it as shown below.

**Figure 1-91** Remove the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 4 of 4)

## Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830 only)

1. Release and hold the separation pad access door open.

**Figure 1-92** Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 1 of 5)

2. Align the pins on the separation pad with the mounting slots.

**Figure 1-93** Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 2 of 5)



3. Carefully press down on the separation pad to compress the spring.

**Figure 1-94** Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 3 of 5)

4. Continue to press down on the separation pad, and then release the access door.

**Figure 1-95** Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 4 of 5)

5. Verify that the separation pad is correctly installed and that the access door is fully closed as shown below.

**Figure 1-96** Reinstall the document-feeder separation pad (M830; 5 of 5)

## Tray 1 rollers

 **CAUTION:** If you are replacing the rollers, do not touch the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils deposited on the rollers might cause paper pickup problems.

---

1. Open Tray 1.

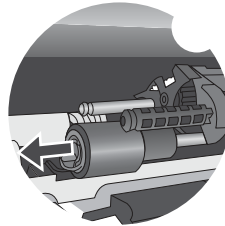
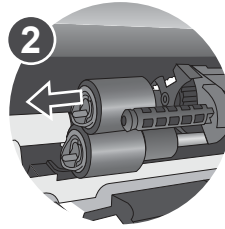
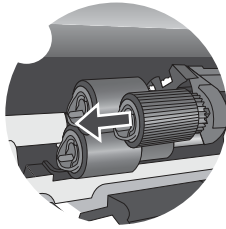
**Figure 1-97** Remove the Tray 1 rollers (1 of 3)

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the roller cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-98** Remove the Tray 1 rollers (2 of 3)

3. Pinch the tabs at the end of the rollers to release them, and then remove three rollers in the order shown below.

**Figure 1-99** Remove the Tray 1 rollers (3 of 3)

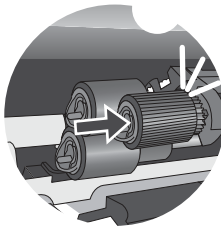
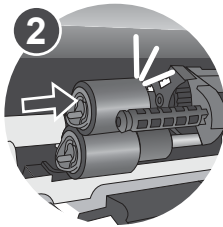
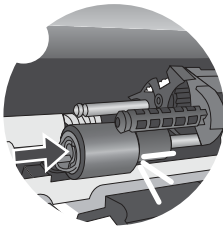




## Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers

Reinstall the rollers in the order shown below. Make sure that the rollers snap into place.

**Figure 1-100** Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers (1 of 2)



Insert the tab on the right side of the roller cover (callout 1) into the slot on the product (callout 2).

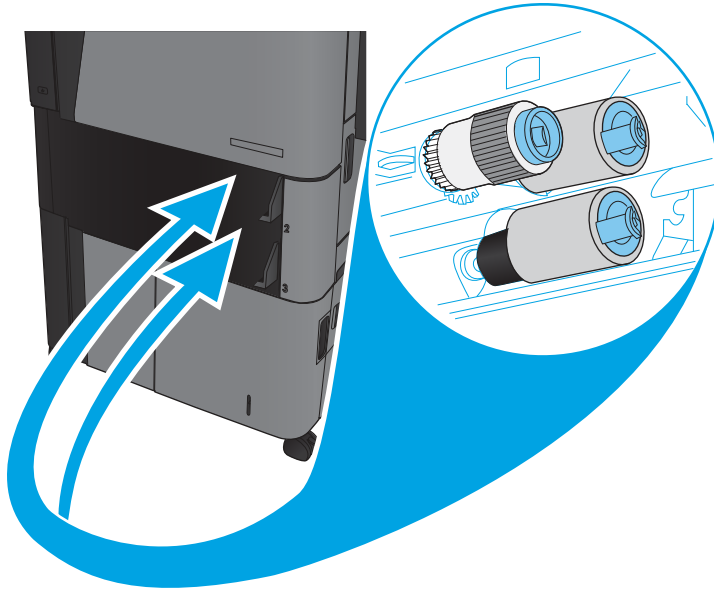
**Figure 1-101** Reinstall the Tray 1 rollers (2 of 2)

## Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers

**CAUTION:** If you are replacing the rollers, do not touch the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils deposited on the rollers might cause paper pickup problems.

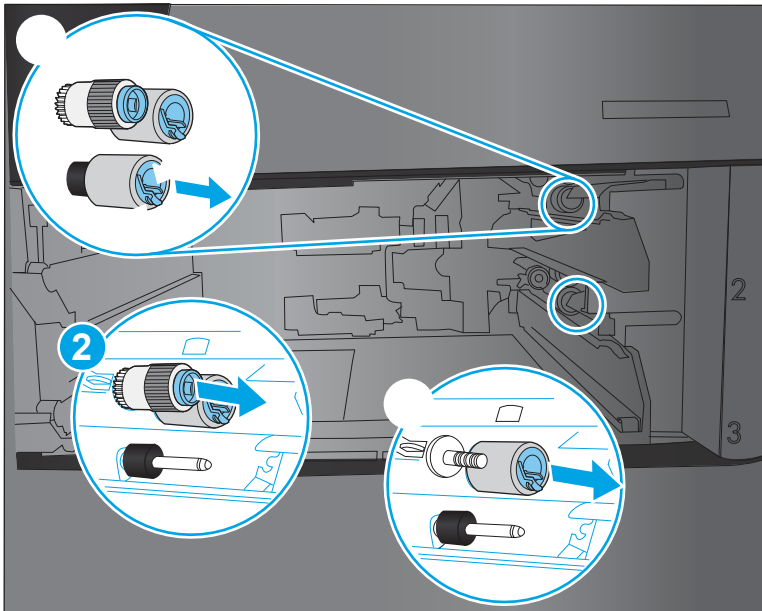
1. Remove Tray 2 and Tray 3. See [Tray 2 and Tray 3 on page 86](#).
2. Locate the rollers inside the tray cavity.

**Figure 1-102** Remove the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers (1 of 2)



3. Pinch the tabs at the end of the rollers to release them, and then remove three rollers in the order shown below.

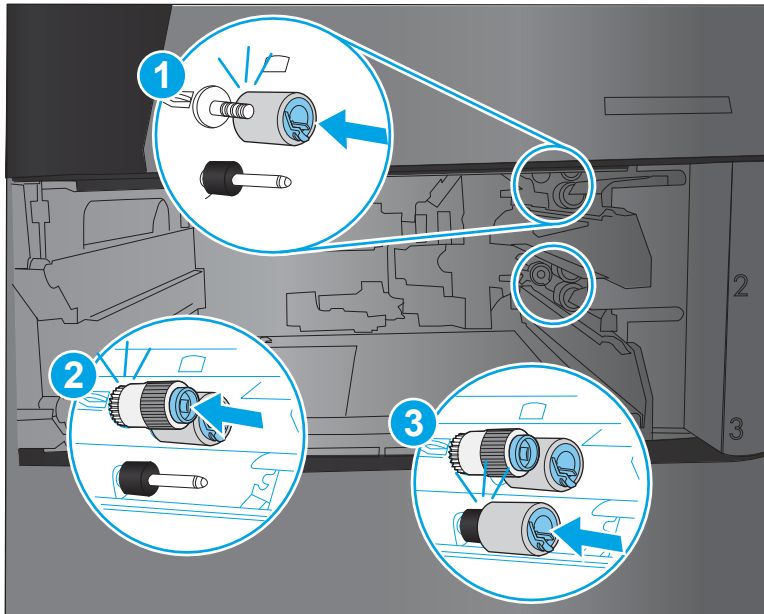
**Figure 1-103** Remove the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers (2 of 2)



## Reinstall the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers

Reinstall the rollers in the order shown below. Make sure that the rollers snap into place.

**Figure 1-104** Reinstall the Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers

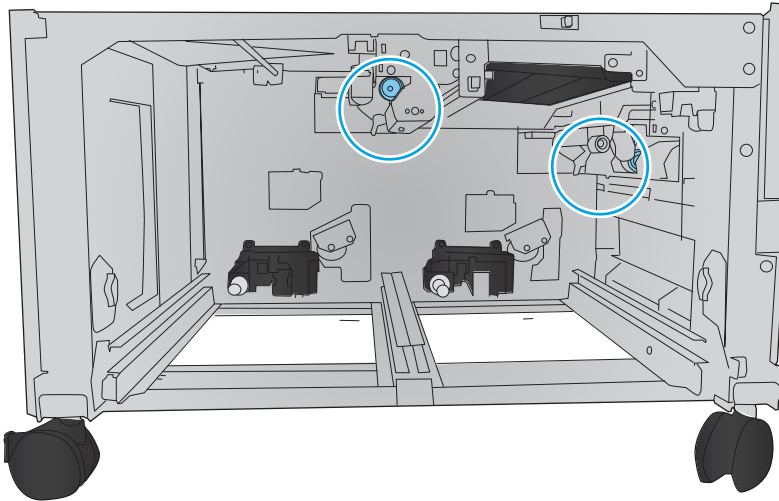


## High-capacity input (HCI) rollers

**CAUTION:** If you are replacing the rollers, do not touch the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils deposited on the rollers might cause paper pickup problems.

1. Remove the HCI right tray and the HCI left tray. See [HCI right tray on page 272](#) and [HCI left tray on page 273](#).
2. Locate the rollers inside the tray cavity.

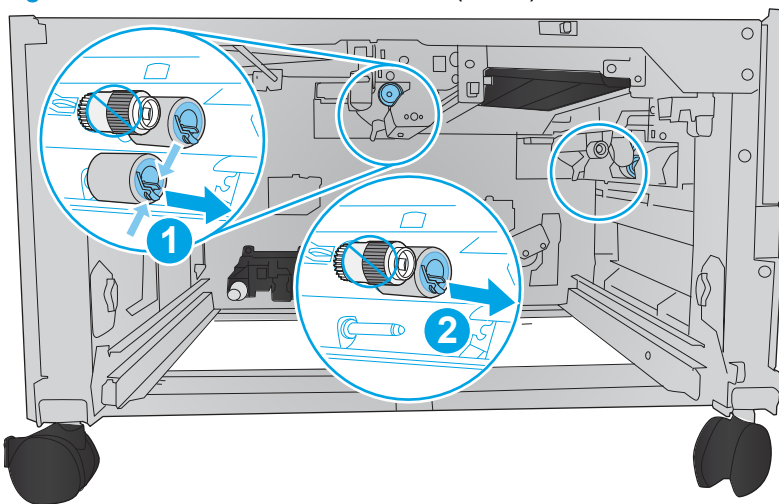
**Figure 1-105** Remove the HCI rollers (1 of 2)



3. Pinch the tabs at the end of the rollers to release them, and then remove two rollers in the order shown below.

**NOTE:** The uppermost roller is not replaced because it lasts the life of the product.

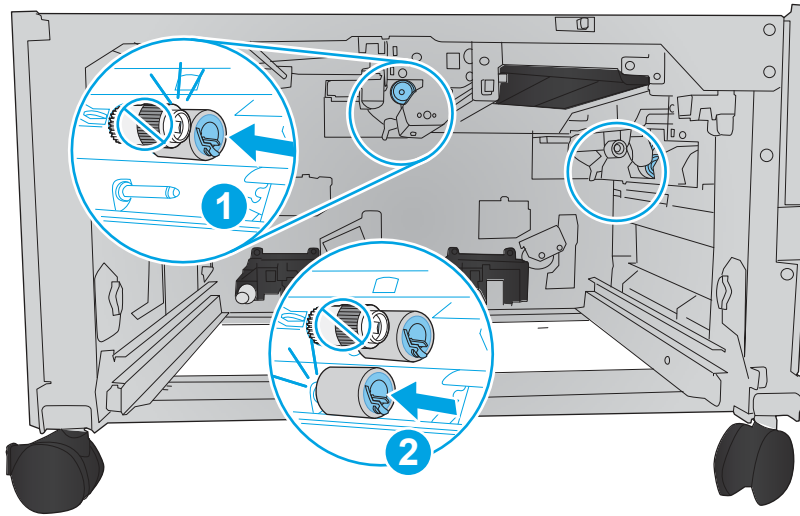
**Figure 1-106** Remove the HCI rollers (2 of 2)



## Reinstall the HCI rollers

Reinstall the rollers in the order shown below. Make sure that the rollers snap into place.

**Figure 1-107** Reinstall the HCI rollers



# Covers and doors



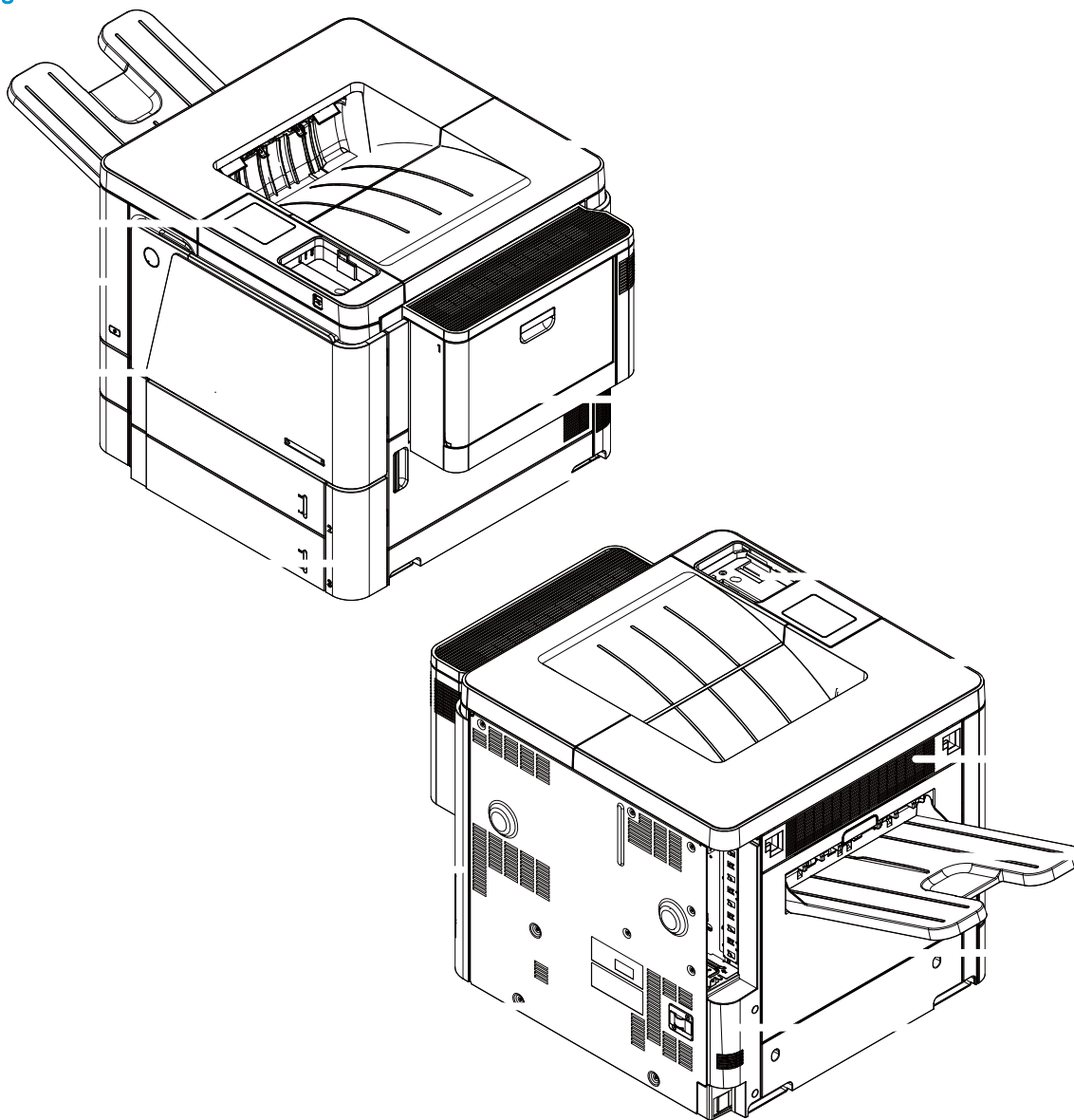
**TIP:** For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for your product.

---

- [Location of major components](#)
- [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Scanner left cover \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Scanner right cover \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Scanner front cover \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Tray 1 \(multipurpose tray\)](#)
- [Tray 2 and Tray 3](#)
- [Face-up tray \(output bin\)](#)
- [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Right top cover \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Left top cover \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Front door assembly](#)
- [Front inner cover](#)
- [Left rear cover](#)
- [Rear cover](#)
- [Right rear cover](#)
- [Left door assembly](#)
- [Right door assembly](#)
- [Left front cover](#)
- [Upper left cover \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Upper left cover \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Right lower front cover](#)
- [Right lower cover](#)

## Location of major components

**Figure 1-108** Covers and doors



**Table 1-1** Covers and doors

| Item | Description                          | Item | Description             |
|------|--------------------------------------|------|-------------------------|
| 1    | Right top cover (M806 only)          | 9    | Left rear cover         |
| 2    | Right door assembly                  | 10   | Rear cover              |
| 3    | Lower right cover                    | 11   | Right rear cover        |
| 4    | Control-panel base cover (M806 only) | 12   | Right lower front cover |
| 5    | Left top cover (M806 only)           | 13   | Front door assembly     |
| 6    | Upper left cover                     | 14   | Left front cover        |

**Table 1-1** Covers and doors (continued)

| Item | Description               | Item | Description                                         |
|------|---------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 7    | Face-up tray (output bin) | 15   | Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only) |
| 8    | Left door assembly        |      |                                                     |



## Scanner back cover (M830 only)

1. Remove three screws.

**Figure 1-109** Remove the scanner back cover (M830; 1 of 2)

2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-110** Remove the scanner back cover (M830; 2 of 2)

## Scanner left cover (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).

### Remove the scanner left cover (M830 only)

1. Raise the document feeder to the open position.

**Figure 1-111** Remove the scanner left cover (M830; 1 of 3)



2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-112** Remove the scanner left cover (M830; 2 of 3)

3. Slide the cover towards the rear of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-113** Remove the scanner left cover (M830; 3 of 3)

## Scanner right cover (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).

### Remove the scanner right cover (M830 only)

1. Raise the document feeder to the open position.

**Figure 1-114** Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 1 of 4)



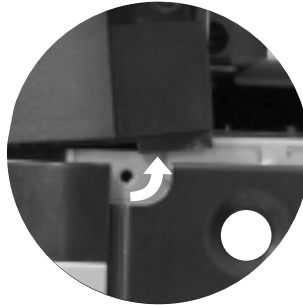
2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-115** Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 2 of 4)

3. Carefully flex the end of the cover to release one tab (callout 1), and then slightly slide the cover towards the rear of the product (callout 2) to release it.

 **TIP:** It might be easier to remove the product right rear cover and rear cover rather than flex the scanner right cover to release the tab.

**Figure 1-116** Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 3 of 4)



4. Slide the cover towards the rear of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-117** Remove the scanner right cover (M830; 4 of 4)

## Scanner front cover (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M830 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M830 only\) on page 91](#).
- Control panel assembly (M830 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M830 only\) on page 44](#).
- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).
- Scanner left cover (M830 only). See [Scanner left cover \(M830 only\) on page 76](#).
- Scanner right cover (M830 only). See [Scanner right cover \(M830 only\) on page 78](#).

### Remove the scanner front cover (M830 only)

1. Raise the document feeder to the open position.

**Figure 1-118** Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 1 of 7)



2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-119** Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 2 of 7)

3. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-120** Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 3 of 7)

4. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-121** Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 4 of 7)

5. Carefully flex the edge of the cover away from the scanner to release one tab, and then slightly slide the cover toward the front of the product so that the tab stays released.

**Figure 1-122** Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 5 of 7)



6. Carefully flex the edge of the cover away from the scanner to release one tab, and then slightly slide the cover toward the front of the product so that the tab stays released.

**Figure 1-123** Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 6 of 7)

7. Slide the cover towards the front of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-124** Remove the scanner front cover (M830; 7 of 7)

## Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

1. Open Tray 1 (callout 1), and then slide the tray extender out until it stops (callout 2).

**Figure 1-125** Remove Tray 1 (1 of 3)

2. Open Tray 1 about halfway until the flat edge of the right hinge slot in the door is aligned with the flat edge of the right hinge pin on the product. Slowly rotate the right side of the tray up and off of the right hinge pin to release it.

**Figure 1-126** Remove Tray 1 (2 of 3)

3. Slide the tray to the right to release it from the product.

**Figure 1-127** Remove Tray 1 (3 of 3)

## Tray 2 and Tray 3

Slide the tray open until it stops, and then lift up on the front of the tray to release it. Remove the tray.

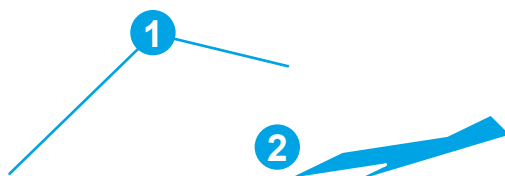
**Figure 1-128** Remove Tray 2 and Tray 3



## Face-up tray (output bin)

Release two hinge tabs (callout 1), and then slide the tray away from the product (callout 2) to remove it

**Figure 1-129** Remove the face-up tray



## Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only)

1. Note the location of four tabs under the HIP cover.

**Figure 1-130** Remove the HIP cover (M806; 1 of 3)

2. Release two tabs on the side of the HIP cover toward the back of the product.

**Figure 1-131** Remove the HIP cover (M806; 2 of 3)

3. Lift the HIP cover up to remove it.

**Figure 1-132** Remove the HIP cover (M806; 3 of 3)

## Reinstall the HIP cover (M806 only)

1. Align the tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots in the product (callout 2).

**Figure 1-133** Reinstall the HIP cover (M806; 1 of 2)

2. Lower the HIP cover into place.

**Figure 1-134** Reinstall the HIP cover (M806; 2 of 2)





## Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M830 only)

1. Note the location of four tabs under the HIP cover.

**Figure 1-135** Remove the HIP cover (M830; 1 of 3)

2. Release two tabs on the side of the HIP cover toward the control panel screen.

**Figure 1-136** Remove the HIP cover (M830; 2 of 3)

3. Remove the HIP cover.

**Figure 1-137** Remove the HIP cover (M830; 3 of 3)

## Reinstall the HIP cover (M830 only)

1. Align the tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots in the product (callout 2).

**Figure 1-138** Reinstall the HIP cover (M830; 1 of 2)

2. Lower the HIP cover into place.

**Figure 1-139** Reinstall the HIP cover (M830; 2 of 2)



## Control-panel base cover (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control panel (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).

### Remove the control-panel base cover (M806 only)

1. Open the right door. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2) inside the hardware integration pocket.

**Figure 1-140** Remove the control-panel base cover (M806; 1 of 3)

2. Slide the control-panel base cover toward the right door.

**Figure 1-141** Remove the control-panel base cover (M806; 2 of 3)

3. Slightly lift the left side of the cover (callout 1), and then slide it toward the right door (callout 2) to remove it.



---

**NOTE:** One USB cable under the cover is not captive when the cover is removed.

---

**Figure 1-142** Remove the control-panel base cover (M806; 3 of 3)

## Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806 only)

1. Position the USB cables, the ground wire, and the wire harness in the guides as shown below.

 **CAUTION:** The wire harness and cables might be pinched between the product and the cover if they are not positioned correctly in the guides.

---

**Figure 1-143** Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806; 1 of 3)

2. Insert the end of the USB cable through the opening in the cover.

**Figure 1-144** Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806; 2 of 3)

3. Open the right door. Position the tabs on the cover (callout 1) over the slots in the product (callout 2), and then slide the cover into place.

**Figure 1-145** Reinstall the control-panel base cover (M806; 3 of 3)

## Right top cover (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).

### Remove the right top cover (M806 only)

1. Release the USB cables, the ground wire, and the wire harness from the guides.

---

 **NOTE:** One USB cable is not captive when it is released from the guides. Do not lose the cable.

---

**Figure 1-146** Remove the right top cover (M806; 1 of 4)



2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-147** Remove the right top cover (M806; 2 of 4)

3. Open the right door, and then remove two screws.

**Figure 1-148** Remove the right top cover (M806; 3 of 4)

4. Lift the right top cover up, and then pass the cables and wire harness through the opening in the cover. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-149** Remove the right top cover (M806; 4 of 4)

### Reinstall the right top cover (M806 only)

1. Position the USB cable, the ground wire, and the wire harness (callout 1) in the guide on the product (callout 2).

---

 **CAUTION:** The wire harness and cables might be pinched between the product and the cover if they are not positioned correctly in the guides.

---

**Figure 1-150** Reinstall the right top cover (M806; 1 of 3)

2. Insert the USB cable, the ground wire, and the wire harness through the opening in the right top cover.

**Figure 1-151** Reinstall the right top cover (M806; 2 of 3)

3. Position the cables in the guides as shown below.



---

**TIP:** Make sure that the light-colored USB cable is positioned as shown below.

---

**Figure 1-152** Reinstall the right top cover (M806; 3 of 3)

## Left top cover (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#)

## Remove the left top cover (M806 only)

1. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-153** Remove the left top cover (M806; 1 of 2)

2. Slightly lift the side of the cover closest to the right door (callout 1), and then slide the cover towards the right door to remove it (callout 2).

**Figure 1-154** Remove the left top cover (M806; 2 of 2)

### Reinstall the left top cover (M806 only)

Align the tabs (callout 1) with the slots in the sheet metal (callout 2) before sliding the cover into place.

**Figure 1-155** Reinstall the left top cover (M806)

## Front door assembly

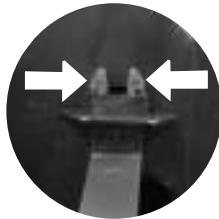
1. Open the front door.
2. Remove two stoppers (callout 1).

**Figure 1-156** Remove the front door assembly (1 of 3)



3. Release two tabs on each side of the clip, and then release the flexible door retainers.

**Figure 1-157** Remove the front door assembly (2 of 3)



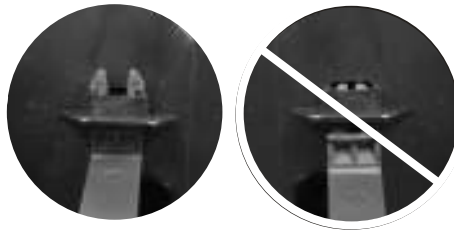
4. Rotate the door down as far as it will go (callout 1), and then slide the front-door assembly to the left to remove it from the product (callout 2).

**Figure 1-158** Remove the front door assembly (3 of 3)

### Reinstall the front door assembly

Make sure that the clips on the flexible door retainers are fully inserted into the holders on the product.

**Figure 1-159** Reinstall the front door assembly



## Front inner cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover (M806 only). See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Left front cover. See [Left front cover on page 121](#).
- Front door assembly. See [Front door assembly on page 104](#).
- Cartridge-release lever. See [Cartridge-release lever on page 151](#).
- Registration-jam-removal knob. See [Registration-jam-removal knob on page 154](#).
- Tray 2 and Tray 3. See [Tray 2 and Tray 3 on page 86](#).
- Right lower front cover. See [Right lower front cover on page 126](#).

### Remove the front inner cover

1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove two brackets (callout 2).

**Figure 1-160** Remove the front inner cover (1 of 3)



2. Remove six screws.

**Figure 1-161** Remove the front inner cover (2 of 3)

3. Release eight tabs, and then remove the front inner cover.

**Figure 1-162** Remove the front inner cover (3 of 3)

## Reinstall the front inner cover

Ensure all eight tabs on the front inner cover are snapped into place, and then install the tabs on the brackets into the slots in the product.

## Left rear cover

Open the left door assembly, remove three screws, and then remove the left rear cover.

**Figure 1-163** Remove the left rear cover.

## Reinstall the left rear cover

Align the tabs on the cover (callout 1) with the slots on the product (callout 2).

**Figure 1-164** Reinstall the left rear cover

## Rear cover

1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-165** Remove the rear cover (1 of 3)

2. Remove nine screws.

**Figure 1-166** Remove the rear cover (2 of 3)

3. Slightly flex the lower portion of the left rear cover away from the product (callout 1) to release the rear cover, rotate the edge of the rear cover away from the product (callout 2), and then slide it away from the product to remove it (callout 3).

**Figure 1-167** Remove the rear cover (3 of 3)

### Reinstall the rear cover

1. Align the three tabs on the cover with the slots on the product, and then rotate the cover toward the product to reinstall it.

**Figure 1-168** Reinstall the rear cover (1 of 2)

2. Slightly flex the lower portion of the left rear cover away from the product (callout 1) to install the edge of the rear cover (callout 2), and then reinstall 10 screws (nine for the rear cover, and one for the left rear cover).

**Figure 1-169** Reinstall the rear cover (2 of 2)

## Right rear cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the right rear cover

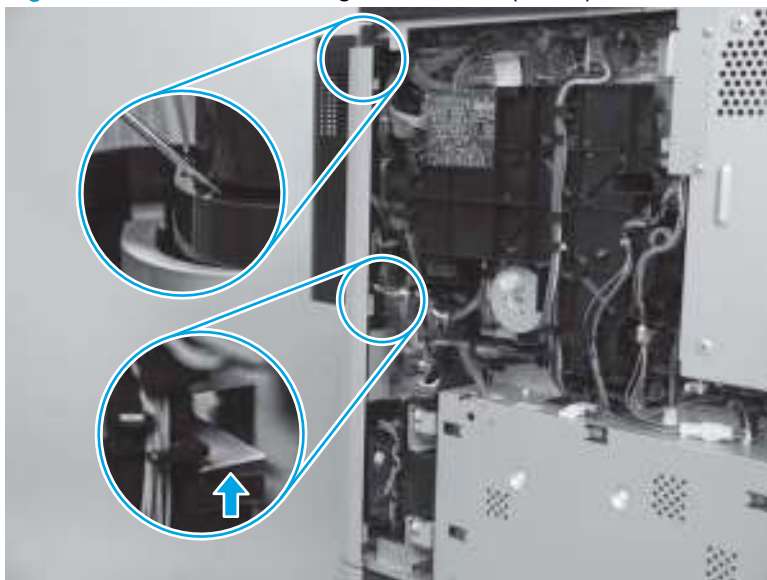
1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-170** Remove the right rear cover (1 of 5)

2. Release two tabs.

 **TIP:** Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release the top tab. Release the center tab by reaching inside the cover from the back of the product.

**Figure 1-171** Remove the right rear cover (2 of 5)



3. Tilt the top of the cover away from the product.



---

**TIP:** While tilting the top of the cover away from the product, you might need to slightly rotate the bottom of the cover to release it.

---

**Figure 1-172** Remove the right rear cover (3 of 5)

4. Place a finger over the opening in the sheet metal for the center tab to prevent it from re-engaging while the cover is being removed.



---

**NOTE:** The center tab is long and may break if it is allowed to re-engage while the cover is being pulled away from the product.

---

**Figure 1-173** Remove the right rear cover (4 of 5)



5. Slide the bottom of the cover toward the back of the product to remove it.



**Reinstallation tip** Slide the bottom of the right rear cover into place first, and then snap the tabs into place.

---

**Figure 1-174** Remove the right rear cover (5 of 5)

## Left door assembly

1. Open the left door assembly, and then locate the link arms on each side of the door.

**Figure 1-175** Remove the left door assembly (1 of 4).

2. Push the end of the link arm toward the product, and then rotate it down to release the link arm from the product.



**NOTE:** The link arm is spring-loaded and will retract into the left door assembly when it is released.

**Figure 1-176** Remove the left door assembly (2 of 4).



3. Lift the door up until the flat edge of the right hinge slot in the door is aligned with the flat edge of the right hinge pin on the product. Slowly rotate the right side of the door up and off of the right hinge pin to release it.

**Figure 1-177** Remove the left door assembly (3 of 4).



4. Slide the door to the right to release it from the left hinge pin, and then remove the door.

**Figure 1-178** Remove the left door assembly (4 of 4).

## Right door assembly

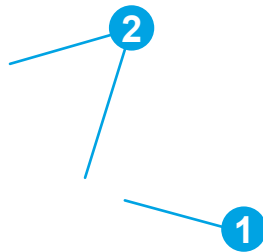
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Right rear cover. See [Right rear cover on page 113](#).

### Remove the right door assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the wire harness from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-179** Remove the right door assembly (1 of 3).



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then disconnect the clip (callout 2) on the flexible door retainer from the holder.

**Figure 1-180** Remove the right door assembly (2 of 3).

3. Open the right door assembly all the way, and then lift it up to remove it.

**Figure 1-181** Remove the right door assembly (3 of 3).

## Reinstall the right door assembly

Align the hinge brackets on the door with the hinge pins on the product when reinstalling the door.

**Figure 1-182** Reinstall the right door assembly

Make sure that the tabs on the flexible door retainer clip are fully inserted into the holder on the product.

**Figure 1-183** Reinstall the right door assembly

## Left front cover

1. Open the front door, and then open the left door.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-184** Remove the left front cover (1 of 2).

3. Release three tabs, and then remove the left front cover.

**Figure 1-185** Remove the left front cover (2 of 2).

## Upper left cover (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover (M806 only). See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Left front cover. See [Left front cover on page 121](#).

## Remove the upper left cover (M806 only)

1. Release three tabs using a small, flat-blade screwdriver.

**Figure 1-186** Remove the upper left cover (M806; 1 of 2).



2. Rotate the top of the upper left cover away from the product, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-187** Remove the upper left cover (M806; 2 of 2).

### Reinstall the upper left cover (M806 only)

Align the tabs on the bottom of the cover with the slots in the product, and then rotate the top of the cover onto the product to install it.

**Figure 1-188** Reinstall the upper left cover (M806)

## Upper left cover (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left front cover. See [Left front cover on page 121](#).

### Remove the upper left cover (M830 only)

1. Open the left door.
2. Use a flat blade screwdriver to release three tabs.

**Figure 1-189** Remove the upper left cover (M830; 1 of 2)

3. Rotate the top of the upper left cover away from the product, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-190** Remove the upper left cover (M830; 2 of 2)

### Reinstall the upper left cover (M830 only)

Align the tabs on the bottom of the cover with the slots in the product, and then rotate the top of the cover onto the product to install it.

**Figure 1-191** Reinstall the upper left cover (M830)

## Right lower front cover

1. Remove Tray 2 and Tray 3, and then remove two screws.

**Figure 1-192** Remove the right lower front cover (1 of 3).

2. Release two tabs using a small, flat-blade screwdriver.

**Figure 1-193** Remove the right lower front cover (2 of 3).

3. Remove the right lower front cover.

**Figure 1-194** Remove the right lower front cover (3 of 3)

## Right lower cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Right rear cover. See [Right rear cover on page 113](#).
- Right door assembly. See [Right door assembly on page 118](#).
- Right lower front cover. See [Right lower front cover on page 126](#).

### Remove the right lower cover

1. Remove three screws.

**Figure 1-195** Remove the right lower cover (1 of 2).

2. Rotate the bottom of the cover away from the product (callout 1). Gently pull down on the cover (callout 2) to release two tabs, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-196** Remove the right lower cover (2 of 2).



# Main assemblies



**TIP:** For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for your product.

---

- [Location of major components](#)
- [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Scanner assembly \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Cartridge-release lever](#)
- [Registration-jam-removal knob](#)
- [Power supply fan](#)
- [Cartridge fan](#)
- [Controller fan](#)
- [Paper-pickup assembly](#)
- [Registration assembly](#)
- [Auto-close assembly](#)
- [Low-voltage power supply \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Low-voltage power supply \(M830 only\)](#)
- [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\)](#)
- [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\)](#)
- [DC controller \(M806 only\)](#)
- [DC controller \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Cartridge contact assembly](#)
- [Drum motor](#)
- [Drive assembly \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Drive assembly \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Transfer paper-feed assembly](#)
- [Transfer-holder assembly](#)
- [Cartridge-lifter assembly \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Cartridge-lifter assembly \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Driver PCA](#)
- [Laser/scanner assembly](#)



- [Face-down paper-delivery assembly \(M806 only\)](#)
- [Paper-delivery fan assembly \(M830 only\)](#)
- [Fuser drive assembly](#)
- [Power switch assembly](#)
- [Interconnect PCA](#)
- [Formatter cage](#)
- [Fuser bias contact assembly](#)
- [Cooling-unit assembly](#)
- [Tag assembly](#)
- [Option-connector assembly](#)

# Location of major components

Figure 1-197 Main assemblies (1 of 2)

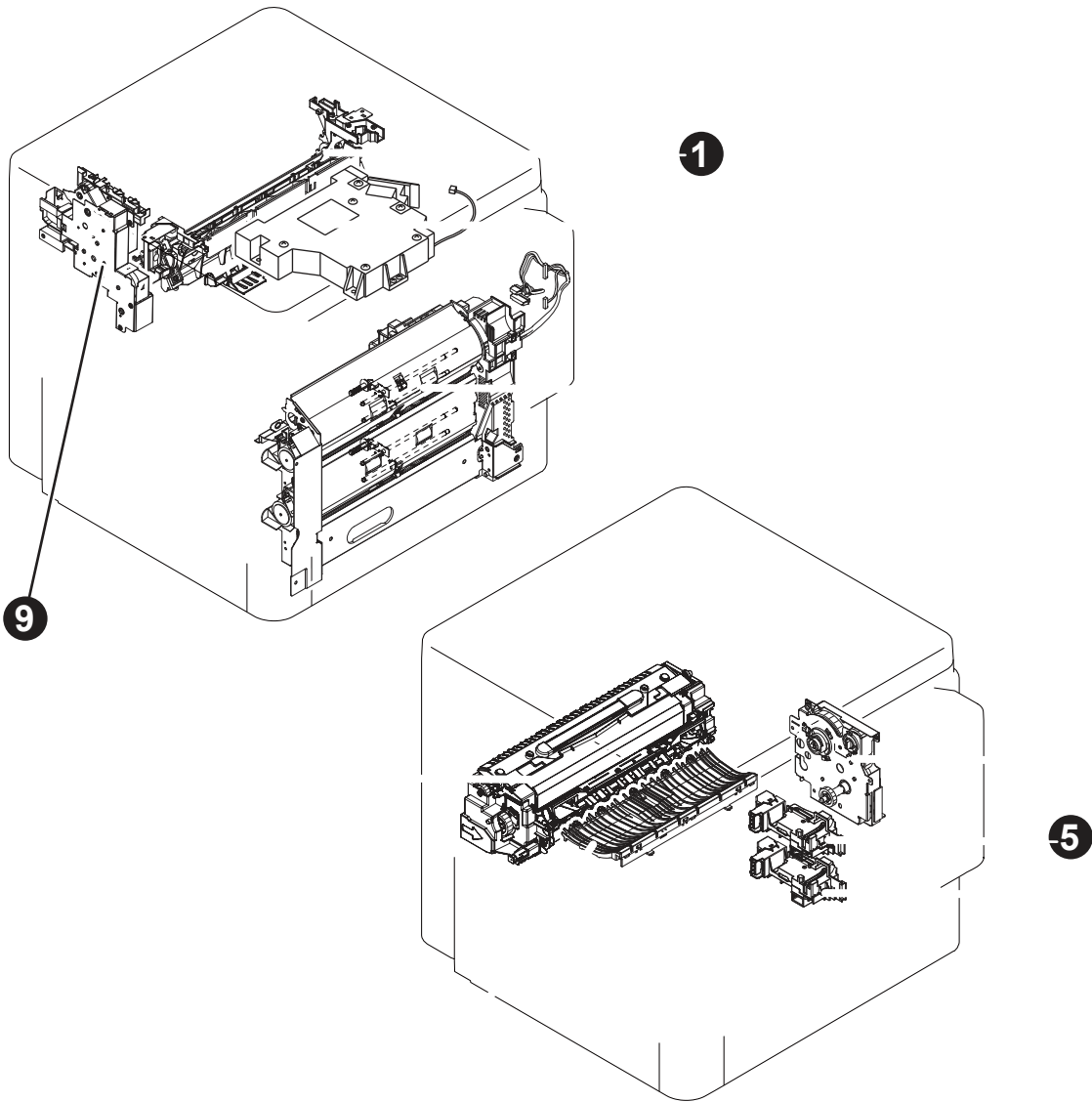


Table 1-2 Main assemblies (1 of 2)

| Item | Description               | Item | Description                  |
|------|---------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| 1    | Cartridge-lifter assembly | 6    | Lower auto-close assembly    |
| 2    | Laser/scanner assembly    | 7    | Transfer paper-feed assembly |
| 3    | Paper-pickup assembly     | 8    | Fuser                        |
| 4    | Drive assembly            | 9    | Fuser drive assembly         |
| 5    | Upper auto-close assembly |      |                              |

Figure 1-198 Main assemblies (2 of 2)

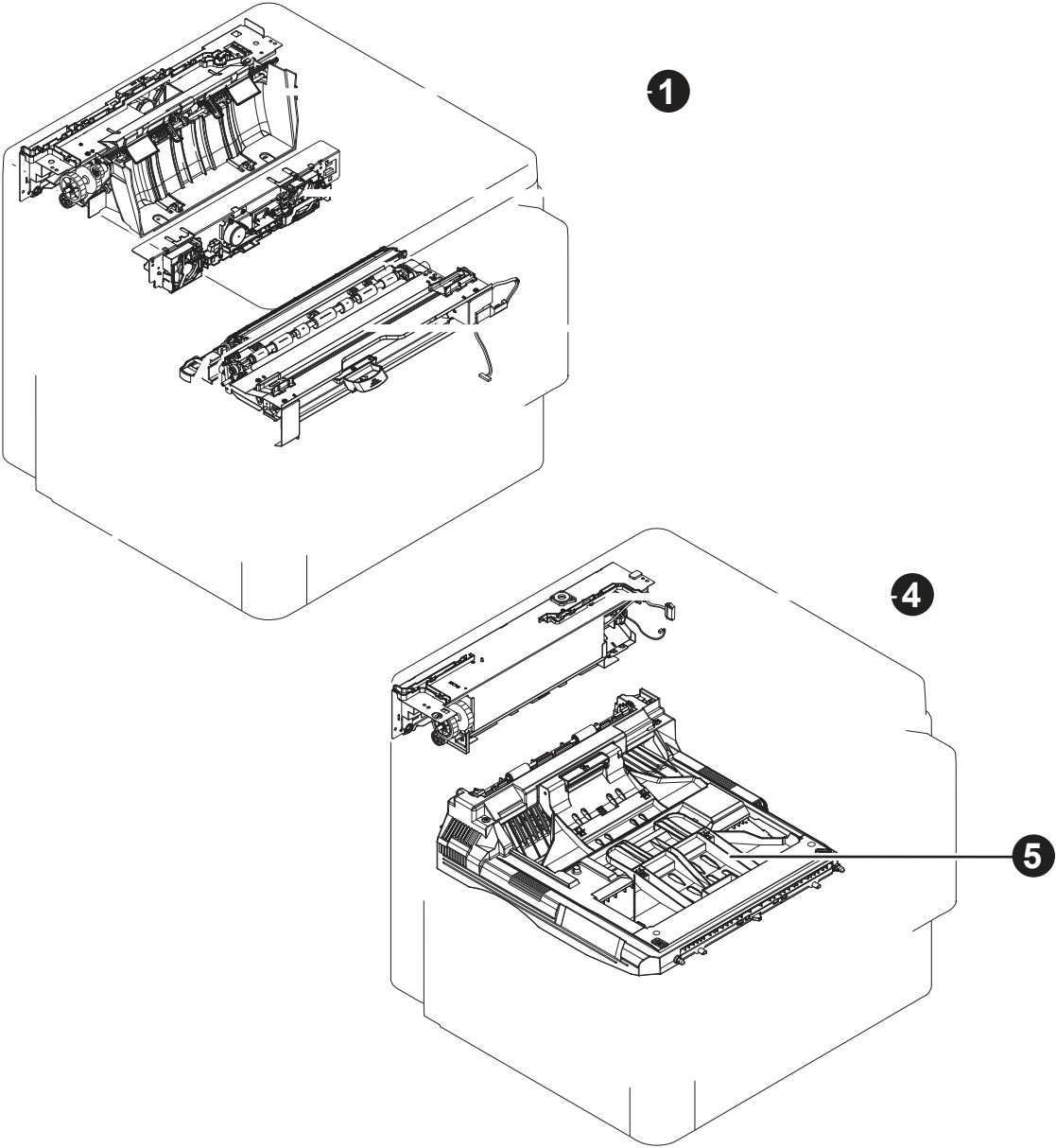


Table 1-3 Main assemblies (2 of 2)

| Item | Description                                   | Item | Description                             |
|------|-----------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1    | Face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806 only) | 4    | Paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only) |
| 2    | Cooling-unit assembly                         | 5    | Duplexer                                |
| 3    | Registration assembly                         | 6    | Transfer-roller assembly                |

Figure 1-199 Printed circuit assemblies (PCAs)

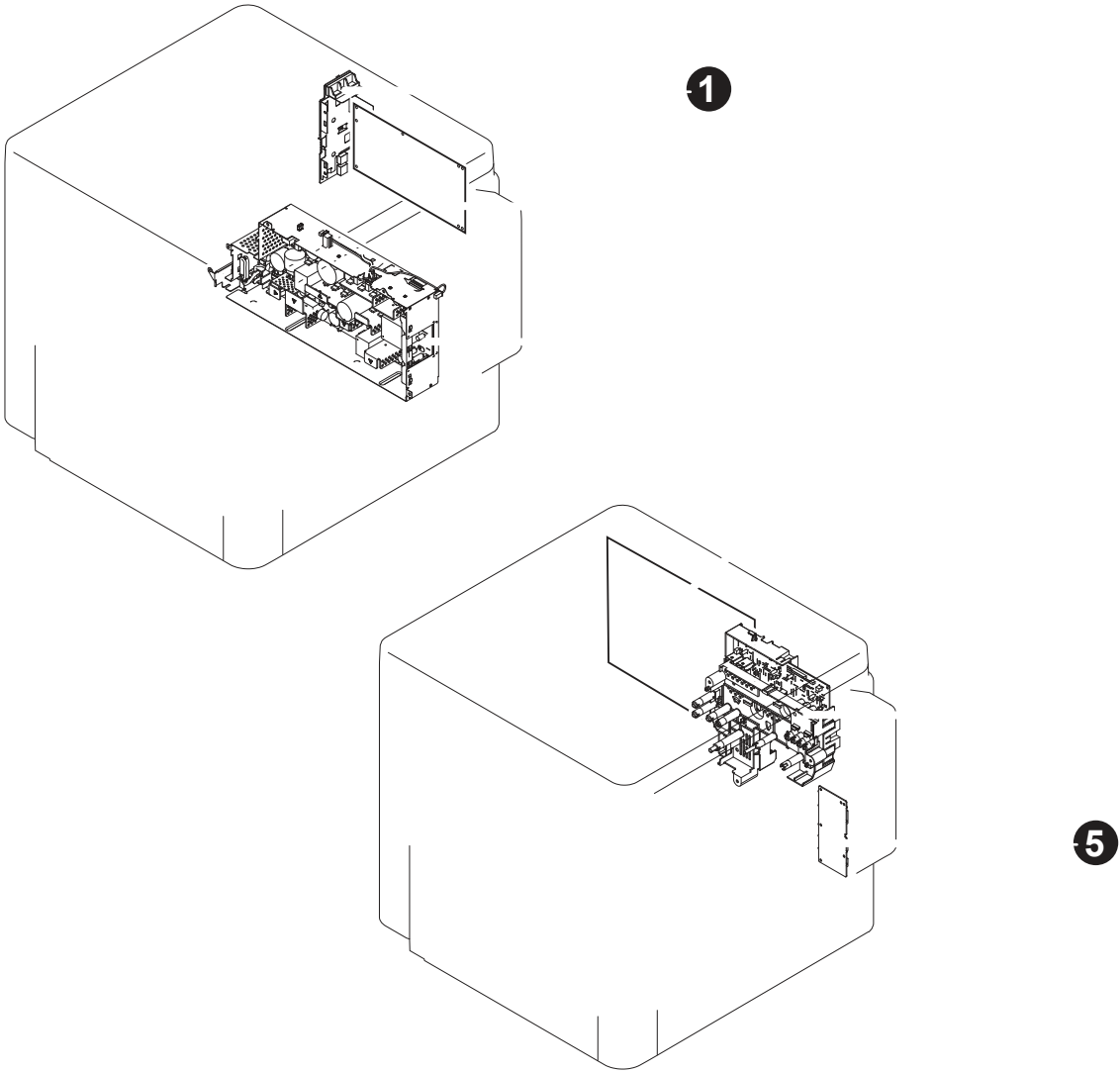


Table 1-4 Printed circuit assemblies (PCAs)

| Item | Description              | Item | Description               |
|------|--------------------------|------|---------------------------|
| 1    | Interconnect PCA         | 4    | High-voltage power supply |
| 2    | DC controller            | 5    | Driver PCA                |
| 3    | Low-voltage power supply | 6    | Formatter                 |

## Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).

### Remove the SCB (M830 only)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-200** Remove the SCB (M830; 1 of 10)

2. Remove the sheet-metal cover.

**Figure 1-201** Remove the SCB (M830; 2 of 10)

3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

**Figure 1-202** Remove the SCB (M830; 3 of 10)

4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

---

 **NOTE:** To make it easier to remove the SCB later in this procedure, make sure that you disconnect the connector (callout 1) at the product side of the wire harness, not at the SCB.

 **TIP:** Close the retainer (callout 2) to prevent the wire harnesses from being caught on it when the SCB is removed.

---

**Figure 1-203** Remove the SCB (M830; 4 of 10)

5. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-204** Remove the SCB (M830; 5 of 10)

6. Slightly raise the front edge of the SCB to release one connector.

**Figure 1-205** Remove the SCB (M830; 6 of 10)

7. With the front edge of the SCB raised, carefully pull the SCB straight away from the product to release it, and then slide the assembly out of the product to access the remaining connectors.

It might take considerable force to release the SCB from the chassis.

---

 **CAUTION:** The SCB is still attached to the scanner by two flat cables and two connectors. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

---

**Figure 1-206** Remove the SCB (M830; 7 of 10)

8. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1), and the USB and wire harness connectors (callout 2).

**Figure 1-207** Remove the SCB (M830; 8 of 10)



9. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the right side of the ferrite up and away from the holder (callout 2), and then remove the ferrite from the holder.



**Reinstallation tip** Before you reinstall the ferrite in the holder, connect the flat cable to the SCB.

---

**Figure 1-208** Remove the SCB (M830; 9 of 10)

10. Carefully slide the SCB out of the chassis.



**Reinstallation tip** Use care when you reinstall the SCB. Do not pinch or damage the flat cables or wire harnesses when the SCB is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-209** Remove the SCB (M830; 10 of 10)

## Install a replacement SCB (M830 only)

If you are installing a replacement SCB, remove one wire harness from the discarded SCB and install it on the replacement assembly.

**Figure 1-210** Install a replacment SCB (M830)

## Document feeder assembly (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).

### Remove the document feeder assembly (M830 only)

1. Remove two screws.



**NOTE:** The screw (callout 1) that secures the wire retainer is longer than other screws used in the product. Make sure that you use this screw when the retainer is reinstalled.



**Reinstallation tip** Make sure that you reattach the ground wire when you reinstall the second screw (callout 2).

**Figure 1-211** Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 1 of 7)

2. Carefully thread the flat cable (callout 1) and the wire harness (callout 2) through the opening in the scanner cover.

**Figure 1-212** Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 2 of 7)



3. Remove two screws.



---

**NOTE:** These screws are longer than other screws used in the product. Make sure that you use these screws when the document feeder assembly is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-213** Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 3 of 7)

4. Open the document feeder.

**Figure 1-214** Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 4 of 7)

5. From behind the product, pull up on the assembly until it stops.

**Figure 1-215** Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 5 of 7)

6. Carefully tilt the assembly back to release the hinge stops.

**Figure 1-216** Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 6 of 7)

7. Lift the assembly up and off of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-217** Remove the document feeder assembly (M830; 7 of 7)

## Reinstall the document feeder assembly (M830 only)



**NOTE:** If a replacement document feeder or scanner assembly is installed, you must install a replacement white backing on the document feeder. See [Document feeder white backing \(M830 only\) on page 30](#).

---

### Installing a replacement document feeder assembly

If a replacement document feeder is installed, do the following:

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Device Maintenance](#) button.
2. Open the [Service](#) menu.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the [Service Access Code](#) option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for this product: 10083013.
5. Reset the following values:
  - [Document Feeder Kit Interval](#); set to zero
  - [ADF Count](#); set to zero

## Scanner assembly (M830 only)

 **CAUTION:** The scanner assembly is heavy. HP recommends that two people lift the assembly off the product.

---

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- **Optional step:** Control panel assembly (M830 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M830 only\) on page 44](#).



**NOTE:** If you are installing a replacement scanner assembly, remove the control panel assembly so that it can be installed on the replacement scanner assembly.

---

- Upper left cover (M830 only). See [Upper left cover \(M830 only\) on page 124](#).
- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).
- Document feeder assembly (M830 only). See [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\) on page 141](#).
- Scanner control board (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).

## Remove the scanner assembly (M830 only)

1. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to remove one clip.

**Figure 1-218** Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 1 of 4)



2. Open the front door, use a small flat blade screwdriver to remove two clips, and then close the door.

**Figure 1-219** Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 2 of 4)

3. Open the right door, use a small flat blade screwdriver to remove one clip, and then close the door.

**Figure 1-220** Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 3 of 4)

4. Carefully lift the scanner assembly up and off of the product.

---

 **CAUTION:** The scanner assembly is heavy. HP recommends that two people lift the assembly off the product.

 **IMPORTANT:** The scanner assembly is installed on four grommets that can become dislodged when the assembly is removed. Do not lose the grommets when you remove the assembly.

 **Reinstallation tip** If the grommets are not present on the product chassis when you remove the scanner assembly, check the locator pins on the bottom of the scanner assembly. The grommets can adhere to the pins and do not remain on the product chassis when the assembly is removed.

---

**Figure 1-221** Remove the scanner assembly (M830; 4 of 4)

## Reinstall the scanner assembly (M830 only)

 **NOTE:** If a replacement document feeder or scanner assembly is installed, you must install a replacement white backing on the document feeder. See [Document feeder white backing \(M830 only\) on page 30](#).

### Reinstall the scanner assembly (M830)

1. Verify that the grounding grommet (callout 1), and the three rubber-insulator grommets (callout 2) are correctly installed before you place the scanner assembly on the product.

 **NOTE:** Replacement grommets (callout 3) are included in the replacement scanner kit. Do not place a replacement grommet on top of an existing grommet. Make sure that there is only one grommet in each position.

**Figure 1-222** Scanner assembly grommets (M830)



2. Make sure that you install the four retainer clips when the scanner assembly is reinstalled.



**NOTE:** Replacement retainer clips are included in the replacement scanner kit.

**Figure 1-223** Scanner assembly clips (M830)



### Installing a replacement scanner assembly (M830)

- ▲ Do the following:
  - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Device Maintenance](#) button.
  - b. Open the [Service](#) menu.
  - c. On the sign-in screen, select the [Service Access Code](#) option from the drop-down list.
  - d. Enter the following service access code for this product: 10083013.
  - e. Reset the following values:
    - [Flatbed Count](#); set to zero

## Cartridge-release lever

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover (M806 only). See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).

### Remove the cartridge-release lever

1. Open the front door.



**NOTE:** Remove the toner cartridge if it has not been removed prior to servicing the product. See [Toner cartridge on page 5](#).

2. Press and hold the white button on the cartridge-release lever (callout 1) and rotate it up to about the halfway position (callout 2).

**Figure 1-224** Remove the cartridge-release lever (1 of 4)

3. Remove two long screws from the cartridge-release lever shaft.



---

**NOTE:** Look down at the top of the product to locate these screws.

---

**Figure 1-225** Remove the cartridge-release lever (2 of 4).

4. Rotate the cartridge-release lever down to the vertical, unlocked position.

**Figure 1-226** Remove the cartridge-release lever (3 of 4).

5. Slide the cartridge-release lever away from the front of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-227** Remove the cartridge-release lever (4 of 4).

## Registration-jam-removal knob

1. Open the front door.



**NOTE:** Remove the toner cartridge if it has not been removed prior to servicing the product. See [Toner cartridge on page 5](#).

---

2. Locate the screw inside the center of the registration-jam-removal knob.

**Figure 1-228** Remove the registration-jam-removal knob (1 of 3)

3. Use a pair of needle-nose pliers to grasp and hold the registration shaft assembly (callout 1) to prevent the shaft from turning, and then remove one screw inside the knob (callout 2).



**TIP:** To locate the flat surfaces on the shaft, you might have to rotate the shaft by turning the registration-jam-removal knob.

---

**Figure 1-229** Remove the registration-jam-removal knob (2 of 3)



4. Pull the knob away from the product to remove it.



---

**NOTE:** One screw and one spring are not captive once the knob is removed.

---

**Figure 1-230** Remove the registration-jam-removal knob (3 of 3)

### Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob

1. Note the location of the shaft inside the product. The screw will be installed in the shaft.

**Figure 1-231** Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob (1 of 3)

2. Position the screw in the spring cap, and then hold the screw in place with a screwdriver. Insert the spring and the screw into the registration-jam-removal knob, and then align the end of the screw with the end of the shaft inside the product.

**Figure 1-232** Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob (2 of 3))

3. Use a pair of needle-nose pliers to grasp and hold the registration shaft assembly (callout 1) to prevent the shaft from turning, and then tighten the screw inside the knob (callout 2).

---

 **TIP:** To locate the flat surfaces on the shaft, you might have to rotate the shaft by turning the registration-jam-removal knob.

---

**Figure 1-233** Reinstall the registration-jam-removal knob (3 of 3)

## Power supply fan

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the power supply fan

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then carefully release the wire harnesses from the guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-234** Remove the power supply fan (1 of 2)

2. Firmly grasp the power supply fan, and then slide it out of the product.

**Figure 1-235** Remove the power supply fan (2 of 2)

## Reinstall the power supply fan

1. Make sure that the fan wires are routed correctly as shown below.

**Figure 1-236** Reinstall the power supply fan (1 of 3)

2. Make sure that the label on the fan (callout 1) and the wire harness (callout 2) are positioned as shown below when reinstalling the fan.

**Figure 1-237** Reinstall the power supply fan (2 of 3)

3. Make sure that the embossed arrow on the fan is visible and pointing the same direction as the embossed arrow on the exhaust duct.

**Figure 1-238** Reinstall the power supply fan (3 of 3)

## Cartridge fan

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Right rear cover. See [Right rear cover on page 113](#).
- Right door assembly. See [Right door assembly on page 118](#).

### Remove the cartridge fan

1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-239** Remove the cartridge fan (1 of 5)

2. **M830 only:** Use a small flat blade screwdriver to remove one clip.

**Figure 1-240** Remove the cartridge fan (2 of 5)

3. Remove three screws.

**Figure 1-241** Remove the cartridge fan (3 of 5)

4. Release four tabs.



---

**Reinstallation tip** Slide the tabs into the product before you snap the fan into place.

---

**Figure 1-242** Remove the cartridge fan (4 of 5)

5. Rotate the fan upward, and then remove it.

**Figure 1-243** Remove the cartridge fan (5 of 5)





## Reinstall the cartridge fan

If the sheet-metal fan cage becomes dislodged when the fan assembly is removed, position the cage on the fan as shown below before reinstalling the fan. Make sure that the holes on the fan cage are positioned over the locator pins on the fan assembly.

**Figure 1-244** Reinstall the cartridge fan

## Controller fan

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the controller fan

1. Locate the controller fan below the formatter.

**Figure 1-245** Remove the controller fan (1 of 3)

2. Disconnect one connector, and then carefully remove the wire harness from the guide.

**Figure 1-246** Remove the controller fan (2 of 3)

3. Release two black tabs, and then slide the controller fan out of the product.

**Figure 1-247** Remove the controller fan (3 of 3)

## Reinstall the controller fan

When reinstalling the fan, make sure that it is positioned as shown below.

**Figure 1-248** Reinstall the controller fan (1 of 2)

Make sure that the embossed arrows on the side of the fan facing the left door of the product are positioned as shown below.

**Figure 1-249** Reinstall the controller fan (2 of 2)

## Paper-pickup assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Tray 2 and Tray 3. See [Tray 2 and Tray 3 on page 86](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Right rear cover. See [Right rear cover on page 113](#).
- Right door assembly. See [Right door assembly on page 118](#).
- Right lower front cover. See [Right lower front cover on page 126](#).
- Right lower cover. See [Right lower cover on page 128](#).

### Remove the paper-pickup assembly

1. Remove four screws, two from each tray rail.

**Figure 1-250** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1 of 7)

2. Remove the rails from the front of the product.

**Figure 1-251** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (2 of 7)

3. For products without a high-capacity input feeder installed, skip this step. Slide two levers toward the center (callout 1), and then lift up (callout 2) to remove the paper connecting unit.

**Figure 1-252** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (3 of 7).

4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) located on the back of the product near the low-voltage power supply. Release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-253** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (4 of 7)

5. Push the registration handle down slightly (callout 1), and then lift it up and out (callout 2) to gain access to the paper-pickup assembly.

---

 **Reinstallation tip** Make sure that the registration handle is in the raised position when reinstalling the paper-pickup assembly.

---

**Figure 1-254** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (5 of 7)



6. Open the front door, and then remove four screws.

**Figure 1-255** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (6 of 7)

7. Grasp the handle, and then lift the paper-pickup assembly out of the product.

---

 **CAUTION:** The paper-pickup assembly is heavy.

---

---

 **Reinstallation tip** Make sure not to pinch any of the wire harnesses when reinstalling the paper-pickup assembly. All four wire harnesses are routed through the guide on the chassis.

---

**Figure 1-256** Remove the paper-pickup assembly (7 of 7)



## Registration assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Tray 2 and Tray 3. See [Tray 2 and Tray 3 on page 86](#).
- Transfer roller assembly. See [Transfer-roller assembly on page 8](#).
- Right lower cover. See [Right lower cover on page 128](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Right rear cover. See [Right rear cover on page 113](#).
- Right door assembly. See [Right door assembly on page 118](#).
- Right lower front cover. See [Right lower front cover on page 126](#).
- Paper-pickup assembly. See [Paper-pickup assembly on page 167](#).
- Registration-jam-removal knob. See [Registration-jam-removal knob on page 154](#).

### Remove the registration assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) located on the back of the product near the low-voltage power supply. Remove the wire harness from the guides (callout 2)

**Figure 1-257** Remove the registration assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-258** Remove the registration assembly (2 of 3)

3. Slightly lift the registration assembly up, and then rotate it downward until you can remove it from the product.

**Figure 1-259** Remove the registration assembly (3 of 3).

## Auto-close assembly



**NOTE:** This procedure is for removing the lower auto-close assembly. This same procedure can also be used to remove the upper auto-close assembly.

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Tray 2 and Tray 3. See [Tray 2 and Tray 3 on page 86](#).

### Remove the auto-close assembly

1. Release one tab (callout 1) by pushing up on the bottom of the plastic cover (callout 2).



**NOTE:** The auto close assemblies are located at the back inside the Tray 2 and Tray 3 cavity.

**Figure 1-260** Remove the auto-close assembly (1 of 5)

2. Remove the plastic cover.

**Figure 1-261** Remove the auto-close assembly (2 of 5)

3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).



---

**NOTE:** Leave the connector connected at this time. It is easier to disconnect after the tab is released.

---

**Figure 1-262** Remove the auto-close assembly (3 of 5)

4. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-263** Remove the auto-close assembly (4 of 5)

5. Rotate the left side of the assembly away from the product (callout 1), and then slide it toward the left door (callout 2) to remove it.

**Figure 1-264** Remove the auto-close assembly (5 of 5)



## Reinstall the auto-close assembly

When reinstalling the cover, make sure that the tabs and slots on the cover (callout 1) are installed with the corresponding tabs and slots on the assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-265** Reinstall the auto-close assembly

## Low-voltage power supply (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806 only)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-266** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 1 of 4)

2. Disconnect three connectors.

**Figure 1-267** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 2 of 4)

3. Release one wire harness from the retainers (callout 1). Disconnect one connector (callout 2) by pressing the tab on the side of the connector while pulling the connectors apart.

**Figure 1-268** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 3 of 4)

4. Remove five screws, and then lift up slightly to remove the low-voltage power supply.

**Figure 1-269** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M806; 4 of 4)



## Low-voltage power supply (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

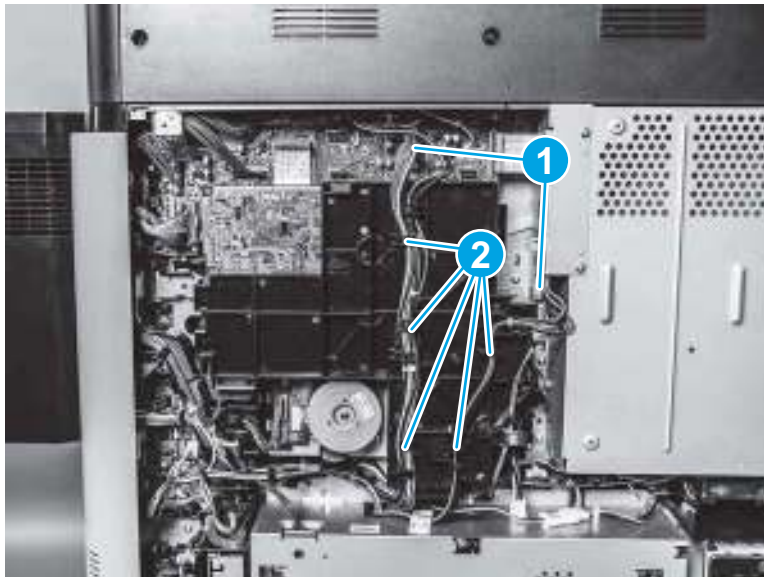
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830 only)

**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

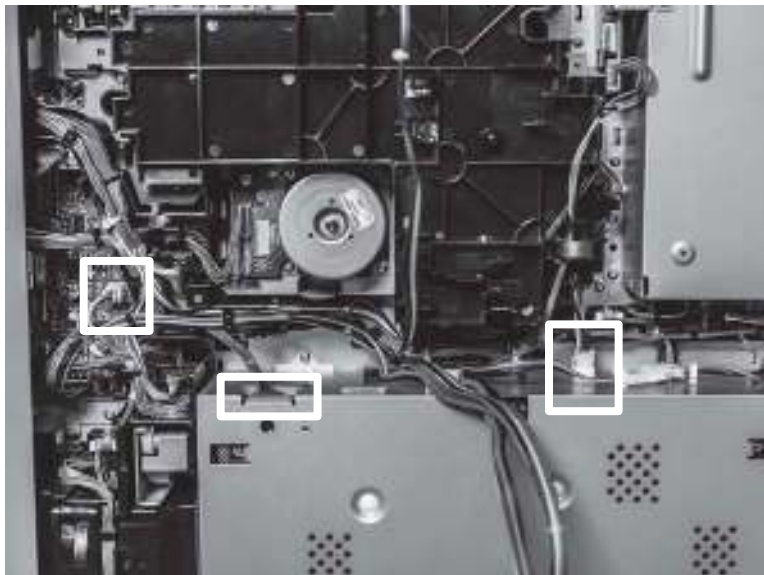
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-270** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 1 of 6)



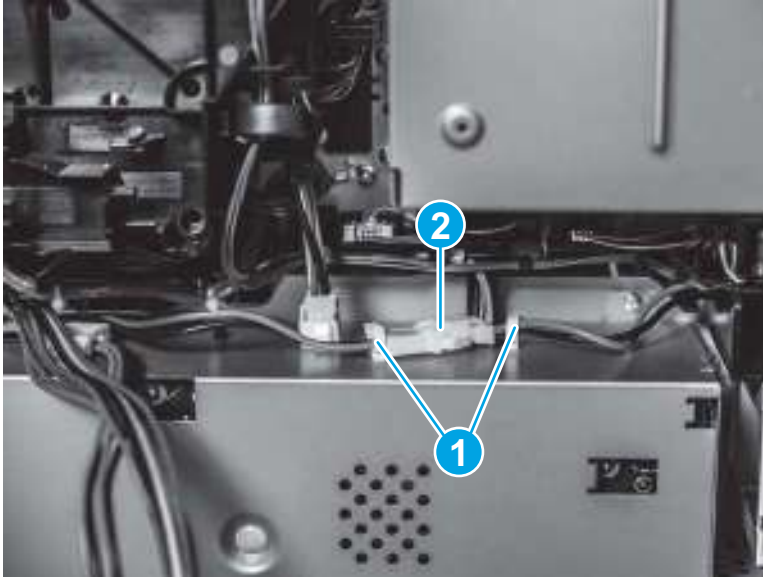
2. Disconnect three connectors.

**Figure 1-271** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 2 of 6)



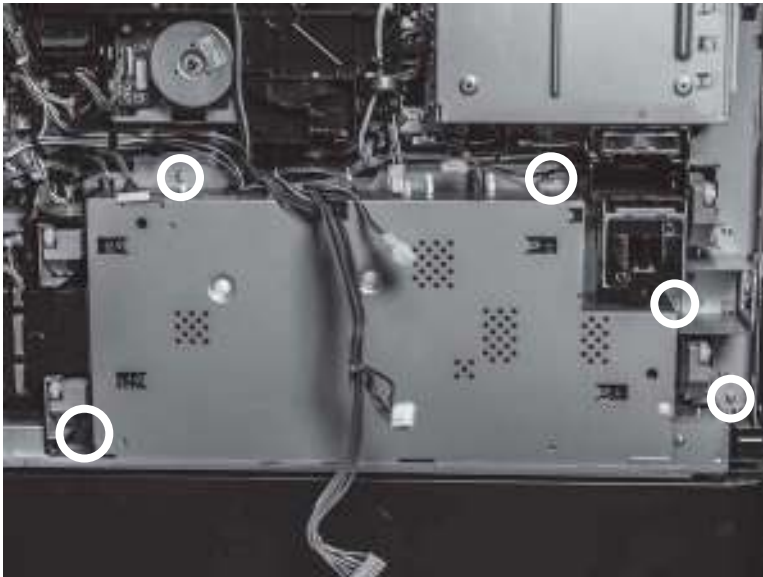
3. Release one wire harness from the retainers (callout 1). Disconnect one connector (callout 2) by pressing and holding the tab on the side of the connector while sliding it out of the socket.

**Figure 1-272** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 3 of 6)



4. Remove five screws.

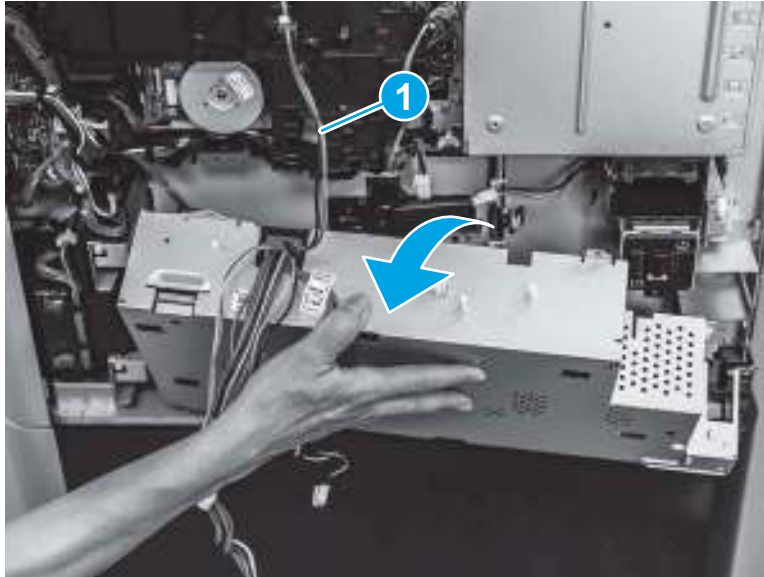
**Figure 1-273** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 4 of 6)



5. Lift up slightly, and then rotate the top of the low-voltage power supply away from the product until the back is facing up.

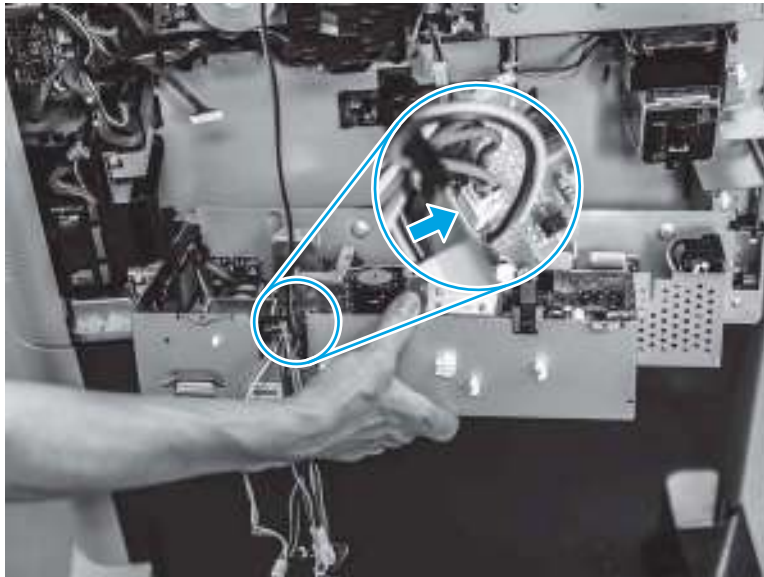
**CAUTION:** The low-voltage power supply is still connected to the product by one cable (callout 1).

**Figure 1-274** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 5 of 6)



6. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the low-voltage power supply.

**Figure 1-275** Remove the low-voltage power supply (M830; 6 of 6)



## High-voltage power supply (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806 only)



**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-276** Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806; 1 of 3)

2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then release one ferrite ring (callout 2).

**Figure 1-277** Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806; 2 of 3)

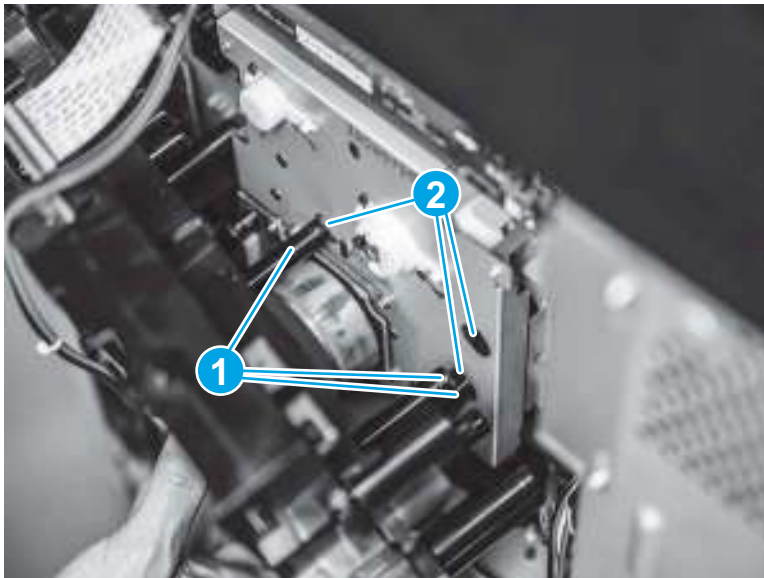
3. Remove three screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the high-voltage power supply.

**Figure 1-278** Remove the high-voltage power supply (M806; 3 of 3)

#### Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M806 only)

Insert the spring contacts (callout 1) on the high-voltage power supply into the holes (callout 2) in the product.

**Figure 1-279** Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M806)



## High-voltage power supply (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

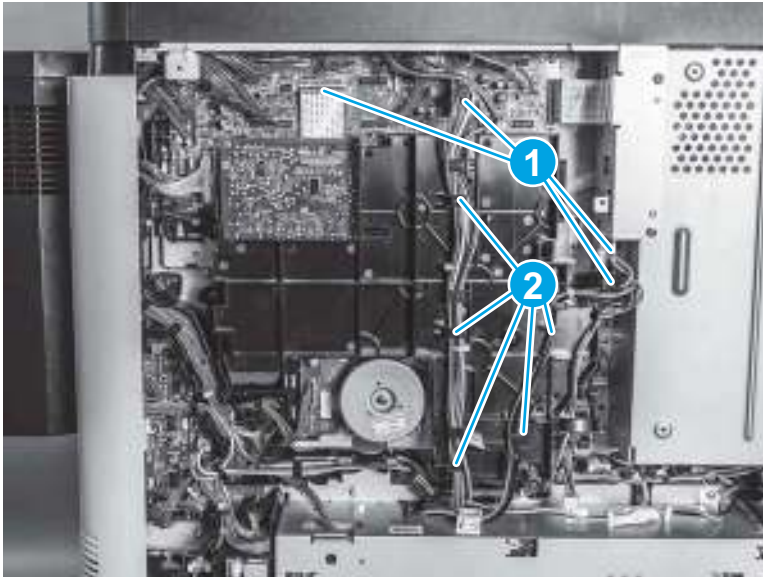
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830 only)

**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

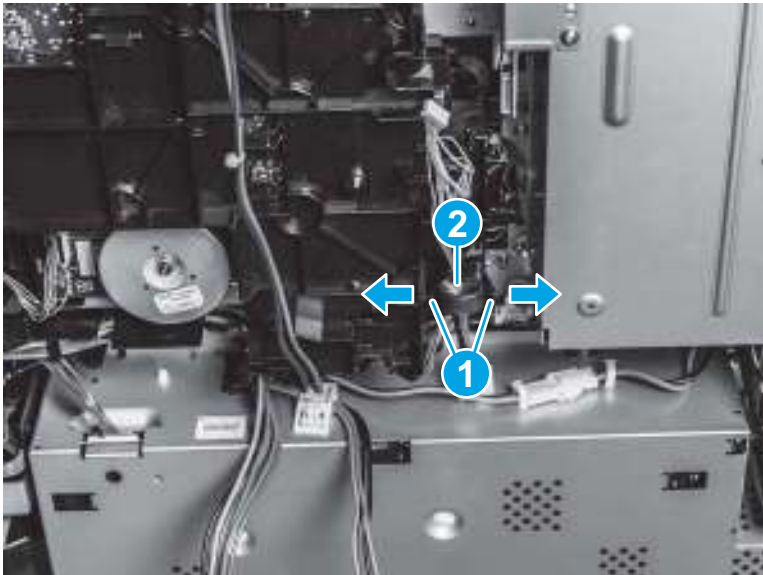
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-280** Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 1 of 4)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then release one ferrite ring (callout 2).

**Figure 1-281** Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 2 of 4)

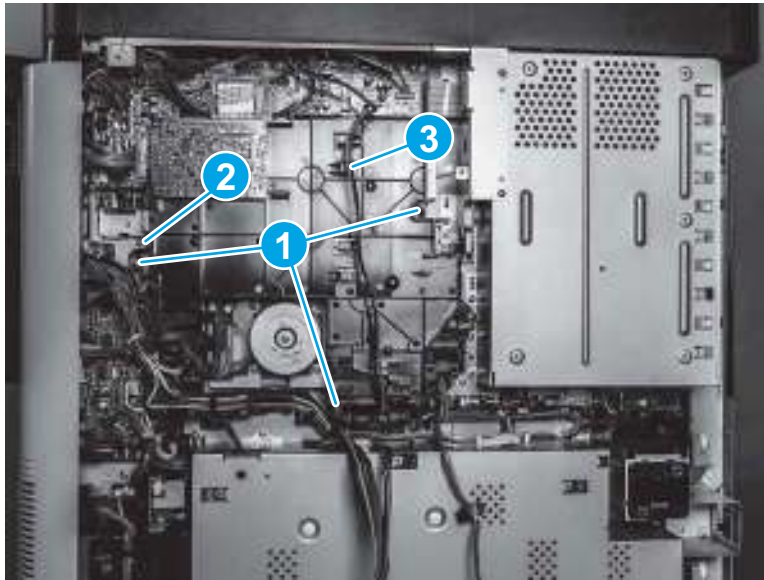




3. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

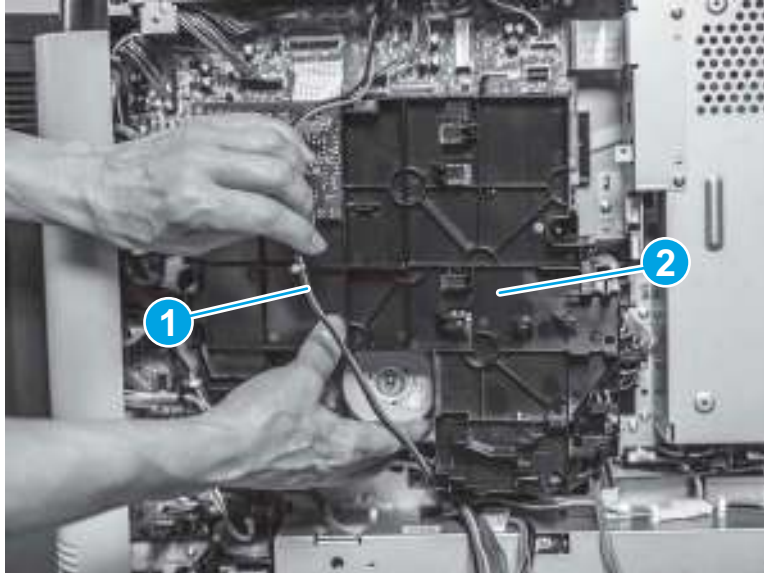
 **NOTE:** One cable (callout 3) is not disconnected.

**Figure 1-282** Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 3 of 4)



4. Hold one cable (callout 1) away from the product while removing the high-voltage power supply (callout 2). Make sure that the high-voltage power supply does not get caught on this cable.

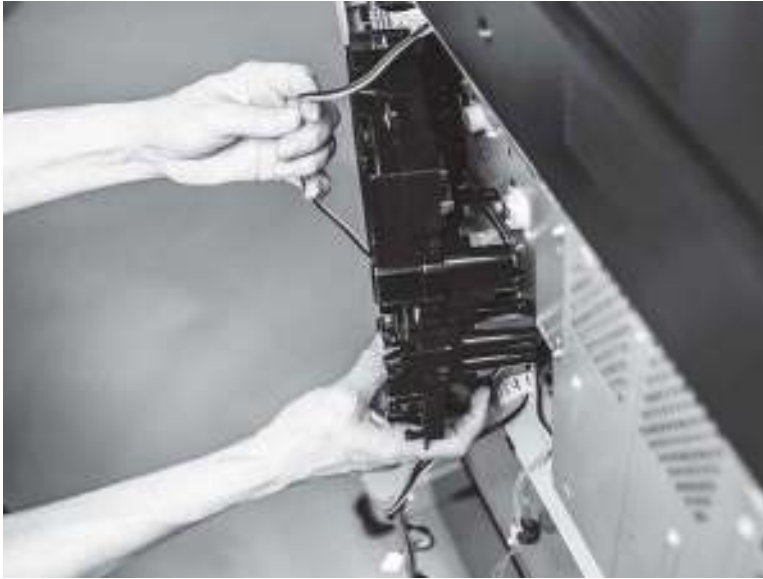
**Figure 1-283** Remove the high-voltage power supply (M830; 4 of 4)



### Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M830 only)

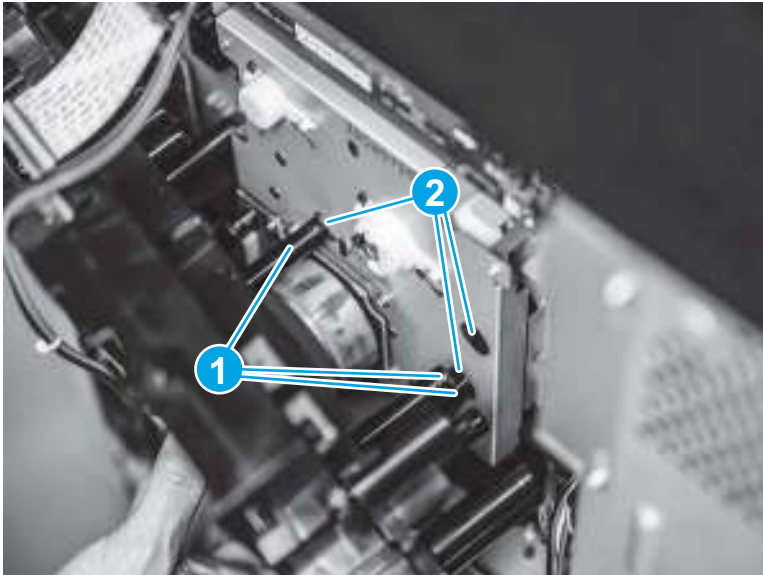
1. Hold one cable away from the product, and then slide the high-voltage power supply between the cable and the product.

**Figure 1-284** Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M830; 1 of 2)



2. Insert the spring contacts (callout 1) on the high-voltage power supply into the holes (callout 2) in the product.

**Figure 1-285** Reinstall the high-voltage power supply (M830; 2 of 2)





## DC controller (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M806 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\) on page 182](#).

### Remove the DC controller (M806 only)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (eighteen) on the DC controller.

 **NOTE:** The DC controller is located on the back of the printer behind the high-voltage power supply and above the drive assembly.

---

**Figure 1-286** Remove the DC controller (M806; 1 of 4)

2. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-287** Remove the DC controller (M806; 2 of 4)

3. Release four tabs, and then rotate the top edge of the DC controller away from the product.

**Figure 1-288** Remove the DC controller (M806; 3 of 4)



4. Lift the DC controller up to release it from three tabs, and then remove the DC controller.

 **Reinstallation tip** Insert the lower edge of the DC controller onto the three tabs. Align the screw holes on the DC controller with the screw holes on the product, and then push the DC Controller into place to engage the four tabs. Connect eighteen connectors.

**Figure 1-289** Remove the DC controller (M806; 4 of 4)

## DC controller (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M830 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\) on page 184](#).

### Remove the DC controller (M830 only)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

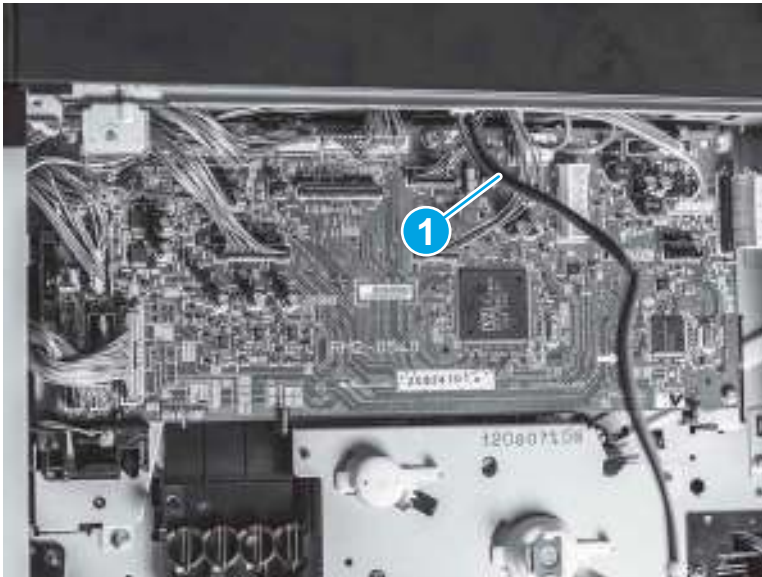
---

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (eighteen) on the DC controller. One cable (callout 1) is not disconnected.

 **NOTE:** The DC controller is located on the back of the printer behind the high-voltage power supply and above the drive assembly.

---

**Figure 1-290** Remove the DC controller (M830; 1 of 5)



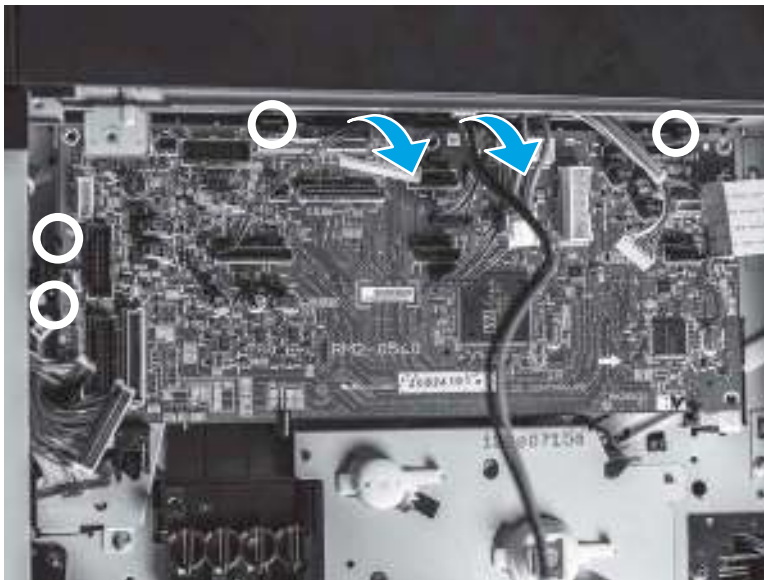
2. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-291** Remove the DC controller (M830; 2 of 5)



3. Release four tabs, and then rotate the top edge of the DC controller away from the product.

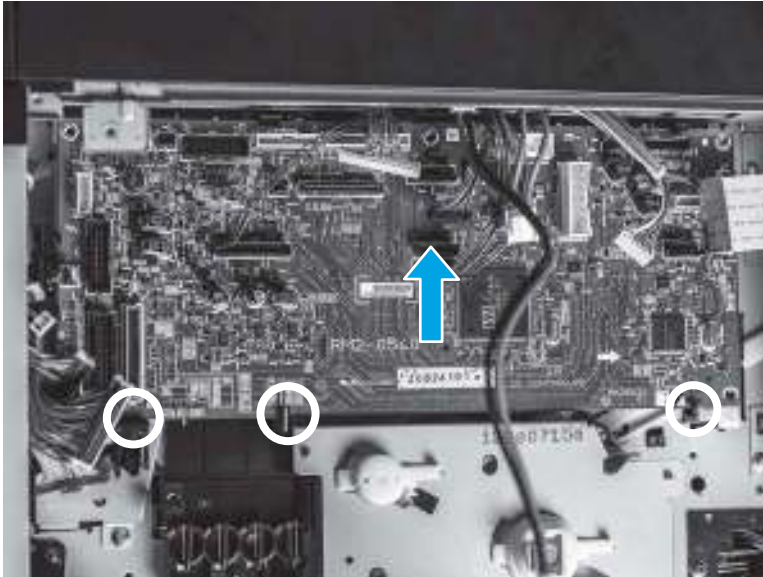
**Figure 1-292** Remove the DC controller (M830; 3 of 5)



4. Lift the DC controller up to release it from three tabs.

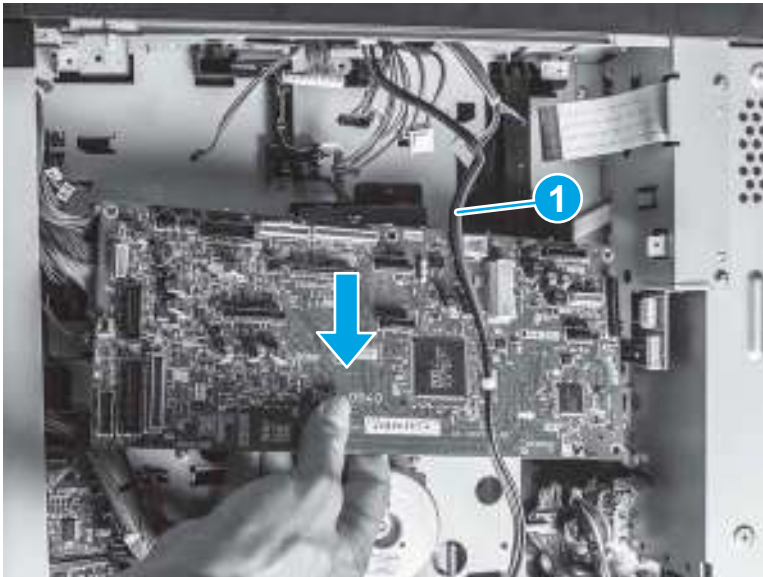
 **Reinstallation tip** Insert the lower edge of the DC controller onto the three tabs. Align the screw holes on the DC controller with the screw holes on the product, and then push the DC Controller into place to engage the four tabs. Connect eighteen connectors.

**Figure 1-293** Remove the DC controller (M830; 4 of 5)



5. Lower the DC controller, and then slide it under the cable (callout 1) to remove it.

**Figure 1-294** Remove the DC controller (M830; 5 of 5)



## Cartridge contact assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M806 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\) on page 182](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M830 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\) on page 184](#).
- DC Controller (M806 only). See [DC controller \(M806 only\) on page 187](#).
- DC Controller (M830 only). See [DC controller \(M830 only\) on page 190](#).

### Remove the cartridge contact assembly

1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-295** Remove the cartridge contact assembly (1 of 2)

2. Remove the cartridge contact assembly (2 of 2)

**Figure 1-296** Remove the cartridge contact assembly (2 of 2)

### Reinstall the cartridge contact assembly

Rotate the right side of the assembly (callout 1) into the product first. Install the notch on the assembly (callout 2) under the hook (callout 3) on the product.

**Figure 1-297** Reinstall the cartridge contact assembly



## Drum motor

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M806 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\) on page 182](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M830 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\) on page 184](#).

### Remove the drum motor

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the drum motor.

**Figure 1-298** Remove the drum motor

## Drive assembly (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M806 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\) on page 182](#).
- Drum motor. See [Drum motor on page 195](#).
- DC controller (M806 only). See [DC controller \(M806 only\) on page 187](#).

### Remove the drive assembly (M806 only)

1. Open the front door.



---

**NOTE:** Remove the toner cartridge if it has not been removed prior to servicing the product. See [Toner cartridge on page 5](#).

---

2. Press and hold the white button on the cartridge-release lever (callout 1) and rotate it up to about the halfway position (callout 2).

**Figure 1-299** Remove the drive assembly (M806; 1 of 3)

3. Pinch two tabs (callout 1) together with needle-nose pliers to release the activation lever (callout 2). Remove 3 screws (callout 3).

**Figure 1-300** Remove the drive assembly (M806; 2 of 3)

4. Rotate the drive assembly away from the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-301** Remove the drive assembly (M806; 3 of 3)

## Reinstall the drive assembly (M806 only)

Align the gears on the drive assembly with the openings in the product.

**Figure 1-302** Reinstall the drive assembly (M806; 1 of 2)

Make sure to reconnect the activation lever.

**Figure 1-303** Reinstall the drive assembly (M806; 2 of 2)

## Drive assembly (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M830 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\) on page 184](#).
- Drum motor. See [Drum motor on page 195](#).
- DC controller (M830 only). See [DC controller \(M830 only\) on page 190](#).

### Remove the drive assembly (M830 only)

1. Open the front door.



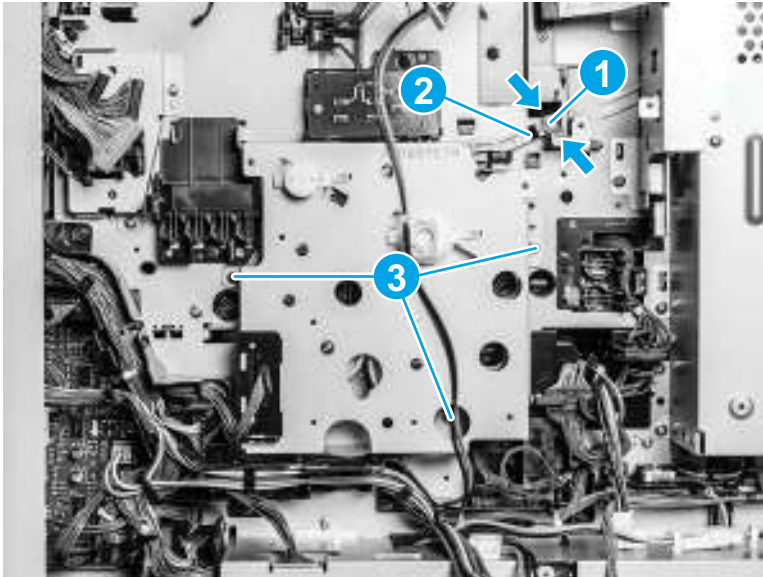
**NOTE:** Remove the toner cartridge if it has not been removed prior to servicing the product. See [Toner cartridge on page 5](#).

2. Press and hold the white button on the cartridge-release lever (callout 1) and rotate it up to about the halfway position (callout 2).

**Figure 1-304** Remove the drive assembly (M830; 1 of 3)

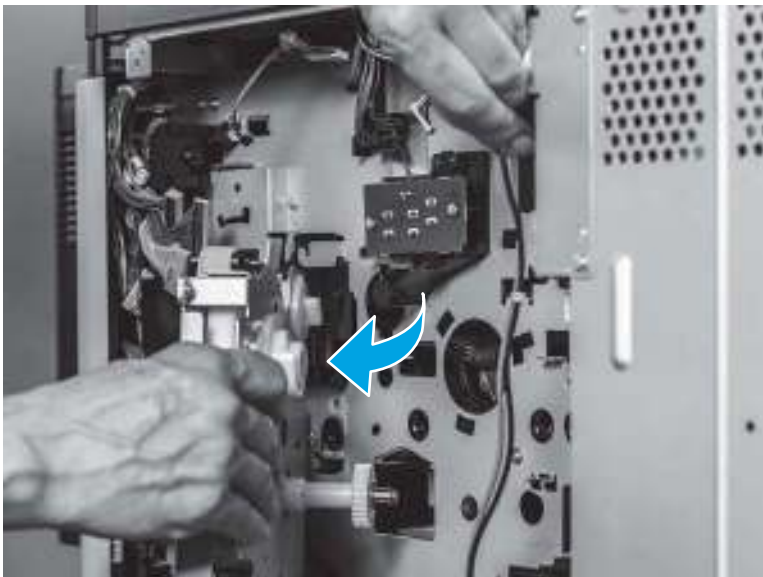
3. Pinch two tabs (callout 1) together with needle-nose pliers to release the activation lever (callout 2). Remove 3 screws (callout 3).

**Figure 1-305** Remove the drive assembly (M830; 2 of 3)



4. Rotate the drive assembly away from the product to remove it.

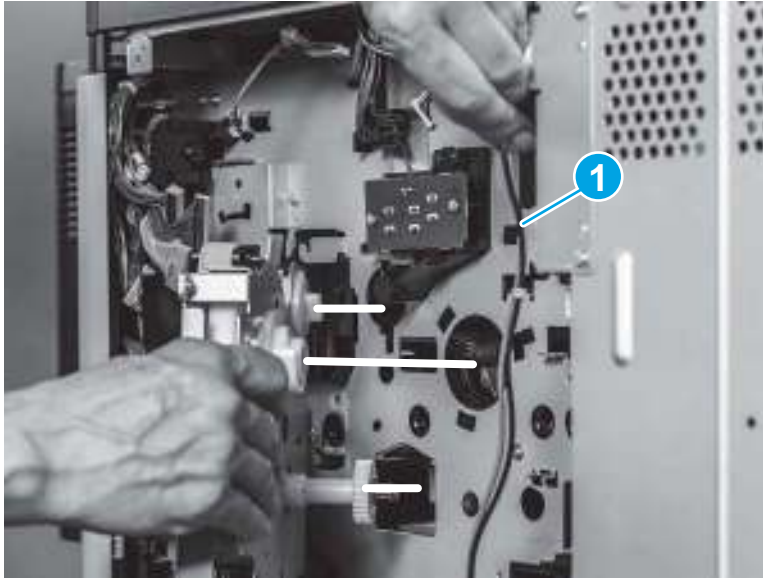
**Figure 1-306** Remove the drive assembly (M830; 3 of 3)



## Reinstall the drive assembly (M830 only)

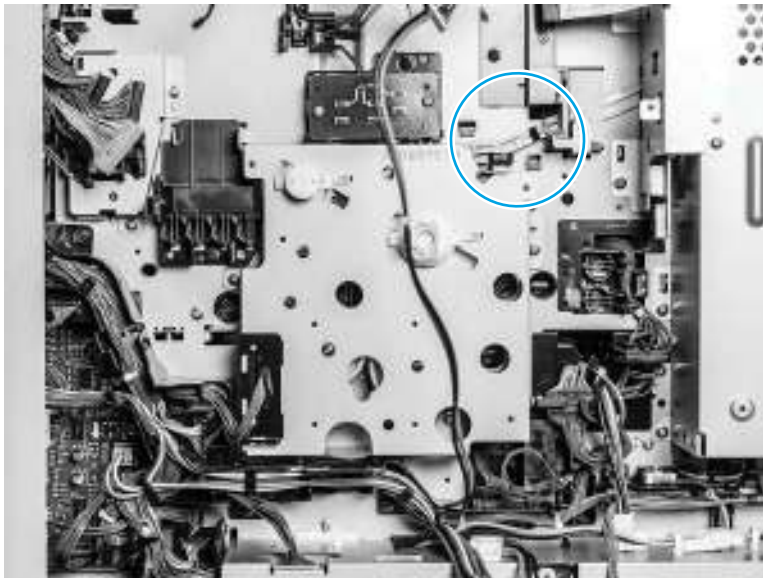
1. Hold the cable (callout 1) to one side. Align the gears on the drive assembly with the openings in the product.

**Figure 1-307** Reinstall the drive assembly (M830; 1 of 2)



2. Make sure to reconnect the activation lever.

**Figure 1-308** Reinstall the drive assembly (M830; 2 of 2)



## Transfer paper-feed assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Fuser. See [Fuser on page 10](#).
- Duplexer. See [Duplexer on page 9](#).

### Remove the transfer paper-feed assembly

1. Open the left door.
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then release two tabs (callout 2).

**Figure 1-309** Remove the transfer paper-feed assembly (1 of 2)



3. Slightly lift up the edge of the transfer paper-feed assembly (callout 1), and then lift and rotate it toward the left door (callout 2) to remove it.

**Figure 1-310** Remove the transfer paper-feed assembly (2 of 2)



### Reinstall the transfer paper-feed assembly

1. Position the tabs (callout 1) in the slots (callout 2) before sliding the transfer paper-feed assembly into the product.

**Figure 1-311** Reinstall the transfer paper-feed assembly (1 of 2)

2. Hold the flag (callout 1) in the down position when reinstalling the transfer paper-feed assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-312** Reinstall the transfer paper-feed assembly (2 of 2)

## Transfer-holder assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

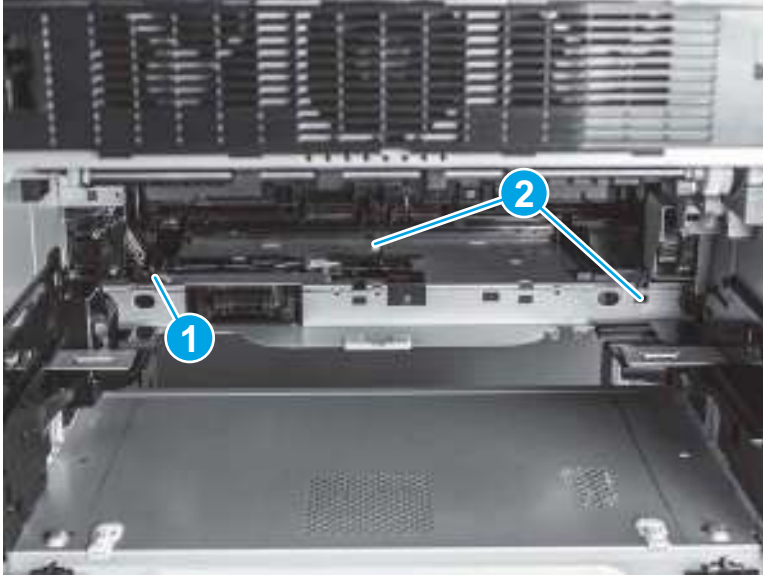
- Fuser. See [Fuser on page 10](#).
- Duplexer. See [Duplexer on page 9](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Right rear cover. See [Right rear cover on page 113](#).
- Right door assembly. See [Right door assembly on page 118](#).
- Right lower front cover. See [Right lower front cover on page 126](#).
- Right lower cover. See [Right lower cover on page 128](#).
- Paper-pickup assembly. See [Paper-pickup assembly on page 167](#).
- Registration assembly. See [Registration assembly on page 171](#).
- Transfer paper-feed assembly. See [Transfer paper-feed assembly on page 202](#).
- Cooling unit assembly. See [Cooling-unit assembly on page 258](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M806 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\) on page 182](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M830 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\) on page 184](#).
- DC controller (M806 only). See [DC controller \(M806 only\) on page 187](#).
- DC controller (M830 only). See [DC controller \(M830 only\) on page 190](#).
- Drum motor. See [Drum motor on page 195](#).
- Drive assembly (M806 only). See [Drive assembly \(M806 only\) on page 196](#).
- Drive assembly (M830 only). See [Drive assembly \(M830 only\) on page 199](#).

## Remove the transfer-holder assembly

1. Open the left door. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release two tabs (callout 2).

 **TIP:** Use a Phillips-head screwdriver with a short shaft to remove this screw.

**Figure 1-313** Remove the transfer-holder assembly (1 of 3)



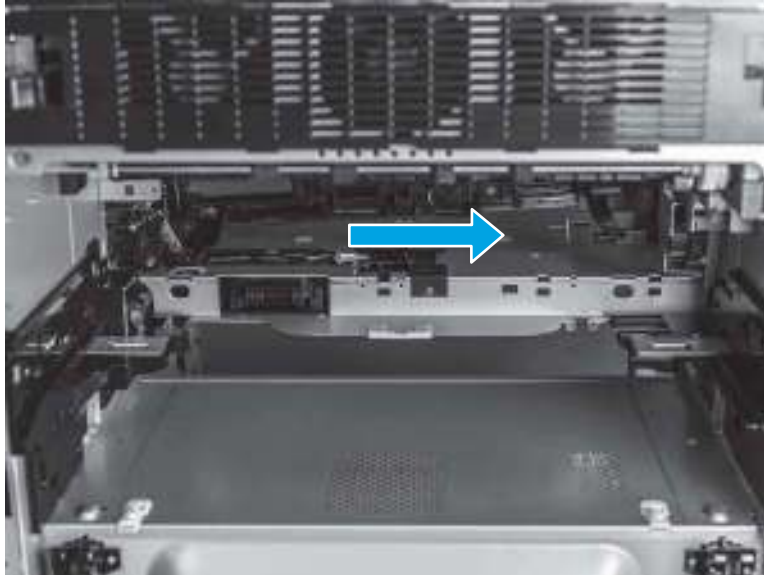
2. Lift up the front of the assembly (callout 1), slide the assembly slightly to the right to release it (callout 2), and then slide the assembly toward the left door (callout 3) to release three tabs.

**Figure 1-314** Remove the transfer-holder assembly (2 of 3)



3. Lift the assembly up, and then slide it through the opening in the front of the product to remove it.

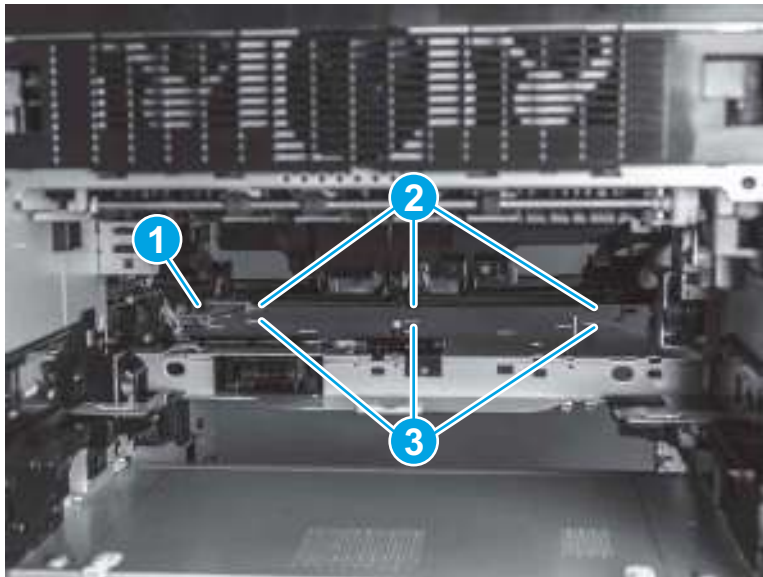
**Figure 1-315** Remove the transfer-holder assembly (3 of 3)



### Reinstall the transfer-holder assembly

Position the locator pin (callout 1) in the slot in the product. Make sure that the three tabs (callout 2) are positioned in the slots (callout 3) in the product.

**Figure 1-316** Reinstall the transfer-holder assembly



## Cartridge-lifter assembly (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Toner cartridge. See [Toner cartridge on page 5](#).
- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).
- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover (M806 only). See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Cartridge-release lever. See [Cartridge-release lever on page 151](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806 only)

1. Disconnect one connector on the front of the product.

**Figure 1-317** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 1 of 11)

2. Disconnect three connectors on the top of the product.

**Figure 1-318** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 2 of 11)

3. Disconnect two connectors on the back of the product.

**Figure 1-319** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 3 of 11)

4. Remove the wire harnesses and cables from three retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses and cables from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-320** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 4 of 11)

5. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the small, black plastic cover on the front of the product.

**Figure 1-321** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 5 of 11)



6. Remove the cover.



---

**Reinstallation tip** Position the tab on the top of the cover in place on the product before snapping the two tabs into place.

---

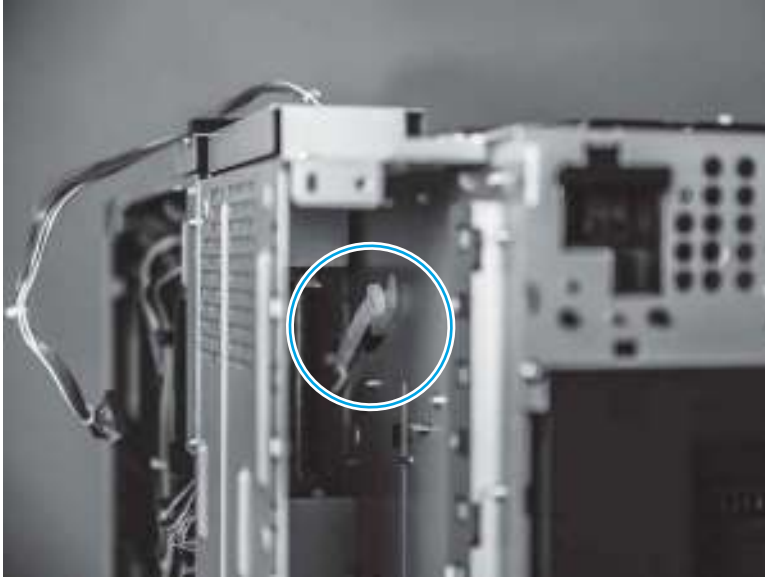
**Figure 1-322** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 6 of 11)

7. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-323** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 7 of 11)

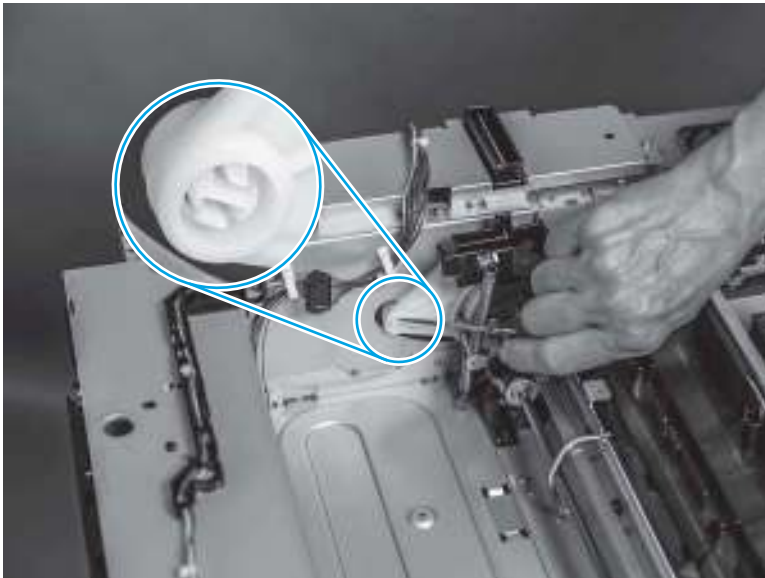
8. Note the location of one plastic arm inside the formatter case.

**Figure 1-324** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 8 of 11)



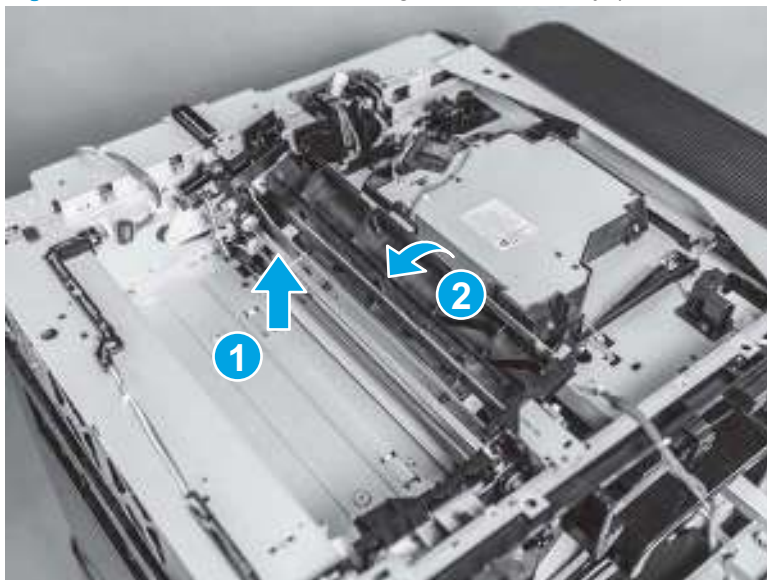
9. Release two tabs, and then disconnect the plastic arm.

**Figure 1-325** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 9 of 11)



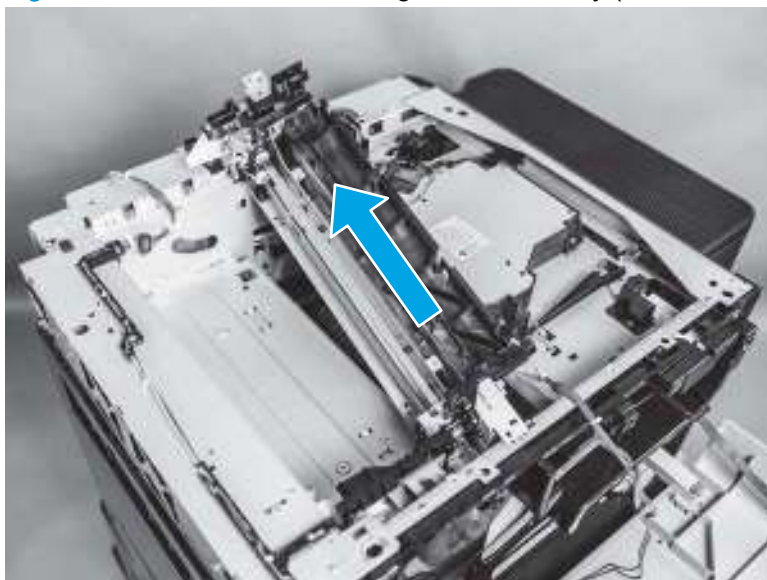
10. Lift the cartridge-lifter assembly up (callout 1), and then rotate it toward the right door (callout 2).

**Figure 1-326** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 10 of 11)



11. Slide the cartridge-lifter assembly toward the back of the product to remove it.

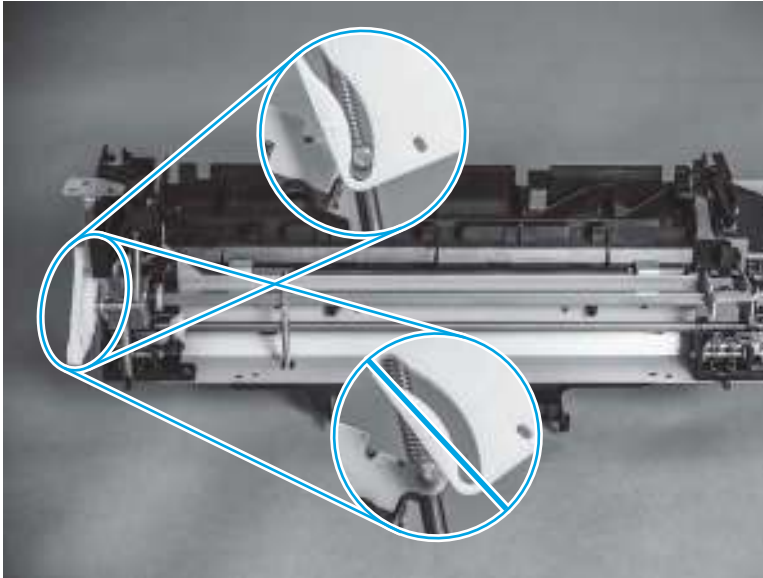
**Figure 1-327** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 11 of 11)



## Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806 only)

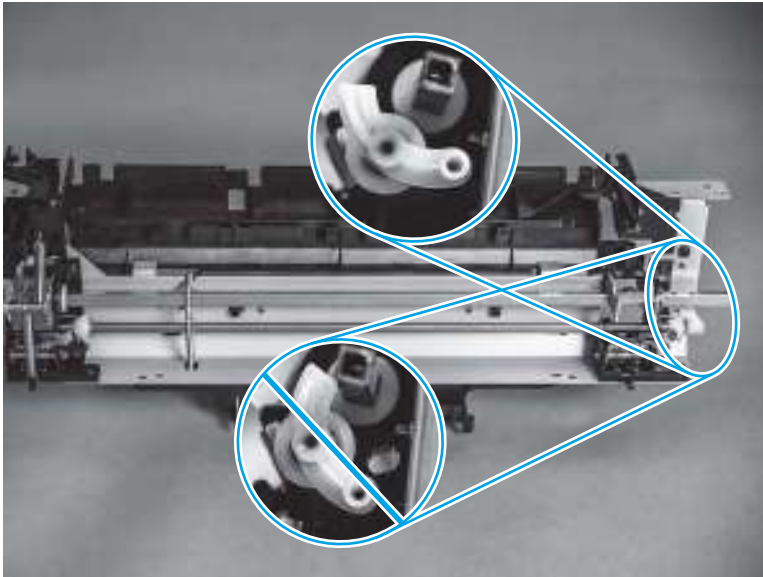
1. If the white, plastic fitting on the left end of the assembly becomes dislodged, make sure that it is repositioned correctly.

**Figure 1-328** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 1 of 6)



2. If the white, plastic fitting on the right end of the assembly becomes dislodged, make sure that it is repositioned correctly.

**Figure 1-329** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 2 of 6)



3. Make sure that the spring-loaded flap on the bottom of the assembly is positioned as shown below before reinstalling the cartridge-lifter assembly.

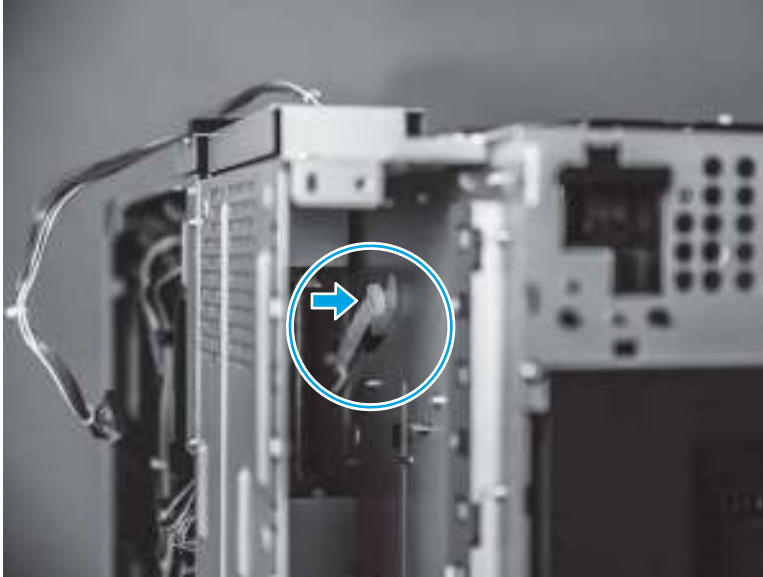
**Figure 1-330** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 3 of 6)

4. When the assembly is reinstalled, look inside the cartridge cavity to make sure that the spring-loaded flap is in the correct position.

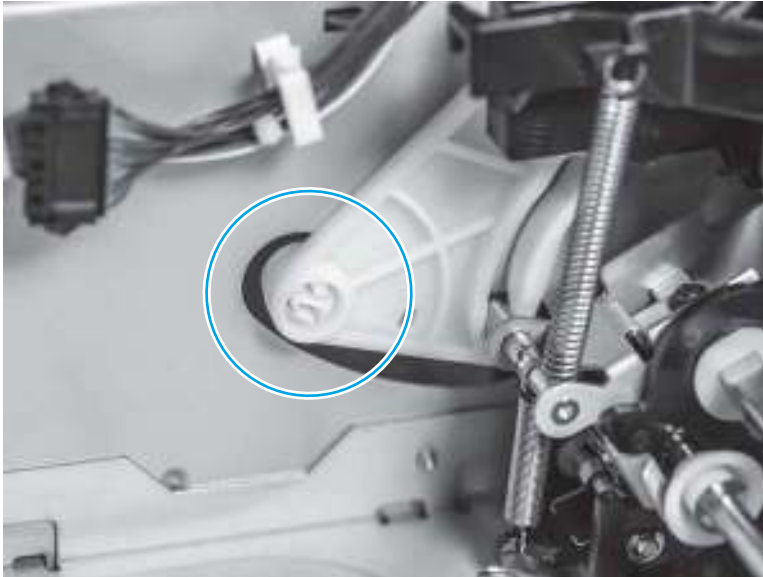
**Figure 1-331** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 4 of 6)

5. Make sure to reconnect the plastic arm by pressing the tabs into the white plastic fitting on the left side of the cartridge-lifter assembly.

**Figure 1-332** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 5 of 6)



**Figure 1-333** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M806; 6 of 6)



## Cartridge-lifter assembly (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Toner cartridge. See [Toner cartridge on page 5](#).
- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).
- Left front cover (M830 only). See [Left front cover on page 121](#).
- Upper left cover (M830 only). See [Upper left cover \(M830 only\) on page 124](#).
- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).
- Document feeder assembly (M830 only). See [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\) on page 141](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).
- Scanner assembly (M830 only). See [Scanner assembly \(M830 only\) on page 146](#).
- Cartridge-release lever. See [Cartridge-release lever on page 151](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830 only)

1. Remove three screws.



**NOTE:** Look down at the top of the product to locate these screws.

**Figure 1-334** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 1 of 14)

2. Slightly lift the sheet metal plate, squeeze two tabs to release one connector, and then remove the sheet metal plate.

**Figure 1-335** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 2 of 14)

3. Remove three screws.



---

**NOTE:** Look down at the top of the product to locate these screws.

---

**Figure 1-336** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 3 of 14)



4. Remove the metal cover.

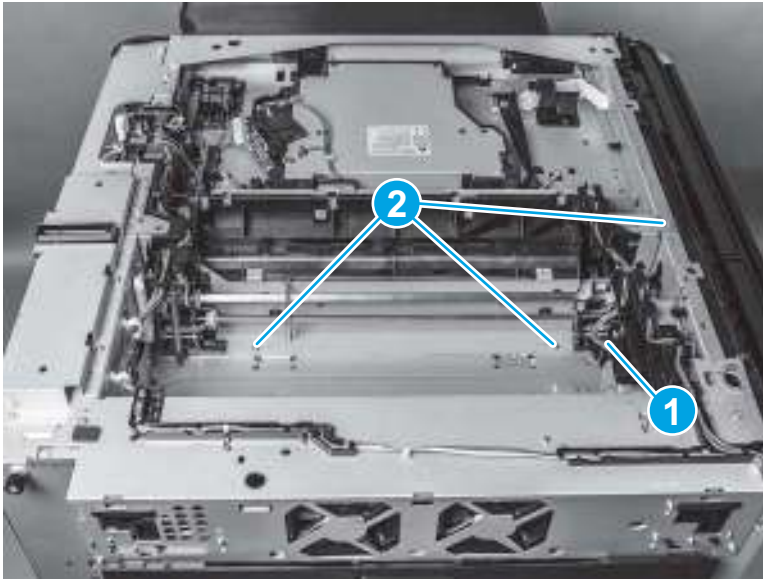
**Figure 1-337** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 4 of 14)

5. Disconnect one connector on the front of the product.

**Figure 1-338** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 5 of 14)

6. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-339** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 6 of 14)

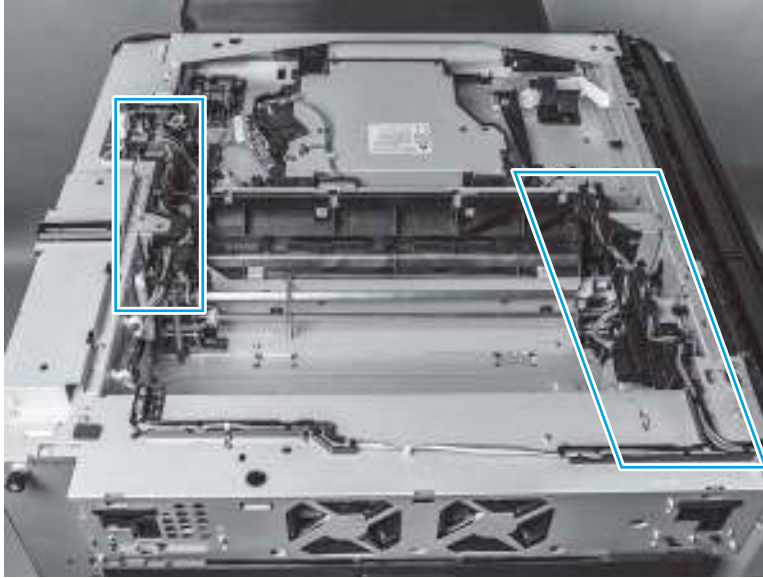


7. Disconnect two connectors on the back of the product.

**Figure 1-340** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 7 of 14)

8. Remove the wire harnesses and cables from the guides.

**Figure 1-341** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 8 of 14)



9. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the small, black plastic cover on the front of the product.

**Figure 1-342** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 9 of 14)

10. Remove the cover.



**Reinstallation tip** Position the tab on the top of the cover in place on the product before snapping the two tabs into place.

**Figure 1-343** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 10 of 14)

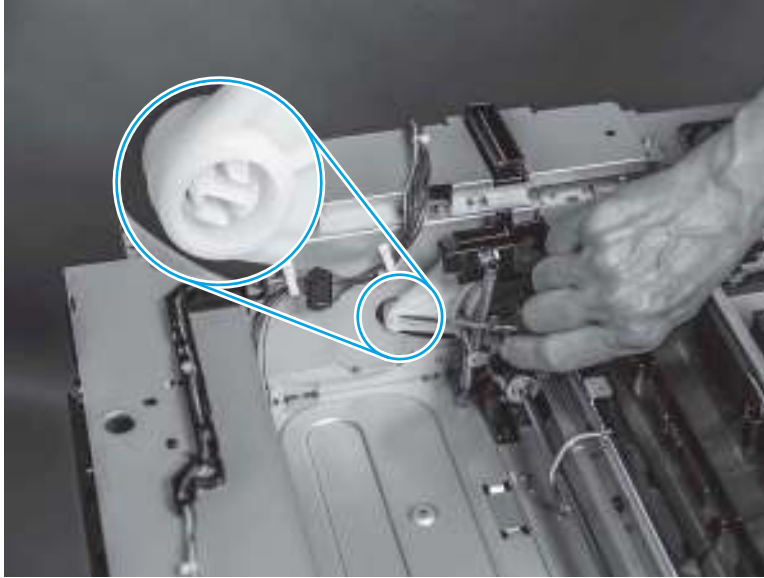
11. Note the location of one plastic arm inside the formatter case.

**Figure 1-344** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 11 of 14)



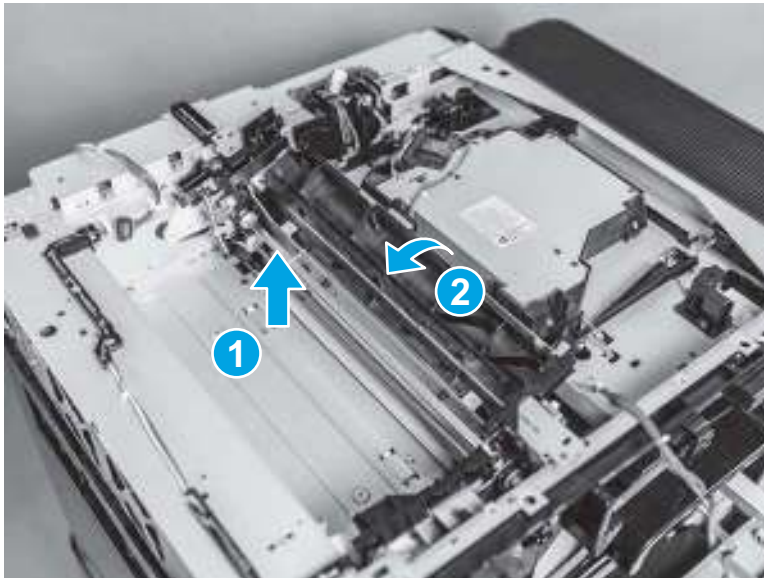
12. Release two tabs, and then disconnect the plastic arm.

**Figure 1-345** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 12 of 14)



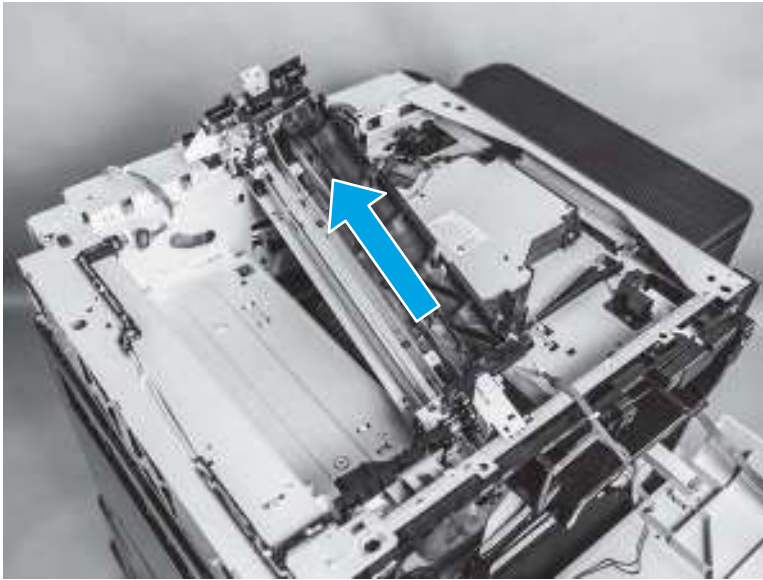
13. Lift the cartridge-lifter assembly up (callout 1), and then rotate it toward the right door (callout 2).

**Figure 1-346** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 13 of 14)



14. Slide the cartridge-lifter assembly toward the back of the product to remove it.

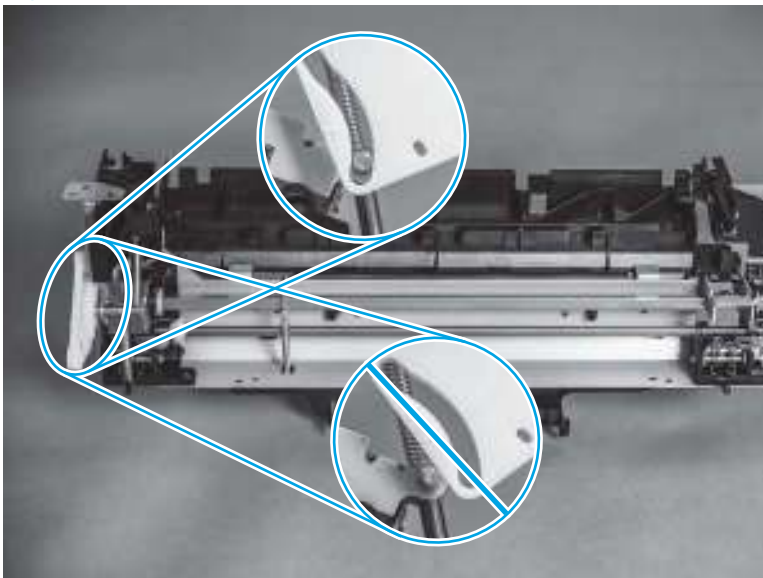
**Figure 1-347** Remove the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 14 of 14)



### Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830 only)

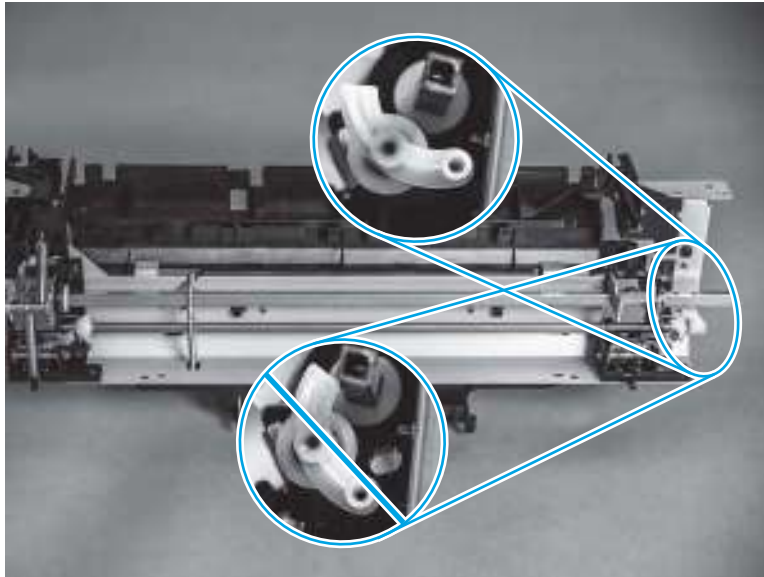
1. If the white, plastic fitting on the left end of the assembly becomes dislodged, make sure that it is repositioned correctly.

**Figure 1-348** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 1 of 6)



2. If the white, plastic fitting on the right end of the assembly becomes dislodged, make sure that it is repositioned correctly.

**Figure 1-349** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 2 of 6)



3. Make sure that the spring-loaded flap on the bottom of the assembly is positioned as shown below before reinstalling the cartridge-lifter assembly.

**Figure 1-350** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 3 of 6)

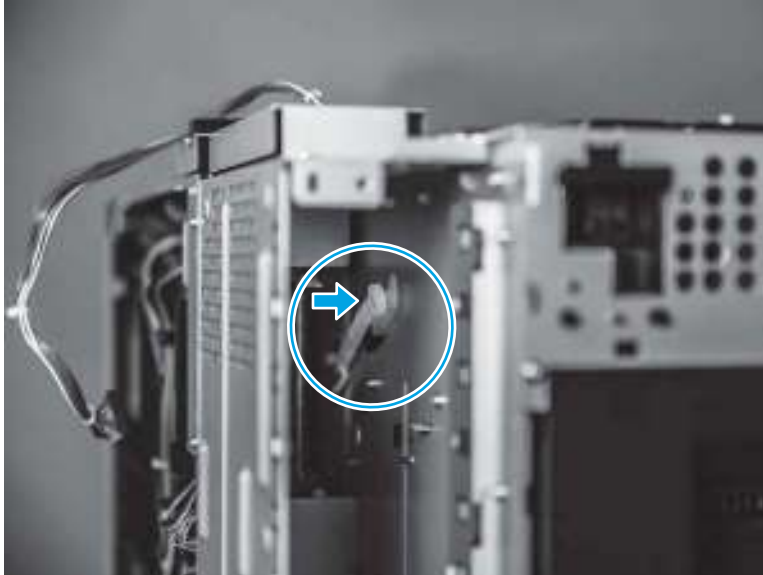
4. When the assembly is reinstalled, look inside the cartridge cavity to make sure that the spring-loaded flap is in the correct position.

**Figure 1-351** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 4 of 6)

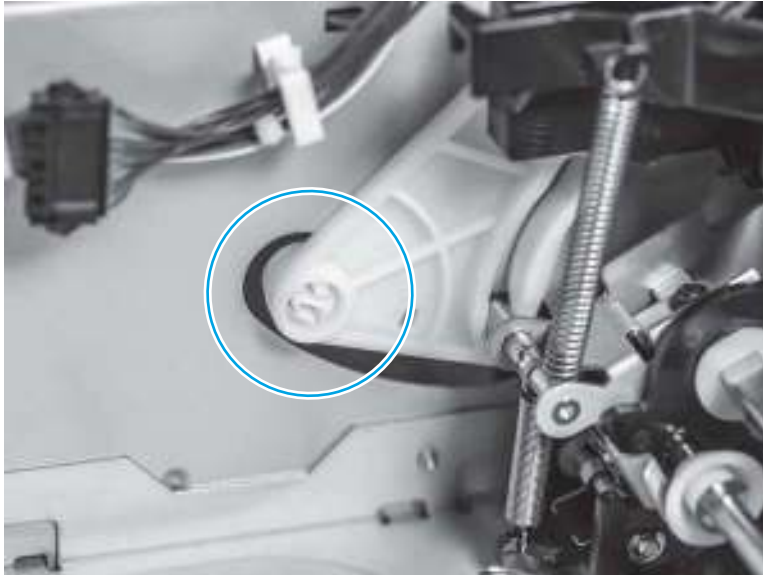


5. Make sure to reconnect the plastic arm by pressing the tabs into the white plastic fitting on the left side of the cartridge-lifter assembly.

**Figure 1-352** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 5 of 6)



**Figure 1-353** Reinstall the cartridge-lifter assembly (M830; 6 of 6)



## Driver PCA

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Right rear cover. See [Right rear cover on page 113](#).

### Remove the driver PCA

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Disconnect seven connectors (callout 1) on the driver PCA.

[Figure 1-354](#) Remove the driver PCA (1 of 2)

2. Remove four screws, and then remove the driver PCA.

**Figure 1-355** Remove the driver PCA (2 of 2)

### Reinstall the driver PCA

1. Position the hole in the driver PCA (callout 1) on the locator pin on the product (callout 2).

**Figure 1-356** Reinstall the driver PCA (1 of 2)

2. Position the notch in the driver PCA on the locator pin on the product.

**Figure 1-357** Reinstall the driver PCA (2 of 2)

## Laser/scanner assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left front cover (M830 only). See [Left front cover on page 121](#).
- Upper left cover (M830 only). See [Upper left cover \(M830 only\) on page 124](#).
- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).
- Document feeder assembly (M830 only). See [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\) on page 141](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).
- Scanner assembly (M830 only). See [Scanner assembly \(M830 only\) on page 146](#).

### Remove the laser/scanner assembly

1. **M830 only:** Remove three screws.

**Figure 1-358** Remove the laser/scanner assembly (1 of 4)

2. **M830 only:** Slightly lift the sheet metal plate, squeeze two tabs to release one connector, and then remove the sheet metal plate.

**Figure 1-359** Remove the laser/scanner assembly (2 of 4)

3. Disconnect three connectors.



---

**NOTE:** Look down at the top of the product to locate the laser/scanner assembly.

---

**Figure 1-360** Remove the laser/scanner assembly (3 of 4)

4. Remove four long screws, and then lift the laser/scanner assembly out of the product.

**Figure 1-361** Remove the laser/scanner assembly (4 of 4)

## Face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover. See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Left front cover. See [Left front cover on page 121](#).
- Upper left cover (M806 only). See [Upper left cover \(M806 only\) on page 122](#).
- Left rear cover. See [Left rear cover on page 109](#).

## Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806 only)

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove four screws (callout 2).

**Figure 1-362** Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 1 of 4)



2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-363** Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 2 of 4)

3. Carefully remove the wire harnesses from the guides.

**Figure 1-364** Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 3 of 4)

4. Lift the cables (callout 1) up, and then lift the face-down paper-delivery assembly (callout 2) up and out of the product.



**NOTE:** Make sure that the assembly does not catch on the wire harnesses along the top of the assembly when you remove it from the product.



**Reinstallation tip** Make sure that the wire harnesses are routed across the top of the assembly when you install it in the product.

**Figure 1-365** Remove the face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806; 4 of 4)

## Paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Document feeder assembly (M830 only). See [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\) on page 141](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).
- Scanner assembly (M830 only). See [Scanner assembly \(M830 only\) on page 146](#).
- Left rear cover. See [Left rear cover on page 109](#).
- Left front cover. See [Left front cover on page 121](#).

## Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only)

1. Remove three screws.



**NOTE:** Look down at the top of the product to locate these screws.

**Figure 1-366** Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 1 of 7)

2. Remove the metal cover.

**Figure 1-367** Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 2 of 7)

3. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-368** Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 3 of 7)

4. Open the left door, and then remove four screws.

**Figure 1-369** Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 4 of 7)



5. Carefully remove the wire harnesses from the guides on top of the assembly.

**Figure 1-370** Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 5 of 7)

6. Carefully remove the wire harnesses from the guide on the front of the product.

**Figure 1-371** Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 6 of 7)

7. Lift the cables (callout 1) up, and then lift the paper-delivery fan assembly (callout 2) up and out of the product.



---

**Reinstallation tip** Make sure that the wire harnesses are routed across the top of the assembly when you install it in the product.

---

**Figure 1-372** Remove the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830; 7 of 7)

## Reinstall the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only)

When reinstalling the metal cover, make sure that the tabs (callout 1) on the cover are positioned in the slots on the product (callout 2).

**Figure 1-373** Reinstall the paper-delivery fan assembly (M830)

## Fuser drive assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover. See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Left front cover. See [Left front cover on page 121](#).
- Upper left cover (M806 only). See [Upper left cover \(M806 only\) on page 122](#).
- Face-down paper-delivery assembly (M806 only). See [Face-down paper-delivery assembly \(M806 only\) on page 234](#).
- Document feeder assembly (M830 only). See [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\) on page 141](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).
- Scanner assembly (M830 only). See [Scanner assembly \(M830 only\) on page 146](#).
- Upper left cover (M830 only). See [Upper left cover \(M830 only\) on page 124](#).
- Paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only). See [Paper-delivery fan assembly \(M830 only\) on page 237](#).



## Remove the fuser drive assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the wire harness from the guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-374** Remove the fuser drive assembly (1 of 5)

2. Remove five screws.

**Figure 1-375** Remove the fuser drive assembly (2 of 5)

3. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-376** Remove the fuser drive assembly (3 of 5)

4. Lift up on the fuser drive assembly to release one locking tab.

**Figure 1-377** Remove the fuser drive assembly (4 of 5)

5. Slide the fuser drive assembly to the right (callout 1) and then lift it out of the product (callout 2).

**Figure 1-378** Remove the fuser drive assembly (5 of 5)

## Reinstall the fuser drive assembly

1. Make sure that the fuser drive assembly is positioned below the sheet metal shelf as shown below.

**Figure 1-379** Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (1 of 2)

2. Position the fuser drive assembly on the locking tab.

**Figure 1-380** Reinstall the fuser drive assembly (2 of 2)

## Power switch assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Left front cover

### Remove the power switch assembly

Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the power switch assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-381** Remove the power switch assembly)

### Reinstall the power switch assembly

Install the switch in the slot on the cover as shown below.

**Figure 1-382** Reinstall the power switch assembly

## Interconnect PCA

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).
- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover. See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Document feeder assembly (M830 only). See [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\) on page 141](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).
- Scanner assembly (M830 only). See [Scanner assembly \(M830 only\) on page 146](#).

## Remove the interconnect PCA

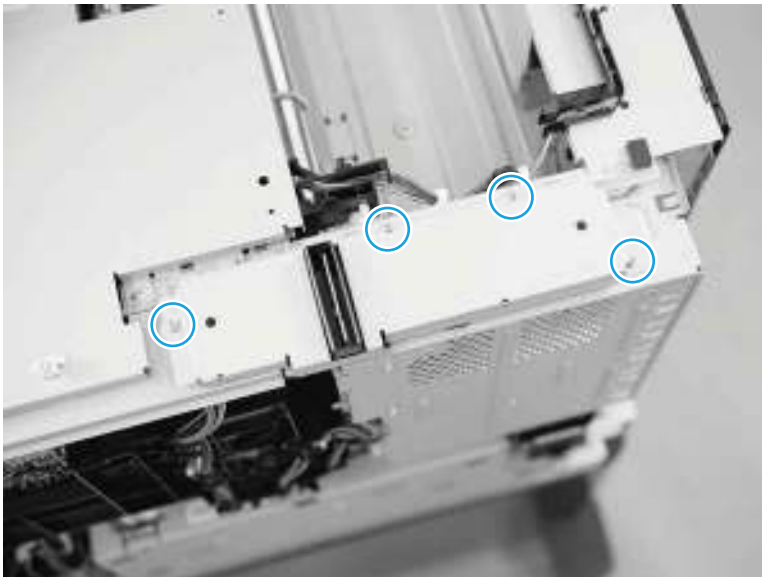
---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. **M830 only:** Remove four screws, and then remove the sheet metal plate.

**Figure 1-383** Remove the interconnect PCA (1 of 4)



2. **M806 only:** Disconnect two connectors.

**Figure 1-384** Remove the interconnect PCA (2 of 4)

3. Disconnect three connectors.

**Figure 1-385** Remove the interconnect PCA (3 of 4)

4. Remove five screws and then remove the interconnect PCA.

**Figure 1-386** Remove the interconnect PCA (4 of 4)

### Reinstall the interconnect PCA

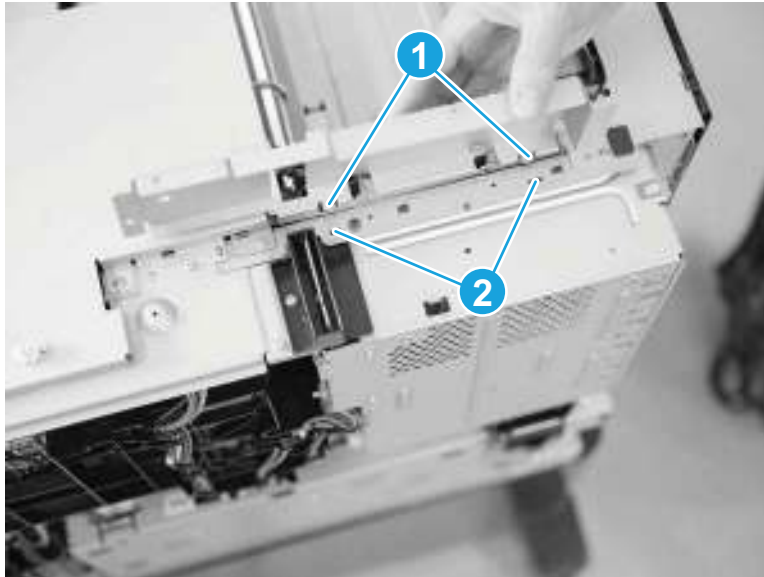
1. Position the slots (callout 1) on the interconnect PCA over the tabs (callout 2) on the product.

**Figure 1-387** Reinstall the interconnect PCA)



2. **M830 only:** Align the tabs (callout 1) on the sheet metal plate with the slots (callout 2) in the product.

**Figure 1-388** Reinstall the interconnect PCA)



## Formatter cage

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).
- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover. See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Left rear cover. See [Left rear cover on page 109](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Interconnect PCA. See [Interconnect PCA on page 248](#).

### Remove the formatter cage

Release two cables from two retainers (callout 1), remove five screws (callout 2), and then remove the formatter cage.

**Figure 1-389** Remove the formatter cage

## Reinstall the formatter cage

Position the slot (callout 1) on the formatter cage over the tab (callout 2) on the product.

**Figure 1-390** Reinstall the formatter cage

## Fuser bias contact assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Fuser. See [Fuser on page 10](#).
- Duplexer. See [Duplexer on page 9](#).
- Control-panel assembly (M806 only). See [Control-panel assembly \(M806 only\) on page 38](#).
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only). See [Hardware integration pocket \(HIP\) cover \(M806 only\) on page 88](#).
- Control-panel base cover (M806 only). See [Control-panel base cover \(M806 only\) on page 94](#).
- Right top cover (M806 only). See [Right top cover \(M806 only\) on page 98](#).
- Left top cover. (M806 only). See [Left top cover \(M806 only\) on page 102](#).
- Left front cover (M830 only). See [Left front cover on page 121](#).
- Upper left cover (M830 only). See [Upper left cover \(M830 only\) on page 124](#).
- Scanner back cover (M830 only). See [Scanner back cover \(M830 only\) on page 75](#).
- Document feeder assembly (M830 only). See [Document feeder assembly \(M830 only\) on page 141](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB) (M830 only). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) \(M830 only\) on page 135](#).
- Scanner assembly (M830 only). See [Scanner assembly \(M830 only\) on page 146](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- Interconnect PCA. See [Interconnect PCA on page 248](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M806 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\) on page 182](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M830 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\) on page 184](#).

## Remove the fuser bias contact assembly

1. Locate the fuser bias contact assembly.

**Figure 1-391** Remove the fuser bias contact assembly (1 of 3)

2. Disconnect three connectors.

**Figure 1-392** Remove the fuser bias contact assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove two screws (callout 1), release the wire harnesses from the guide (callout 2), and then slide the fuser bias contact assembly toward the back of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-393** Remove the fuser bias contact assembly (3 of 3)

### Reinstall the fuser bias contact assembly

1. Make sure that the wire harnesses are inserted through the opening in the fuser bias contact assembly.

**Figure 1-394** Reinstall the fuser bias contact assembly (1 of 2)

2. Make sure that the wire harnesses are routed inside the guide.

**Figure 1-395** Reinstall the fuser bias contact assembly (2 of 2)

## Cooling-unit assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Duplexer. See [Duplexer on page 9](#).
- Fuser. See [Fuser on page 10](#).

### Remove the cooling-unit assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2) on the cover.

**Figure 1-396** Remove the cooling-unit assembly (1 of 5)

2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product, and then remove it.

**Figure 1-397** Remove the cooling-unit assembly (2 of 5)



3. Disconnect two connectors.

**Figure 1-398** Remove the cooling-unit assembly (3 of 5)

4. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-399** Remove the cooling-unit assembly (4 of 5)

5. Slide the cooling-unit assembly out of the product to remove it.

**Figure 1-400** Remove the cooling-unit assembly (5 of 5)

### Reinstall the cooling unit assembly

Tilt the assembly to reinsert the metal tabs (callout 1) on top of the assembly into the sheet metal tabs (callout 2) on the product.

**Figure 1-401** Reinstall the cooling unit assembly

## Tag assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Formatter on page 12](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M806 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M806 only\) on page 182](#).
- High-voltage power supply (M830 only). See [High-voltage power supply \(M830 only\) on page 184](#).
- DC controller (M806 only). See [DC controller \(M806 only\) on page 187](#).
- DC controller (M830 only). See [DC controller \(M830 only\) on page 190](#).

### Remove the tag assembly

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).



**NOTE:** Make sure that the wire harness (callout 2) is released from the guide (callout 3).

**Figure 1-402** Remove the tag assembly (1 of 2)

2. Remove the tag assembly.

**Figure 1-403** Remove the tag assembly (2 of 2)

## Option-connector assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover. See [Rear cover on page 110](#).

### Remove the option-connector assembly

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the cables from the retainer clip (callout 2).

**Figure 1-404** Remove the option-connector assembly (1 of 6)

2. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-405** Remove the option-connector assembly (2 of 6)

3. Remove the wire harness and cables (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2).

**Figure 1-406** Remove the option-connector assembly (3 of 6)

4. Lift the option-connector assembly away from the product.

---

 **CAUTION:** The assembly is still connected to the product by one wire harness.

---

**Figure 1-407** Remove the option-connector assembly (4 of 6)

5. Disconnect one connector on the back side of the assembly.

**Figure 1-408** Remove the option-connector assembly (5 of 6)

6. Remove the wire harness (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2), and then remove the option-connector assembly.

**Figure 1-409** Remove the option-connector assembly (6 of 6)

## Reinstall the option-connector assembly

Make sure that the tabs on the assembly (callout 1) are positioned in the slots (callout 2) in the product.

**Figure 1-410** Reinstall the option connector assembly



## Input accessory

This section includes information about the following topics:

- [High capacity input feeder](#)

# High capacity input feeder



**NOTE:** Some of the procedures in this section require the product to be removed from the input accessory.

## Location of major components

Figure 1-411 External covers and doors

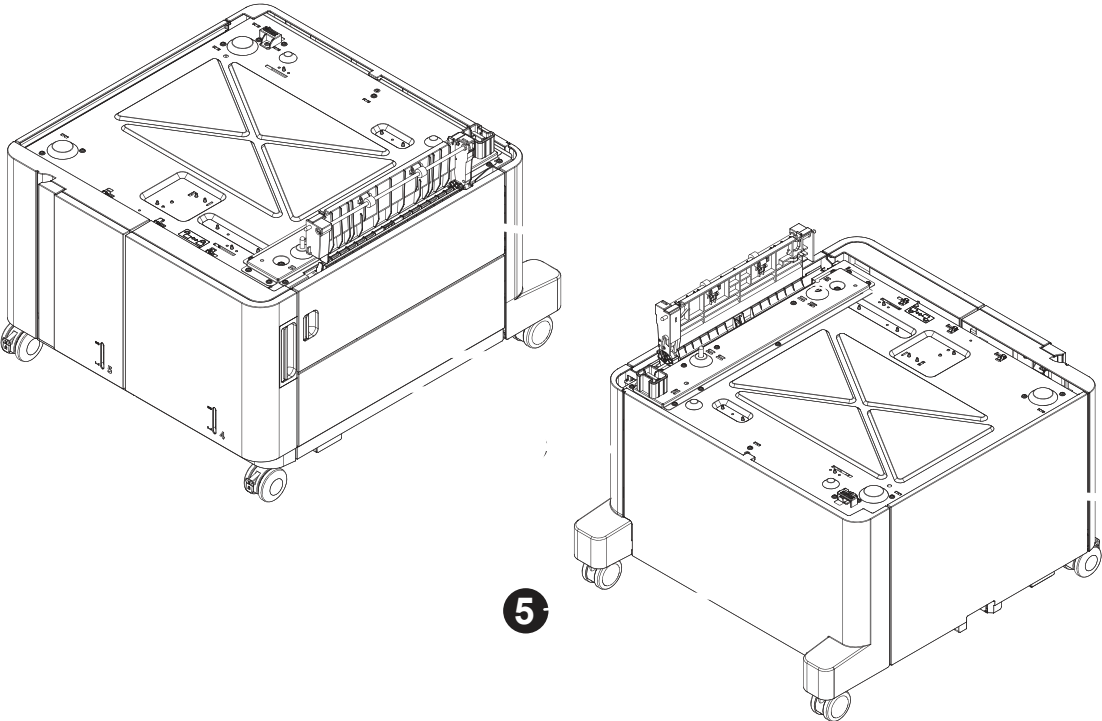


Table 1-5 External covers and doors

| Item | Description         | Item | Description             |
|------|---------------------|------|-------------------------|
| 1    | Right door assembly | 4    | Left cover              |
| 2    | Center right cover  | 5    | Rear cover              |
| 3    | Lower right cover   | 6    | Right-rear corner cover |

Figure 1-412 Main assemblies (1 of 2)

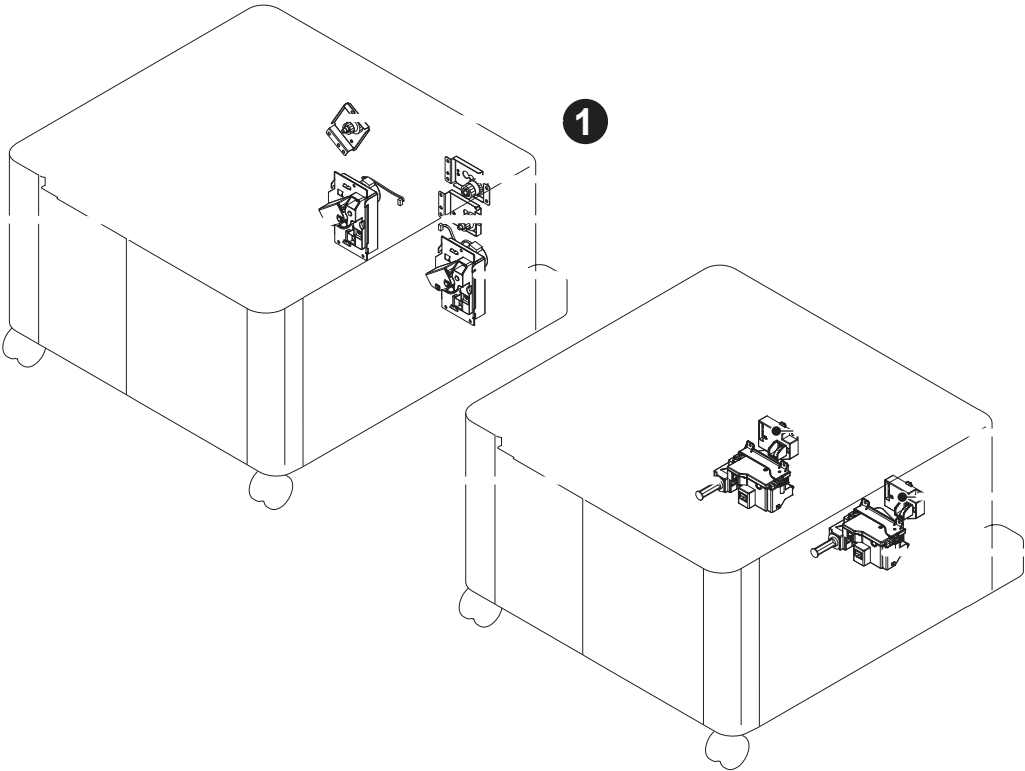


Table 1-6 Main assemblies (1 of 2)

| Item | Description                           | Item | Description                            |
|------|---------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------|
| 1    | Left tray pickup drive assembly       | 6    | Right tray media-level sensor assembly |
| 2    | Merge drive assembly                  | 7    | Right tray automatic close assembly    |
| 3    | Right tray pickup drive assembly      | 8    | Left tray automatic close assembly     |
| 4    | Right tray lifter drive assembly      | 9    | Left tray lifter drive assembly        |
| 5    | Left tray media-level sensor assembly |      |                                        |

Figure 1-413 Main assemblies (2 of 2)

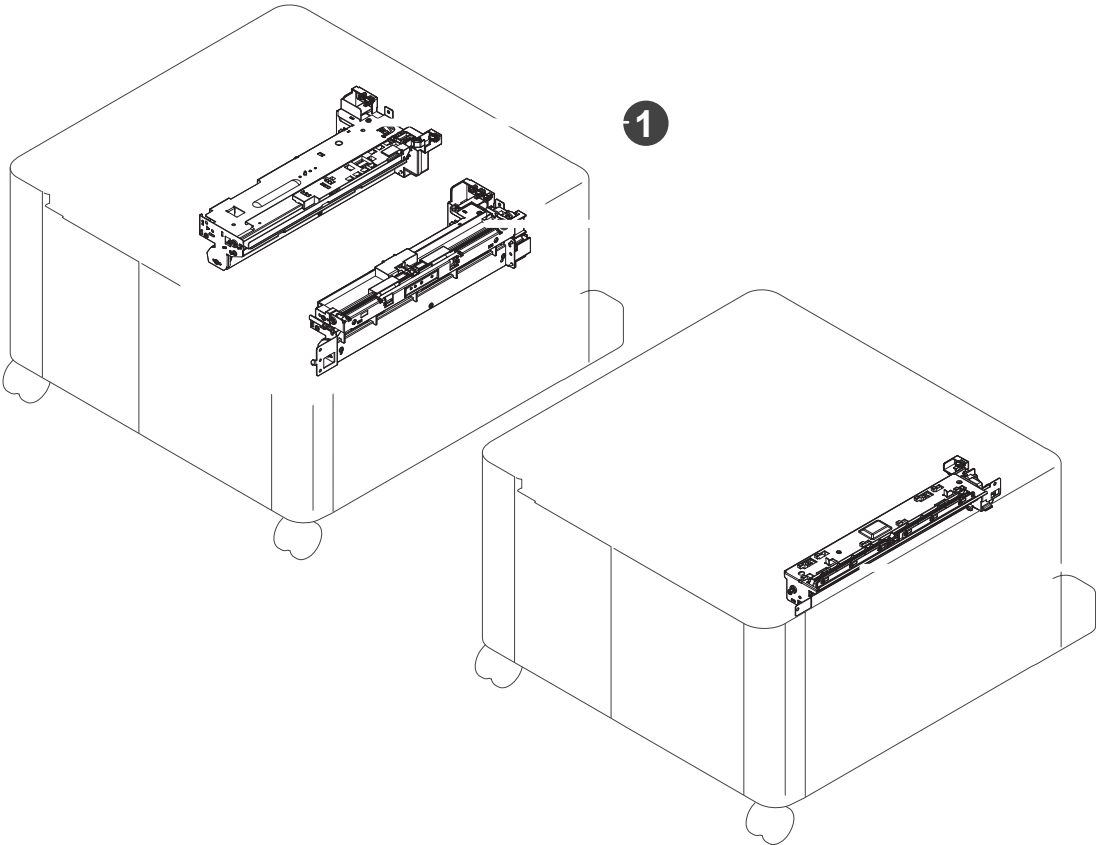


Table 1-7 Main assemblies (2 of 2)

| Item | Description                | Item | Description    |
|------|----------------------------|------|----------------|
| 1    | Left tray pickup assembly  | 3    | Merge assembly |
| 2    | Right tray pickup assembly |      |                |

Figure 1-414 Printed circuit assembly (PCA)

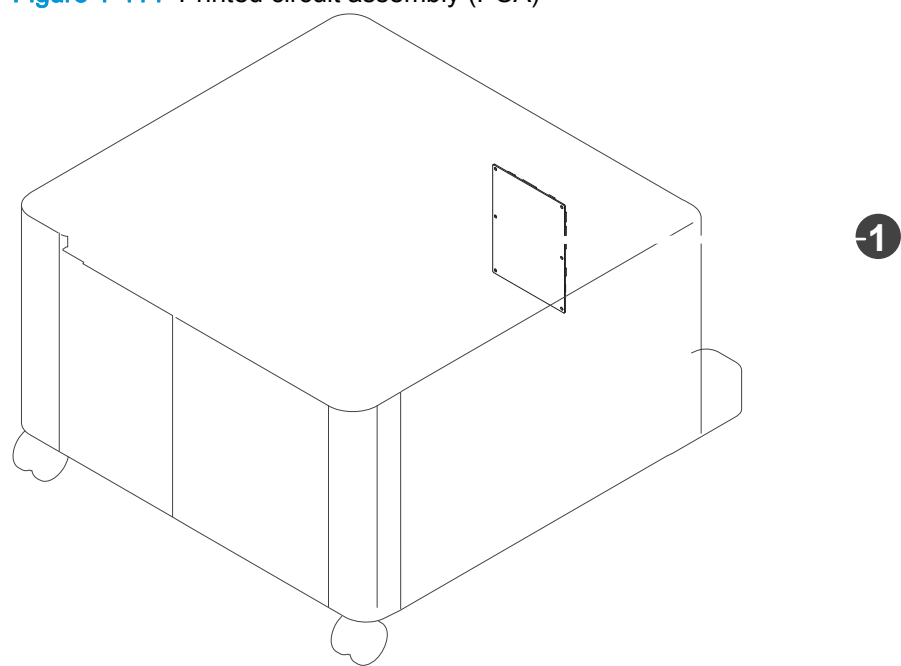


Table 1-8 Printed circuit assembly (PCA)

| Item | Description        | Item | Description |
|------|--------------------|------|-------------|
| 1    | HCI controller PCA |      |             |

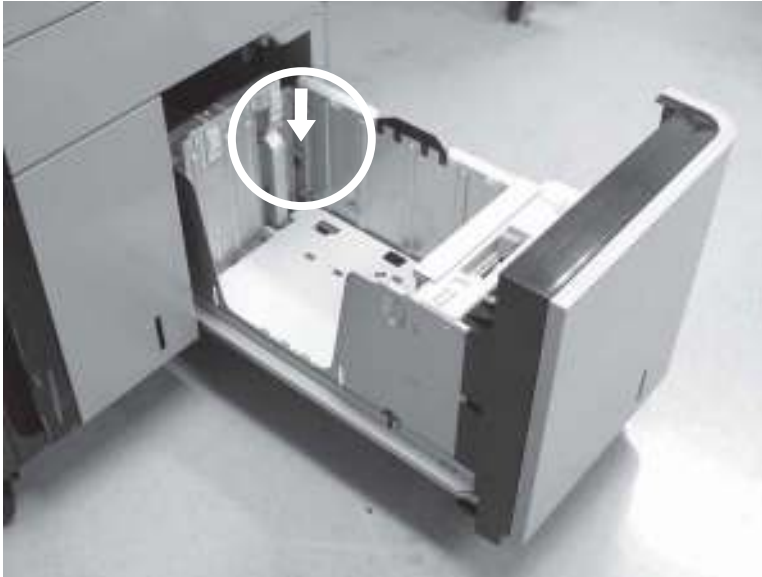
## HCI right tray

1. Open the right tray.
2. Lower the tray release lever, and then remove the right tray.

 **NOTE:** When the tray is reinstalled, the release lever automatically returns to the locked position.

---

**Figure 1-415** Remove the HCI right tray



## HCI left tray

1. Open the left tray.
2. Lower the tray release lever, and then remove the left tray.



**NOTE:** When the tray is reinstalled, the release lever automatically returns to the locked position.

---

**Figure 1-416** Remove the HCI left tray

## HCI rear and right-rear corner covers

1. Open the right door, and then remove one screw.

**Figure 1-417** Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (1 of 4)



2. Release two tabs—located under the right-rear corner cover—and then slightly rotate the bottom of the right-rear cover away from the accessory.

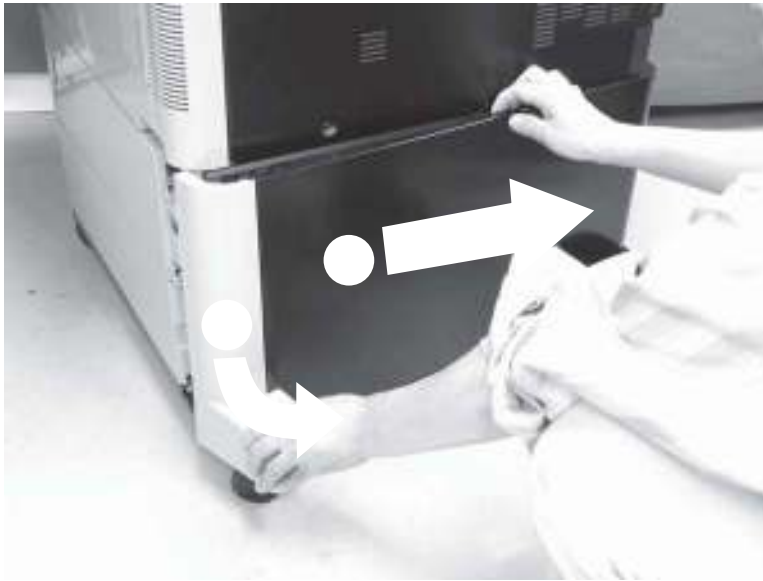
**Figure 1-418** Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (2 of 4)





3. Continue to rotate the right-rear corner cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then slide the rear and right-rear corner covers toward the front of the accessory (callout 2) to release them.

**Figure 1-419** Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (3 of 4)



4. Continue to slide the rear and right-rear corner covers toward the front of the accessory to release one tab, and then remove the covers.

**Figure 1-420** Remove the HCI rear and right-rear corner covers (4 of 4)



## HCI right door assembly

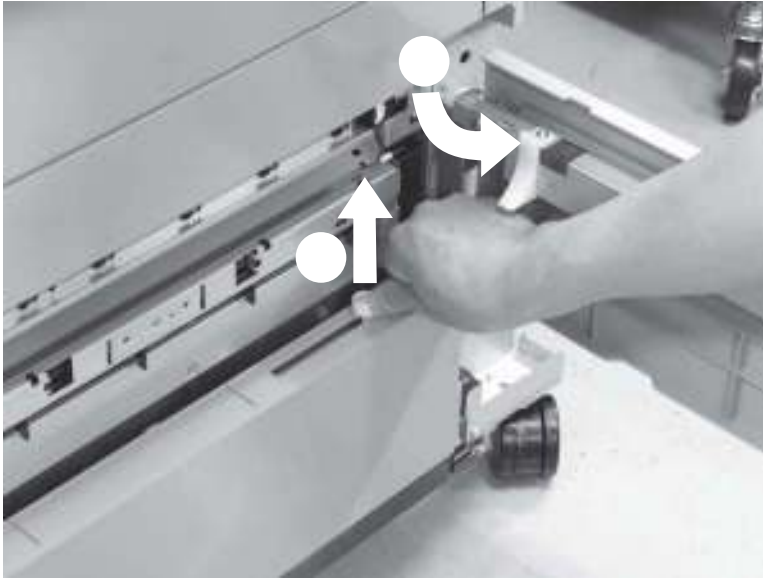
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI right door assembly

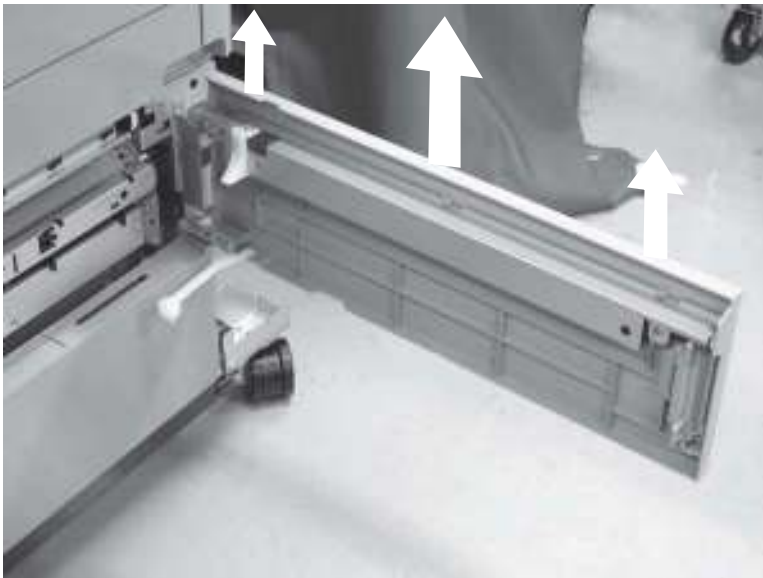
1. Open the right door (callout 1), and then pull up on the door retainer (callout 2) to release it.

**Figure 1-421** Remove the HCI right door assembly (1 of 2)



2. Lift the door straight up to remove it.

**Figure 1-422** Remove the HCI right door assembly (2 of 2)



## HCI left cover

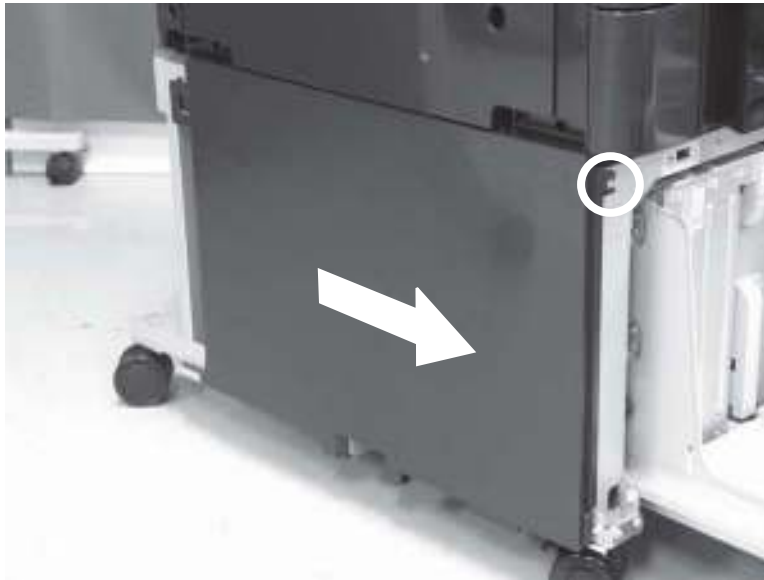
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI left cover

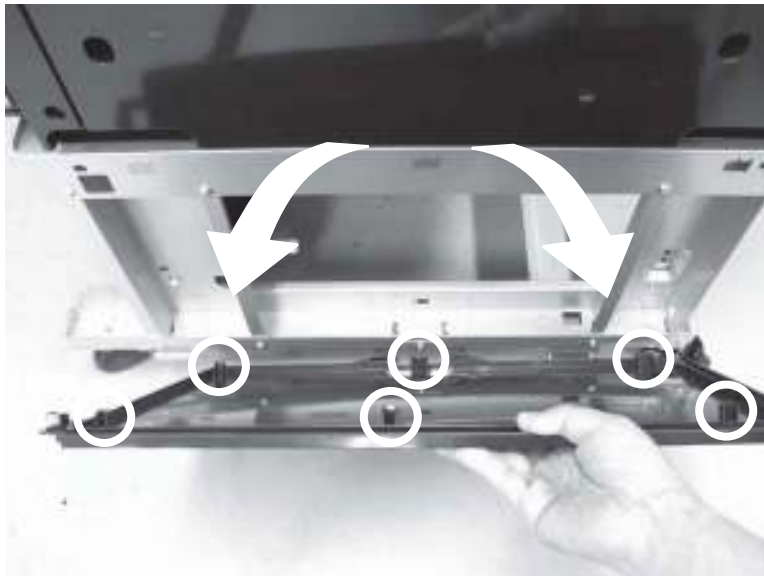
1. Remove one screw, and then slide the cover toward the rear of the accessory.

**Figure 1-423** Remove the HCI left cover (1 of 2)



2. Release six tabs, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-424** Remove the HCI left cover (2 of 2)



## HCI center right cover

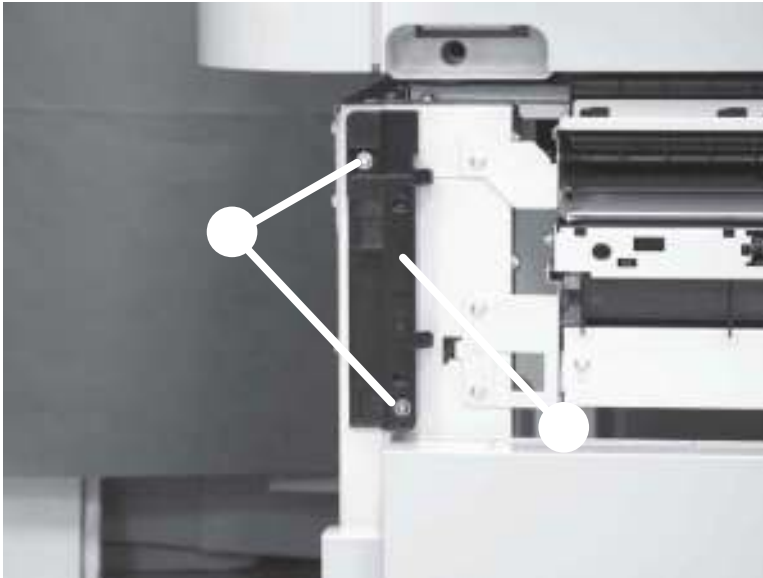
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).
- HCI right door assembly. See [HCI right door assembly on page 276](#).

### Remove the HCI center right cover

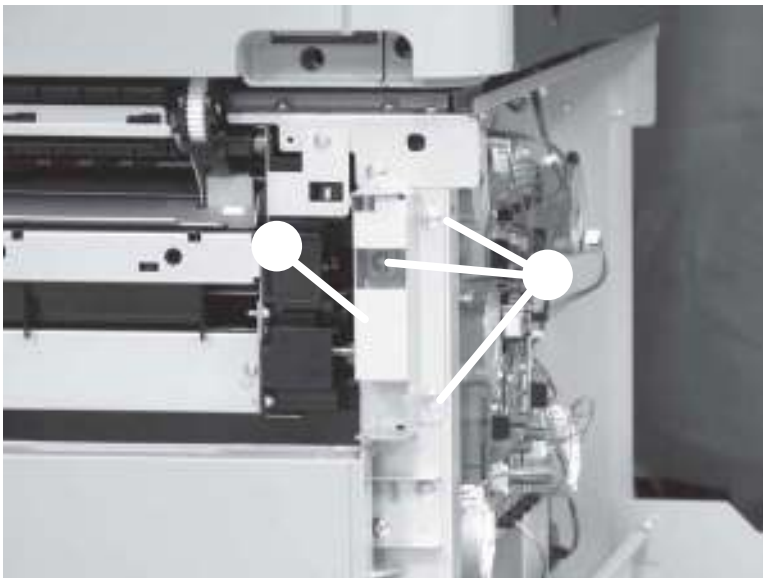
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the lock holder (callout 2).

**Figure 1-425** Remove the HCI center right cover (1 of 4)



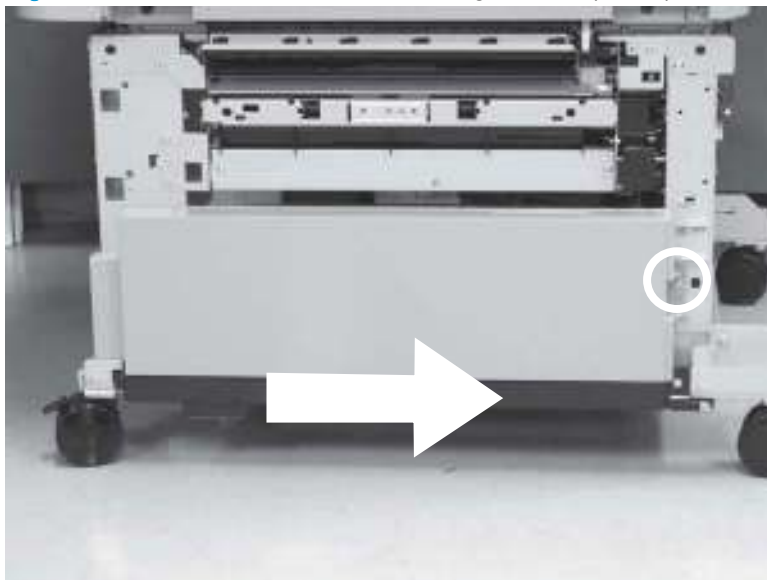
2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the hinge holder (callout 2).

**Figure 1-426** Remove the HCI center right cover (2 of 4)



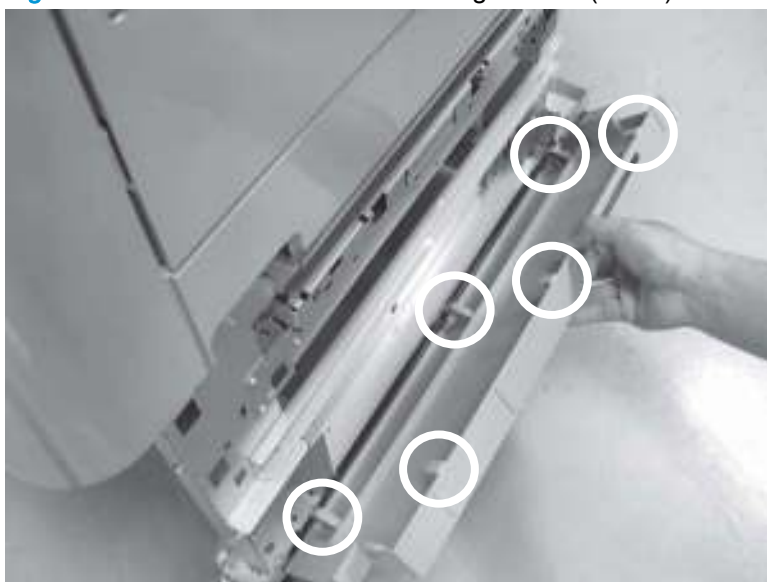
3. Remove one screw, and then slide the cover toward the right.

**Figure 1-427** Remove the HCI center right cover (3 of 4)



4. Release six tabs, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-428** Remove the HCI center right cover (4 of 4)



## HCI lower right cover

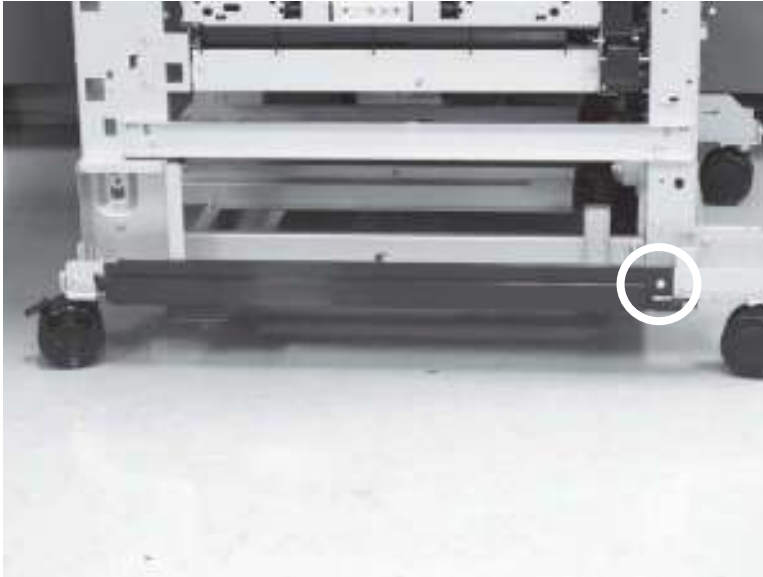
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).
- HCI right door assembly. See [HCI right door assembly on page 276](#).
- HCI center right cover. See [HCI center right cover on page 278](#).

### Remove the HCI lower right cover

1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-429** Remove the HCI lower right cover (1 of 3)



2. Release one tab.

**Figure 1-430** Remove the HCI lower right cover (2 of 3)



3. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-431** Remove the HCI lower right cover (3 of 3)



## HCI right tray pickup motor

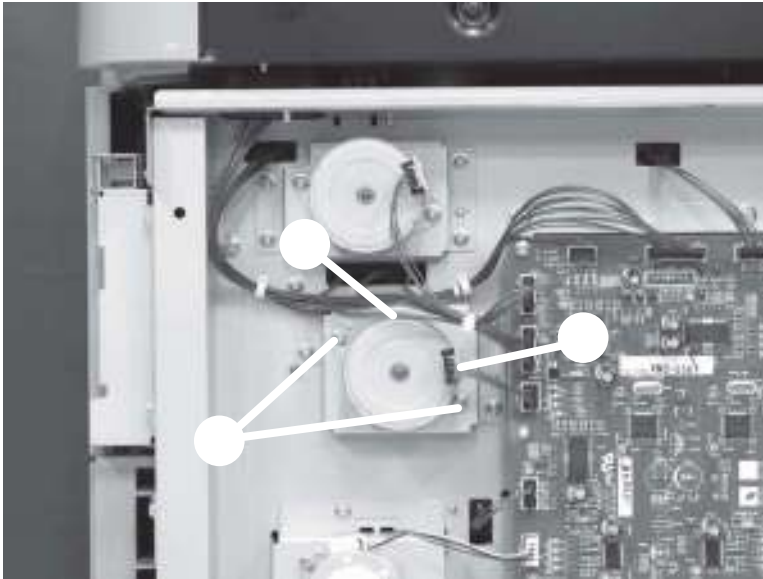
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the right tray pickup motor (callout 3).

**Figure 1-432** Remove the HCI right tray pickup motor





## HCI right tray pickup drive

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

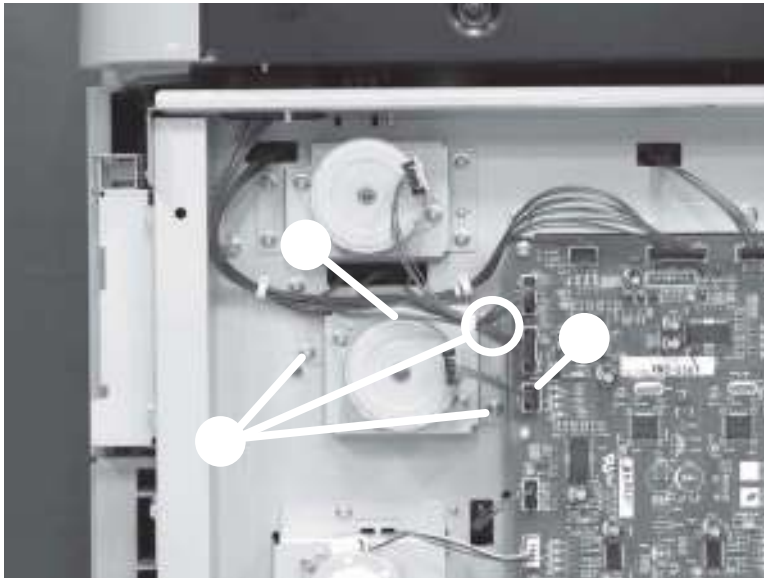
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the right tray pickup drive (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** If you are replacing the HCI right tray pickup drive, remove the HCI right tray pickup motor from the old part and move it to the replacement part. See [HCI right tray pickup motor on page 282](#).

**Figure 1-433** Remove the HCI right tray pickup drive



## HCI left tray pickup motor

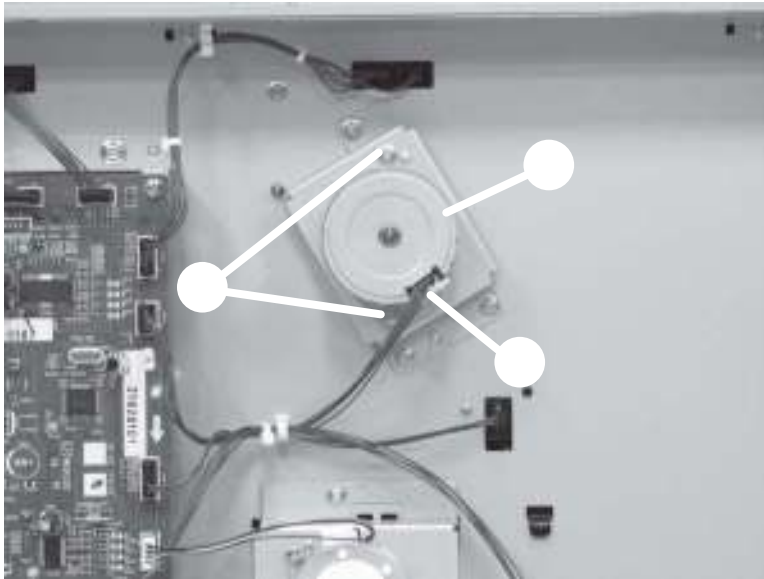
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the left tray pickup motor (callout 3).

**Figure 1-434** Remove the HCI left tray pickup motor.



## HCI left tray pickup drive

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

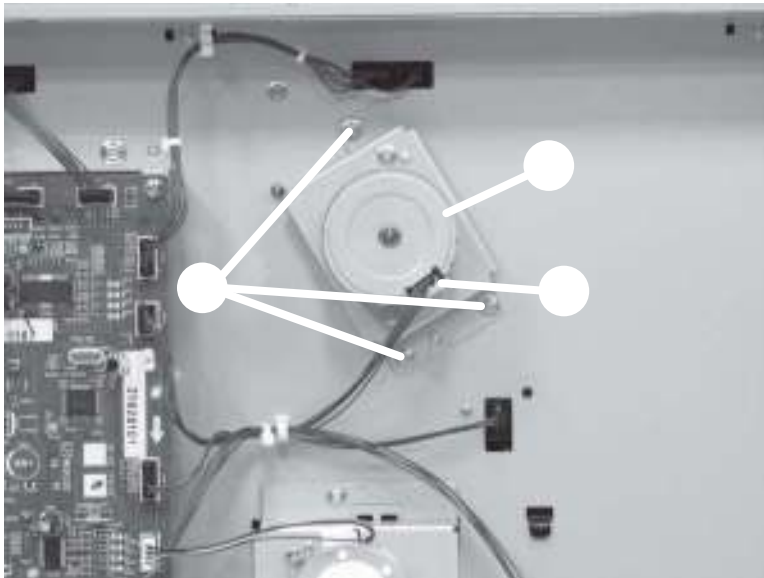
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the left tray pickup drive (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** If you are replacing the HCI left tray pickup drive, remove the HCI left tray pickup motor from the old part and move it to the replacement part. See [HCI left tray pickup motor on page 284](#).

**Figure 1-435** Remove the HCI left tray pickup drive (1 of 2)



## HCI merge drive assembly

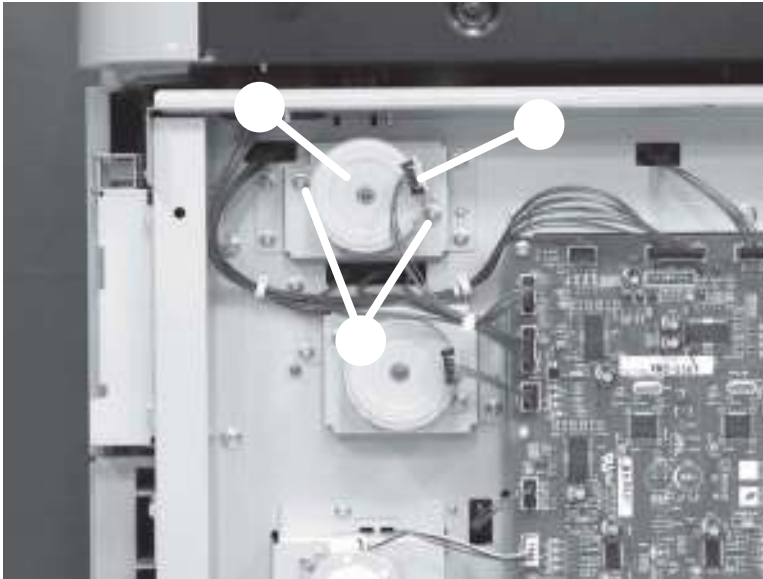
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI merge drive assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the intermediate feed motor (callout 3).

**Figure 1-436** Remove the HCI merge drive assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove four screws, and then remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-437** Remove the HCI merge drive assembly (2 of 2)



## HCI right tray lifter drive assembly

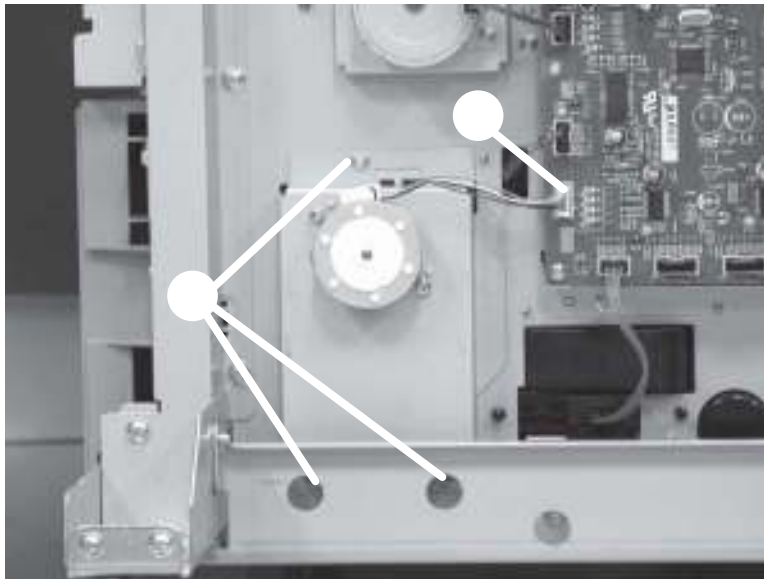
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly

1. Open the HCI right tray.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then lift the assembly up to remove it.

**Figure 1-438** Remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly



## HCI left tray lifter drive assembly

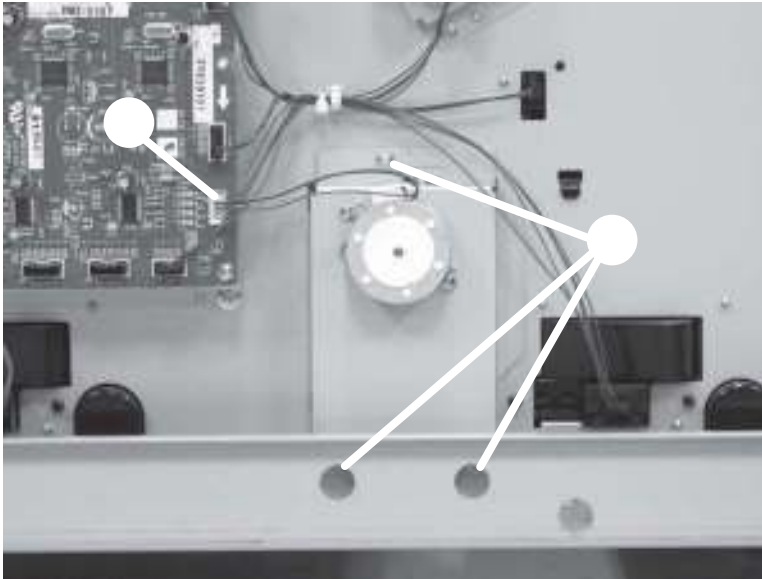
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly

1. Open the HCI left tray.
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then lift the assembly up to remove it

**Figure 1-439** Remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly



## HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly

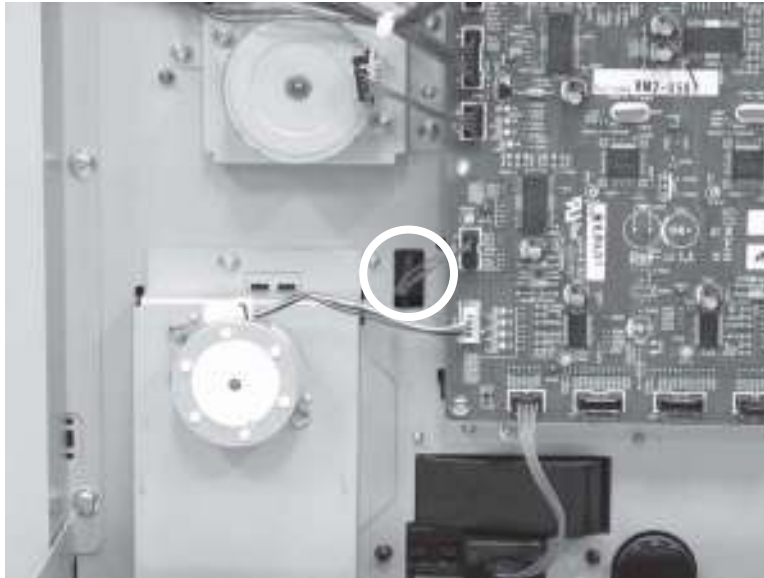
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See [HCI right tray on page 272](#).
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly

1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-440** Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2)



2. From inside the tray cavity, remove one screw, and then remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-441** Remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2)



## HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly

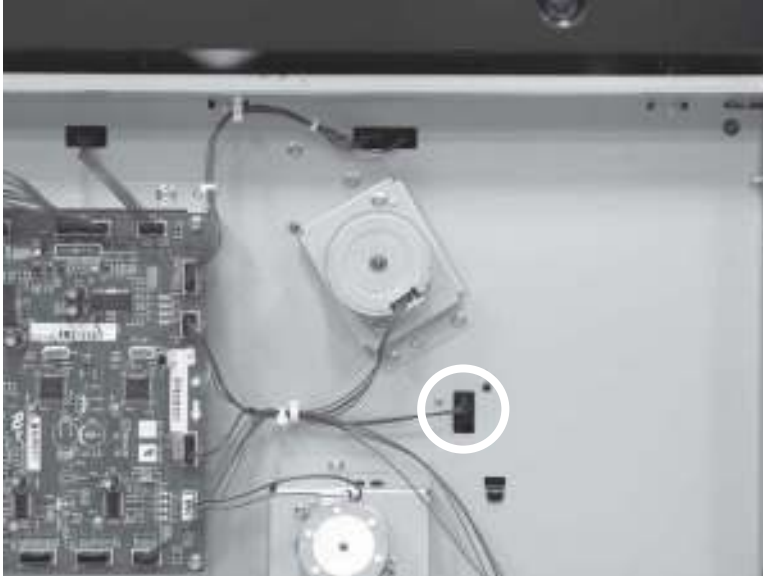
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI left tray. See [HCI left tray on page 273](#).
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly

1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-442** Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (1 of 2)



2. From inside the tray cavity, remove one screw, and then remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-443** Remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly (2 of 2)





## HCI right tray automatic close assembly

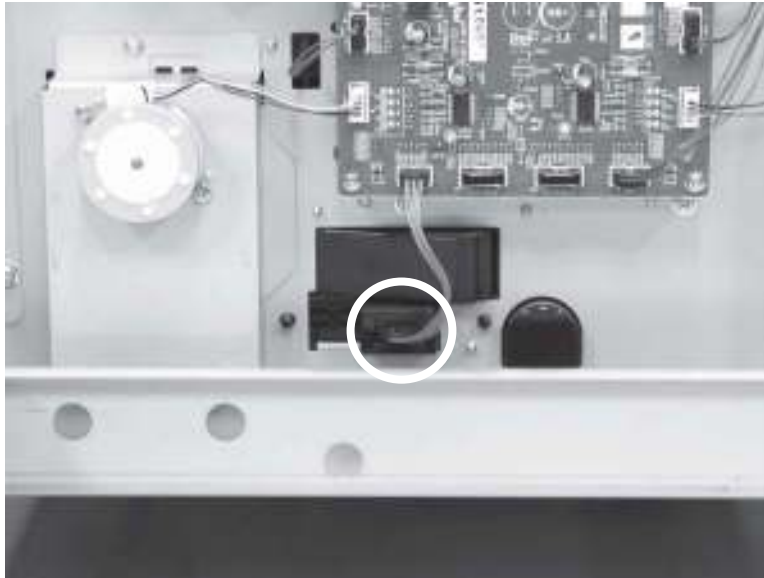
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See [HCI right tray on page 272](#).
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly

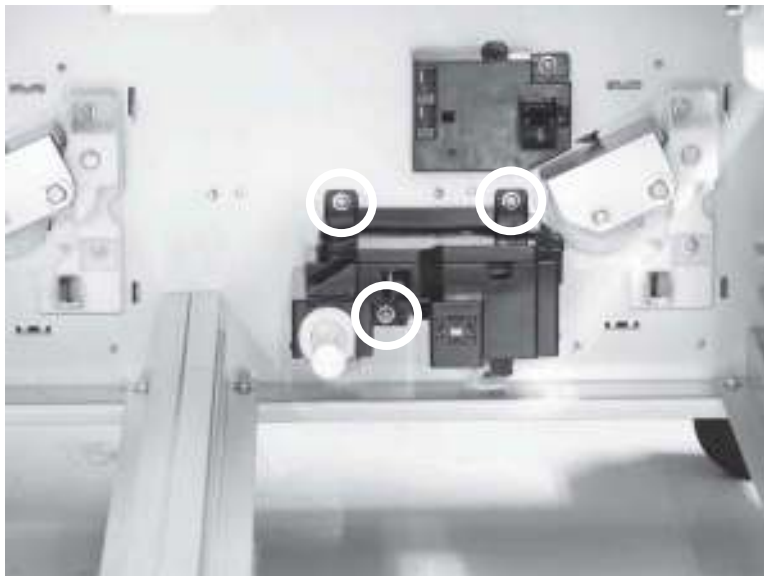
1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-444** Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2)



2. From inside the tray cavity, remove three screws, and then remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-445** Remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2)



## HCI left tray automatic close assembly

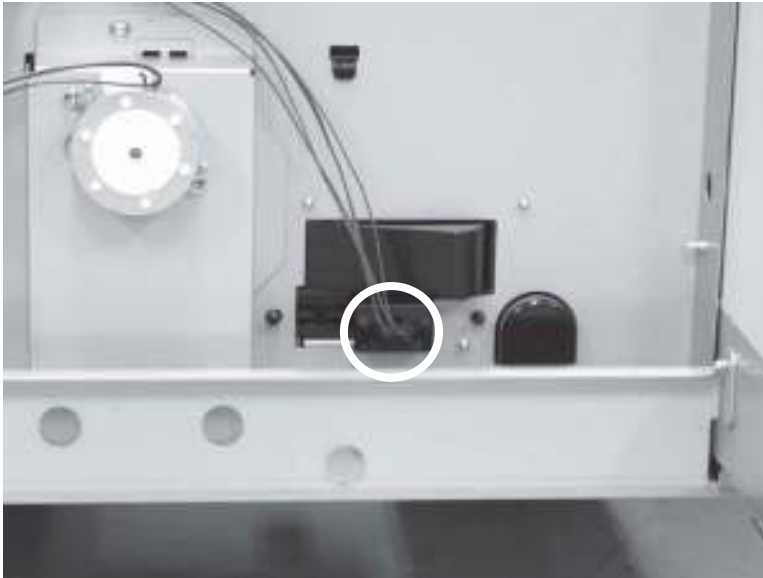
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI left tray. See [HCI left tray on page 273](#).
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly

1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-446** Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (1 of 2)



2. From inside the tray cavity, remove three screws, and then remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-447** Remove the HCI left tray automatic close assembly (2 of 2)



## HCI right tray pickup assembly

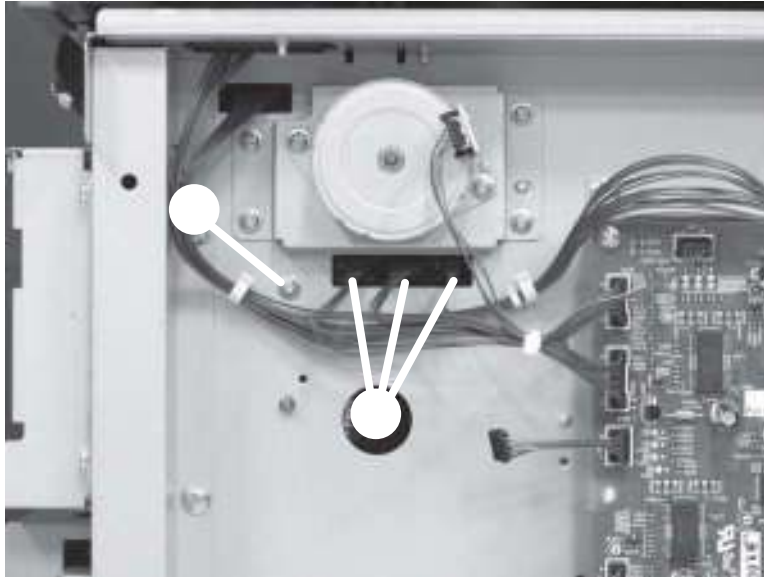
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See [HCI right tray on page 272](#).
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).
- HCI right tray pickup drive. See [HCI right tray pickup drive on page 283](#).

### Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

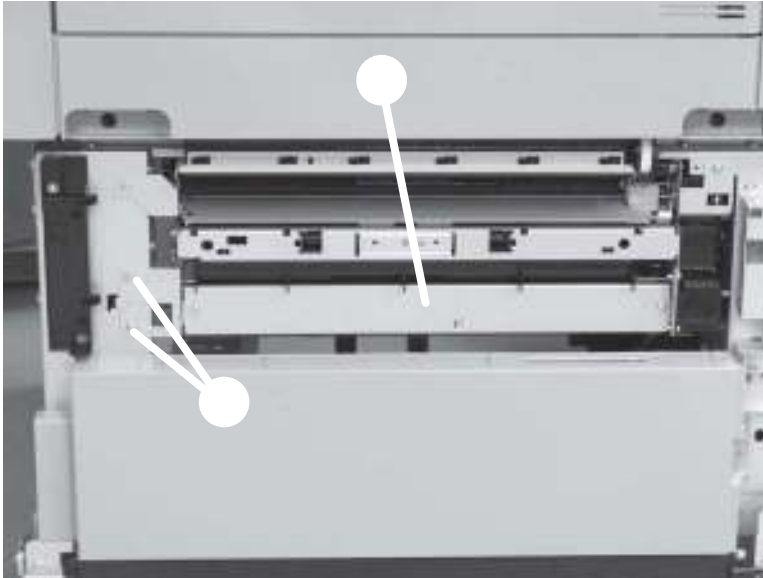
**Figure 1-448** Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

 **TIP:** It might be easier to lift up on the merge assembly flap, and then remove (or replace) the pickup assembly from the right side of the HCI chassis (rather than from inside the tray cavity).

**Figure 1-449** Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly (2 of 2)



## HCI left tray pickup assembly

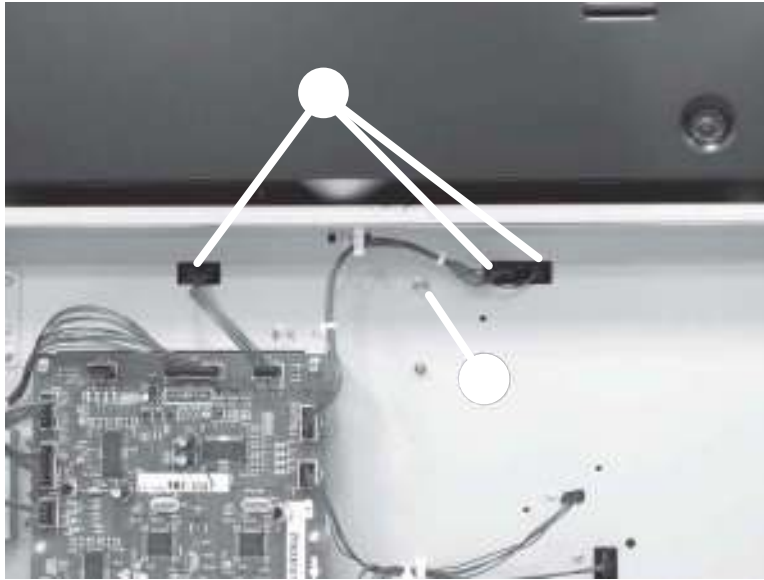
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See [HCI right tray on page 272](#).
- HCI left tray. See [HCI left tray on page 273](#).
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).
- HCI left tray pickup drive. See [HCI left tray pickup drive on page 285](#).

### Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) and then remove one screw (callout 2).

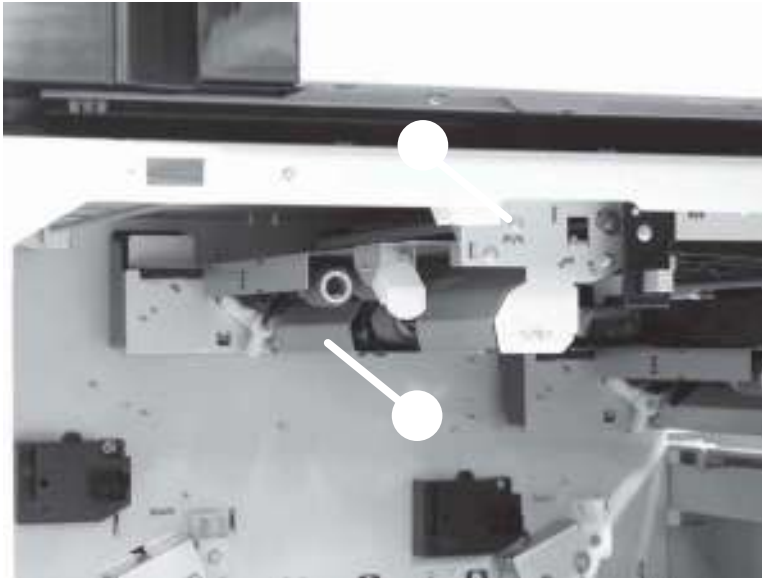
**Figure 1-450** Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (1 of 2)



2. Inside the tray cavity, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

 **TIP:** Support the assembly when removing the screw (callout 1) so that it does not fall.

**Figure 1-451** Remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly (2 of 2)



## HCI merge assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- HCI right tray. See [HCI right tray on page 272](#).
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).
- HCI right tray pickup drive. See [HCI right tray pickup drive on page 283](#).
- HCI right tray pickup assembly. See [HCI right tray pickup assembly on page 293](#).
- HCI merge drive assembly. See [HCI merge drive assembly on page 286](#).

### Remove the HCI merge assembly

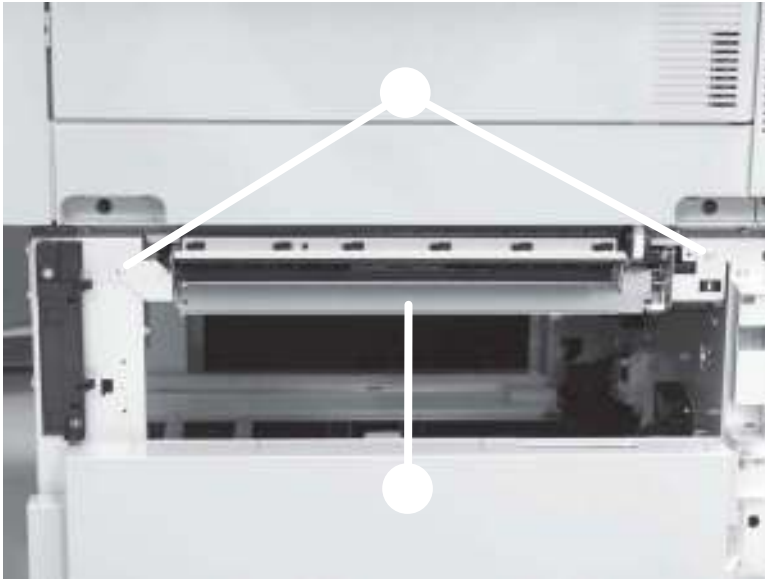
1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-452** Remove the HCI merge assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-453** Remove the HCI merge assembly (2 of 2)





## HCI controller PCA

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

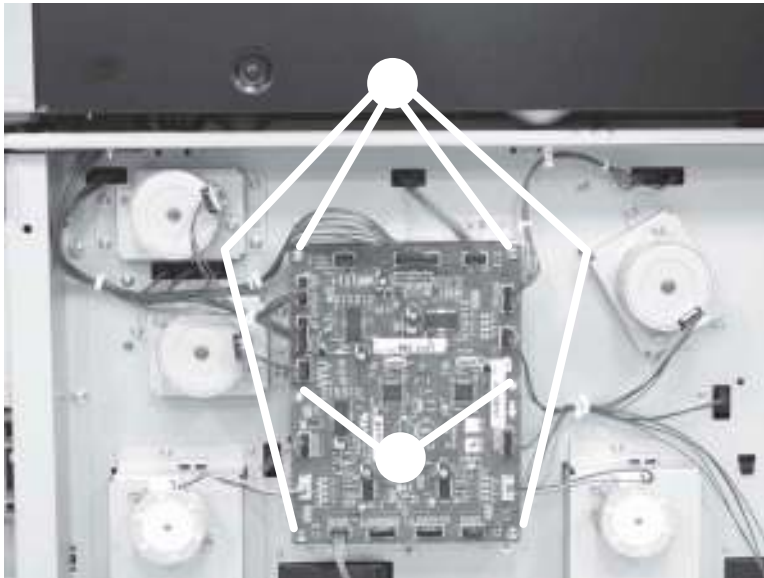
- HCI rear and right rear corner covers. See [HCI rear and right-rear corner covers on page 274](#).

### Remove the HCI controller PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

Disconnect all of the connectors on the HCI controller PCA, remove four screws (callout 1), release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA.

**Figure 1-454** Remove the HCI controller PCA



# Finishing accessories

---

 **CAUTION:** Disconnect the finishing accessory from the product before servicing.

---

This section includes information about the following topics:

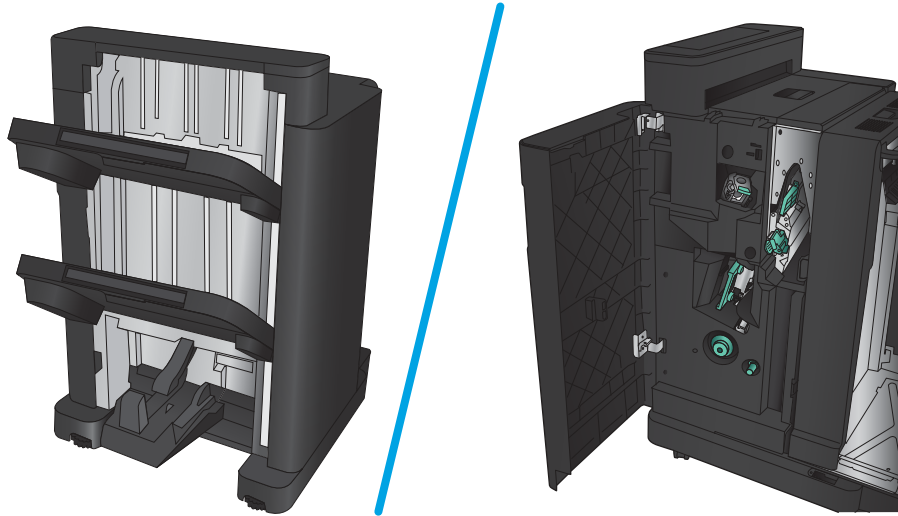
- [Identify the finishing accessories](#)
- [Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product](#)
- [Identifying finishing accessory covers and doors](#)
- [Shared finishing accessory assemblies](#)
- [Booklet maker accessory](#)
- [Stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker with hole punch accessories](#)

## Identify the finishing accessories

- Booklet maker (BM)

Includes booklet maker and stapler functions.

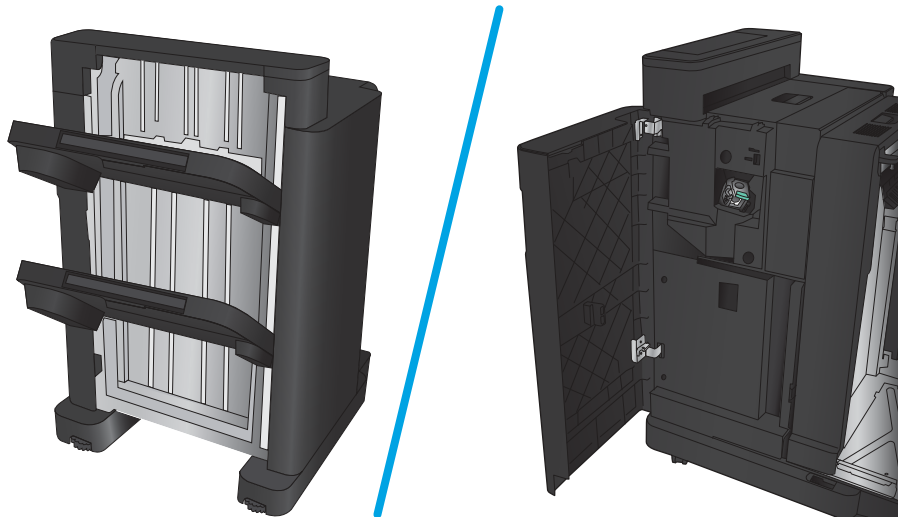
**Figure 1-455** Identify the BM finishing accessory



- Stapler/stacker (SS)

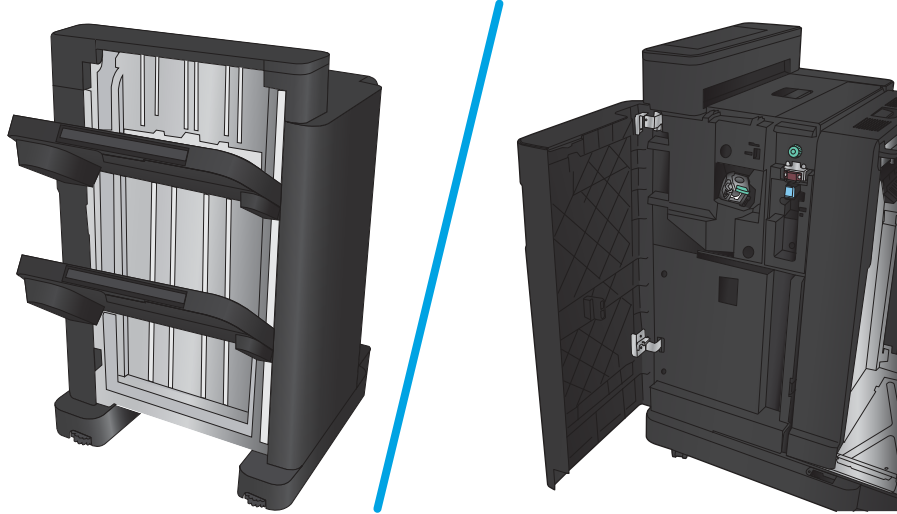
Includes stapler functions.

**Figure 1-456** Identify the SS finishing accessory



- Stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP)  
Includes stapler and hole punch (2/3 or 2/4) functions.

**Figure 1-457** Identify the SSHP finishing accessory



## Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product

 **CAUTION:** You must use the following procedure to disconnect a finishing accessory from the product. Incorrectly disconnecting a finishing accessory can damage the accessory.

---

1. Turn the product power off, and then disconnect the accessory interface cable from the product.

 **TIP:** Release one tab found on the bottom of the cable to release it.

---

**Figure 1-458** Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (1 of 4)

2. Open the accessory front door.

**Figure 1-459** Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (2 of 4)

3. Release and hold the lower-release latch, and then release and hold the upper release latch. Keep both of the latches in the release position.

**Figure 1-460** Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (3 of 4)



4. With the upper- and lower-release latches in the release position, carefully slide the accessory away from the product.



---

**TIP:** It might be easier if two people slide the accessory away from the product.

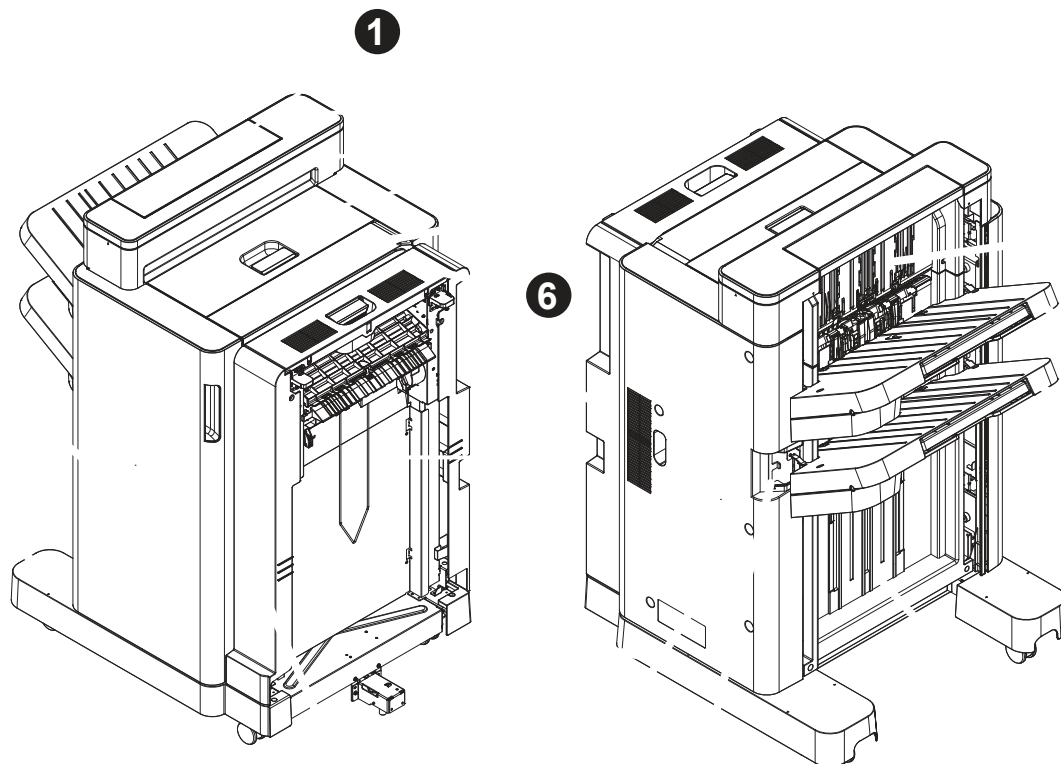
---

**Figure 1-461** Disconnect a finishing accessory from the product (4 of 4)

## Identifying finishing accessory covers and doors

 **NOTE:** Unless otherwise noted, many of the covers, doors, and output bins are common to all of the finishing accessories.

**Figure 1-462** Finishing accessory covers and doors (1 of 2)



**Table 1-9** Finishing accessory covers and doors (1 of 2)

| Item                                                      | Description                        | Item | Description                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1                                                         | Open/closed stepped cover assembly | 10   | Rear cover assembly                                       |
| 2                                                         | Upper stepped cover assembly       | 11   | Bin cable guide cover                                     |
| 3                                                         | Lower stepped cover assembly       | 12   | Pre-reverse cover assembly                                |
| 4                                                         | Top cover assembly                 | 13   | Front foot cover assembly                                 |
| 5                                                         | Punch cover assembly               | 14   | Front door                                                |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP) only. |                                    |      |                                                           |
| 6                                                         | Upper reverse cover assembly       | 15   | Height wall assembly                                      |
| 7                                                         | Rear reverse cover assembly        | 16   | Lower bin assembly                                        |
| 8                                                         | Right cover assembly               | 17   | Upper bin assembly                                        |
| 9                                                         | Rear foot cover assembly           | 18   | Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assemblies |

Figure 1-463 Finishing accessory covers and doors (2 of 2)

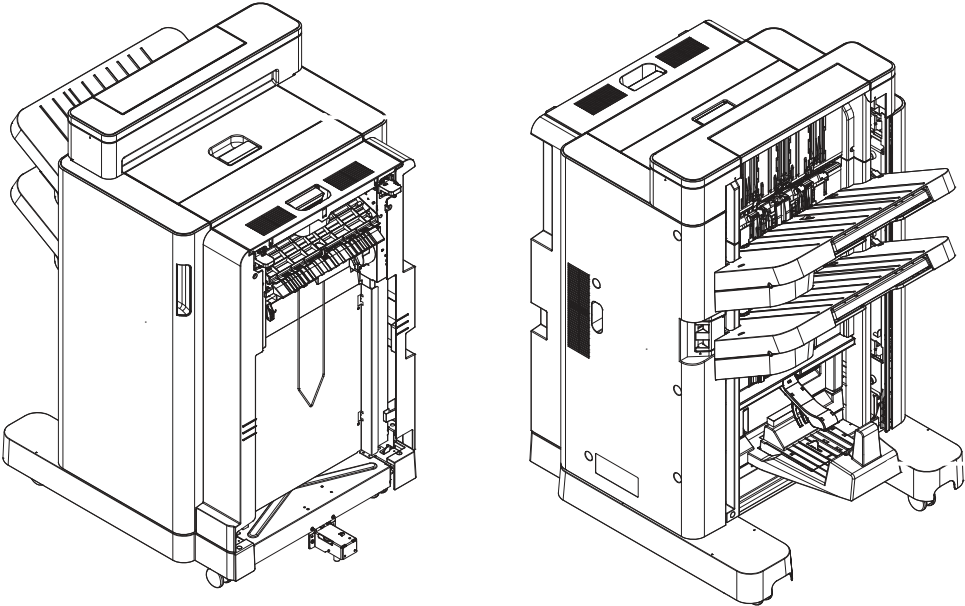


Table 1-10 Finishing accessory covers and doors (2 of 2)

| Item                           | Description                         | Item                           | Description                |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1                              | Upper cover with extension assembly | 2                              | Saddle output bin assembly |
| NOTE: Booklet maker (BM) only. |                                     | NOTE: Booklet maker (BM) only. |                            |



## Shared finishing accessory assemblies

The assemblies described in this section are found on each of the finishing accessories.

- [Upper cover lock assembly](#)
- [Right cover assembly](#)
- [Pre-reverse cover assembly](#)
- [Rear reverse cover assembly](#)
- [Upper reverse cover assembly](#)
- [Bin cable guide cover](#)
- [Open/closed stepped cover assembly](#)
- [Upper stepped cover assembly](#)
- [Lower stepped cover assembly](#)
- [Top door assembly](#)
- [Front door](#)
- [Inner upper cover assembly](#)
- [Clutch assembly \(front side\)](#)
- [Sensor switch assembly](#)
- [Inner lower cover assembly](#)
- [Front foot cover assembly](#)
- [Lower lock release handle assembly](#)
- [Rear cover assembly](#)
- [Main controller PCA assembly](#)
- [Entrance upper guide assembly](#)
- [Rear foot cover assembly](#)
- [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly](#)
- [Upper crossmember assembly](#)
- [Paper feed drive assembly](#)
- [Pressure roller assembly](#)
- [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies](#)
- [Height wall assembly](#)
- [Paper face sensor and flag assembly](#)
- [Staple sub assembly](#)

- [Staple connecting cable assembly](#)
- [Staple assembly](#)
- [Paper detect holder assembly](#)
- [Operation tray assembly](#)
- [Swing guide assembly](#)
- [Return roller assembly](#)
- [Clutch assembly \(rear side\)](#)
- [Stack ejection motor assembly](#)
- [Press motor assembly](#)
- [Common driver PCA assembly](#)
- [Interface cable assembly](#)
- [Reverse driver PCA assembly](#)
- [Reverse assembly](#)
- [Paper pass assembly](#)

## Upper cover lock assembly

1. Open the upper cover, and then carefully unsnap two spring loaded arms to release them from the latch shaft.

**Figure 1-464** Remove the upper cover lock assembly (1 of 3)

2. Move the upper cover out of the way, release one lever (callout 1) which holds the entrance upper guide assembly in the open position, and then lower the guide assembly (callout 2) into the accessory.

**Figure 1-465** Remove the upper cover lock assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper cover lock assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-466** Remove the upper cover lock assembly (3 of 3)

## Right cover assembly

1. Remove four screws.



**NOTE:** These screws have a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use these screws when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-467** Remove the right cover assembly (1 of 2)

2. Lift the cover up to release it, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-468** Remove the right cover assembly (2 of 2)

## Pre-reverse cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).

### Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly

1. Remove one screw.



**NOTE:** The cover is located on the product side of the accessory, to the right of the front door.

---

**Figure 1-469** Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-470** Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly (2 of 3)

3. Lift up on the cover to release it, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-471** Remove the pre-reverse cover assembly (3 of 3)



## Rear reverse cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).

### Remove the rear reverse cover assembly

1. Remove one screw.



**NOTE:** The cover is located on the product side of the accessory, to the left of the rear cover.

---

**Figure 1-472** Remove the rear reverse cover assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-473** Remove the rear reverse cover assembly (2 of 3)



3. Lift up on the cover to release it, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-474** Remove the rear reverse cover assembly (3 of 3)



## Upper reverse cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear Reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).

### Remove the upper reverse cover assembly

1. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-475** Remove the upper reverse cover assembly (1 of 2)

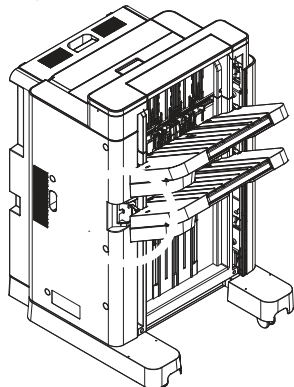
2. Lift the cover up, and then slide it away from the finishing accessory to remove it.

**Figure 1-476** Remove the upper reverse cover assembly (2 of 2)

## Bin cable guide cover

1. Use the figure below to locate the bin cable guide cover.

**Figure 1-477** Remove the bin cable guide cover (1 of 6)



2. If the upper or lower stack bin prevents access to this cover, do the following:

 **TIP:** Push up on the bin to move it toward the top of the accessory. To move the bin down, use the following procedure to release the clutch.

- a. Support the bin.
- b. Release the bin clutch located on the underside of the bin, and then lower the bin to access the cover.

 **TIP:** Use a small flat blade screw driver to slide the raised portion of the clutch toward the spring to release the clutch.

**Figure 1-478** Remove the bin cable guide cover (2 of 6)

3. Use your fingers to reach in behind the cover, and then rotate the end of the cover—near the stack bin cables—away from the accessory to release two tabs.

**Figure 1-479** Remove the bin cable guide cover (3 of 6)

4. Slide the cover towards the stack bins to release it.

**Figure 1-480** Remove the bin cable guide cover (4 of 6)

5. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-481** Remove the bin cable guide cover (5 of 6)

6. After the cover is removed, take note of the location of the two latching tabs (callout 1) and the two positioning tabs (callout 2).

When the bin cable guide cover is reinstalled, these tabs must be correctly positioned so that the cover is correctly installed and the bin cables will not bind on the cover when the bins move up and down.

**Figure 1-482** Remove the bin cable guide cover (6 of 6)

### Reinstall the bin cable guide cover

If the cover is not correctly installed, the bin cable guide cover can bind on the cover which causes the upper and lower stack bins to not correctly function. If the bins cannot correctly function, a **66.60.32** error message appears on the control-panel display.

Make sure that the cover correctly fits flush up against the rear cover when it is correctly installed—there should not be a gap between the bin cable guide cover and the rear cover.

**Figure 1-483** Bin cable guide cover correctly installed

**Figure 1-484** Bin cable guide cover incorrectly installed

## Open/closed stepped cover assembly

1. Open the cover.

**Figure 1-485** Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (1 of 2)

2. Carefully push in on the cover hinge (callout 1) to release the hinge pin, lift the rear edge of the cover out and up (callout 2), and then slide the cover to the right (callout 3). Unlatch the left hinge of cover by swinging it out and up to remove cover (callout 4).

**Figure 1-486** Remove the open/close stepped cover assembly (2 of 2)

## Upper stepped cover assembly

1. Use your finger to release one tab (callout 1), carefully pull up on the opposite corner of the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the cover to release a second tab (callout 3).



**TIP:** To locate the tabs, look for arrows embossed on the cover.

---

**Figure 1-487** Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (1 of 4)

2. Use your finger to release one tab (callout 1), carefully pull up on the opposite corner of the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the cover to release a second tab (callout 3).

**Figure 1-488** Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (2 of 4)



3. Rotate the edge of the cover nearest the stack bins (callout 1) up and away from the accessory.



**TIP:** As you rotate the cover up, push in on the center of the cover (callout 2) to make it easier to remove.

---

**Figure 1-489** Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (3 of 4)

4. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-490** Remove the upper stepped cover assembly (4 of 4)

## Lower stepped cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).

### Remove the lower stepped cover assembly

1. Remove two screws.



**NOTE:** From the top of the accessory, look down into the lower stepped cover to locate these screws.

---

**Figure 1-491** Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (1 of 5)

2. Remove one screw (callout 1) from the rear cover.



---

**TIP:** Removing this screw is necessary to release the rear cover from the lower stepped cover when it is removed.

---

**Figure 1-492** Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (2 of 5)

3. Carefully flex the corner of the rear cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then slightly lift up and push in (callout 2) on the lower stepped cover to release one tab.

**Figure 1-493** Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (3 of 5)

4. Rotate the edge of the cover nearest the stack bins up and away from the accessory.

**Figure 1-494** Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (4 of 5)

5. Remove the cover.



---

**TIP:** Lift and rotate the cover as shown below so that the cover will slide out from under the top door.

---

**Figure 1-495** Remove the lower stepped cover assembly (5 of 5)



## Reinstall the lower stepped cover

It is important verify that the lower stepped cover is correctly reinstalled by opening the top cover and making make sure that the slots in the cover are underneath the sheet-metal tabs on the chassis. See the figures below.

**Figure 1-496** Reinstall the lower stepped cover (1 of 2)

**Figure 1-497** Reinstall the lower stepped cover (2 of 2)

## Top door assembly



**NOTE:** The following figures show the top door assembly on the stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP) finishing accessory. This removal procedure is valid for all of the finishing accessories.

The figures in this section show the stepped covers removed. You do not need to remove the stepped covers to remove the top door assembly.

1. Open the top door to the fully raised position.



**TIP:** When fully opened, the top door locks in the open position.

**Figure 1-498** Remove the top door assembly (1 of 3)

2. Carefully unsnap two spring loaded arms to release them from the latch shaft.

**Figure 1-499** Remove the top door assembly (2 of 3)

3. From the front of the finisher, slide the top door slightly towards the rear of the accessory until it stops (callout 1). Carefully press in on the front hinge to release the hinge from the bracket (callout 2), and then lift it out of the bracket (callout 3). Slide the top of the door towards the front of the accessory to release the rear hinge (callout 4) from the rear bracket to remove the door.

**Figure 1-500** Remove the top door assembly (3 of 3)

## Front door

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

 **TIP:** If the front door is being removed to replace it, use the following procedure. To remove the front door to gain access to other assemblies, see [Remove only the front door on page 331](#).

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).

### Remove the front door

1. Open the front door.

**Figure 1-501** Remove the front door (1 of 2)



2. Lift the front cover up to release it from the hinge pins, and then remove the door.

**Figure 1-502** Remove the front door (2 of 2)

#### Remove only the front door



---

**TIP:** To remove only the front door, use the following procedure.

---

1. Open the front door.
2. Support the door, and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 1) and the sheet-metal hinge (callout 2).



---

**TIP:** To reinstall the self-tapping screw, first turn it counterclockwise (1/4 turn) to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten.

---

**Figure 1-503** Remove only the front door (1 of 2)

3. With the door slightly angled away from the accessory so that it will not interfere with other accessory covers, lift the door up and off of the bottom hinge to remove it.

**Figure 1-504** Remove only the front door (2 of 2)

## Inner upper cover assembly



**TIP:** If the cover needs to be moved out of the way to gain access to assemblies immediately behind the cover, use the following procedure. If the cover needs to be removed to service other assemblies on the accessory, go to [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-505** Move the inner upper cover out of the way (1 of 2)

3. Rotate the cover towards the front door to move it out of the way.



**CAUTION:** To prevent damage to the cover, make sure that it does not bind on the upper front door hinge when you move it out of the way.

**Figure 1-506** Move the inner upper cover out of the way (2 of 2)

## Inner upper cover assembly (remove)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).

## Remove the inner upper cover assembly

1. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-507** Remove the inner upper cover assembly (1 of 2)

2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-508** Remove the inner upper cover assembly (2 of 2)

## Clutch assembly (front side)

Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover out of the way. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).

### Remove the clutch assembly (front side)

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-509** Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 1 of 2)

2. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then slide the clutch off of the shaft to remove it.

**Figure 1-510** Remove the clutch assembly (front side; 2 of 2)

## Sensor switch assembly

Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover out of the way. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).

### Remove the sensor switch assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from three retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-511** Remove the sensor switch assembly (1 of 4)

2. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to disconnect one connector (callout 1).

**Figure 1-512** Remove the sensor switch assembly (2 of 4)

3. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-513** Remove the sensor switch assembly (3 of 4)

4. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-514** Remove the sensor switch assembly (4 of 4)



## Inner lower cover assembly



**TIP:** If the cover needs to be moved out of the way to gain access to assemblies immediately behind the cover, use the following procedure. If the cover needs to be removed to service other assemblies on the accessory, go to [Inner lower cover assembly \(remove\) on page 341](#).

1. Open the front door.
2. Move the inner upper cover out of the way. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).
3. Remove six screws.

**Figure 1-515** Move the inner lower cover out of the way (1 of 3)

4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the green knob (callout 2).

**Figure 1-516** Move the inner lower cover out of the way (2 of 3)

5. Slide the cover toward the front door so that it will not interfere with the inner upper cover, and then rotate the cover towards the front door to move it out of the way.

---

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to the cover, make sure that it does not bind on the upper front door hinge when you move it out of the way.

---

**Figure 1-517** Move the inner lower cover out of the way (3 of 3)

## Inner lower cover assembly (remove)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).

## Remove the inner lower cover assembly

1. Do one of the following:
  - **Booklet maker (BM):** Remove six screws.

**Figure 1-518** Remove the inner lower cover assembly (1 of 5)

- **Stapler/stacker (SS) and stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP):** Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-519** Remove the inner lower cover assembly (2 of 5)

2. **Booklet maker (BM):** Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the green knob (callout 2).

**Figure 1-520** Remove the inner lower cover assembly (3 of 5)

3. Rotate the bottom of the cover out and away from the accessory.



**NOTE:** The figure below shows the SS and SSHP accessory cover. The procedure is the same for the BM accessory.

---

**Figure 1-521** Remove the inner lower cover assembly (4 of 5)

4. Remove the cover.



**NOTE:** The figure below shows the SS and SSHP accessory cover. The procedure is the same for the BM accessory.

---

**Figure 1-522** Remove the inner lower cover assembly (5 of 5)

## Front foot cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Front door. See [Remove only the front door on page 331](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).



---

**NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

---

### Remove the front foot cover assembly

1. Before proceeding, use the figure below to locate the three mounting tabs.

**Figure 1-523** Remove the front foot cover assembly (1 of 5)

2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-524** Remove the front foot cover assembly (2 of 5)

3. Use your fingers to reach up under the cover, release two tabs, and then slightly raise the cover.



---

**TIP:** Look for the arrows embossed on the cover to locate the tabs.

---

**Figure 1-525** Remove the front foot cover assembly (3 of 5)

4. Release one tab, and then slightly raise the cover.



---

**TIP:** Look for the arrow embossed on the cover to locate the tab.

---

**Figure 1-526** Remove the front foot cover assembly (4 of 5)

5. Rotate the cover away from the accessory to release it, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-527** Remove the front foot cover assembly (5 of 5)



## Lower lock release handle assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Front door. See [Remove only the front door on page 331](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).

 **NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).

 **NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

- Front foot cover assembly. See [Front foot cover assembly on page 344](#).

### Remove the lower lock release handle cover assembly

1. Slightly raise the handle to disengage the handle-to-lock slide pin underneath the handle.

**Figure 1-528** Remove the lower lock release handle assembly (1 of 3)



2. Slide the handle to the end of its travel.

**Figure 1-529** Remove the lower lock release handle assembly (2 of 3)

3. Rotate the end of the handle away from the finishing accessory chassis (callout 1) to release the keyed locking pin, and then lift up on the handle (callout 2) to remove it.

**Figure 1-530** Remove the lower lock release handle assembly (3 of 3)

## Rear cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

 **TIP:** If the rear cover is being removed to gain access to other assemblies, use the following procedure. If the cover is being moved to gain access to assemblies immediately behind the cover go to, see [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).

### Remove the rear cover assembly

1. Open the top door to the fully raised position, and then remove one screw.

 **TIP:** When fully opened, the top door locks in the open position.

**Figure 1-531** Remove the rear cover assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove four screws.



---

**NOTE:** A fifth screw (not shown) was removed when the lower stepped cover was removed.

---

**Figure 1-532** Remove the rear cover assembly (2 of 3)

3. Lift up on the cover to release it (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).



---

**NOTE:** As the cover is removed, carefully feed the interface cable through the hole provided in the cover.

---

**Figure 1-533** Remove the rear cover assembly (3 of 3)

## Remove only the rear cover

 **TIP:** To remove only the rear cover, use the following procedure.

1. Open the top door assembly, and then remove the bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
2. Remove five screws.

**Figure 1-534** Remove only the rear cover (1 of 3)



3. At the top of the accessory, lift up on the rear cover to release two tabs.

**Figure 1-535** Remove only the rear cover (2 of 3)

4. Remove the cover.



**NOTE:** As the cover is removed, carefully feed the interface cable through the hole provided in the cover.

---

**Figure 1-536** Remove only the rear cover (3 of 3)

## Main controller PCA assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the main controller PCA assembly

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

1. Disconnect 22 of the connectors, and then release the wire harnesses from the guides.

 **TIP:** Releasing the wire harnesses from the guides first might make it easier to disconnect some of the connectors on the PCA.

 **NOTE:** The following connectors are not used on the PCA:

- Booklet maker: J25, J27, J28, and J32
  - Stapler/stacker with hole punch: J12, J15, J25, J27, J28, and J30
  - Stapler/stacker: J9, J16, and J32
- 

**Figure 1-537** Remove the main controller PCA assembly (1 of 6)

2. Remove two screws (callout 1) to release two ground wires, and then release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-538** Remove the main controller PCA assembly (2 of 6)

3. Release the wire harnesses from one retainer at the top of the sheet-metal PCA mounting bracket.

**Figure 1-539** Remove the main controller PCA assembly (3 of 6)



4. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-540** Remove the main controller PCA assembly (4 of 6)

5. Lift up on the main controller PCA assembly to release it, and then remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-541** Remove the main controller PCA assembly (5 of 6)

6. **Optional step:** Remove four screws, and then separate the main controller PCA from the sheet-metal mounting bracket.

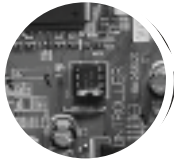
**Figure 1-542** Remove the main controller PCA assembly (6 of 6)

### Install a replacement main controller PCA assembly

The main controller PCA includes a removable memory device that contains important calibration information for the accessory. Carefully remove this device (pry it out of its socket, being careful to not bend or break the mounting pins), and then install it on the replacement PCA to retain the calibration information.

**△ CAUTION:** When you install the memory device, the notch on the device and the notch on the socket must be aligned. If the memory device is not correctly installed, the device polarity will be reversed which will damage the memory device.

**Figure 1-543** Install a replacement main controller PCA assembly



## Adjustments

These adjustments are for the primary stapler unit for both the stapler stacker and booklet maker accessories. Test the finishing accessory functions after replacing the main controller PCA. If needed, use these procedures to make performance adjustments.

### Access the main controller switches

- SW1, SW2, and SW3 (callout 1)
- DIPSW4 (callout 2)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** DIPSW4 has eight electronic switches that can be configured in the ON or OFF position. The controller PCA is marked ON and OFF to show the current switch position.

---

**Figure 1-544** Main controller PCA switches

### Access the saddle controller switches (BM only)

- SW1 (callout 1)
- DIPSW (callout 2)

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** DIPSW has eight electronic switches that can be configure in the ON or OFF position. The controller PCA is marked ON and OFF to show the current switch position.

---

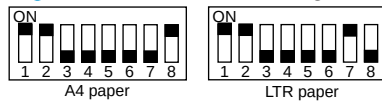
**Figure 1-545** Booklet maker controller PCA switches (BM only)

### Adjust the alignment position

Perform this adjustment if the alignment position must be changed.

1. Turn the product power off, and then disconnect the interface cable from the product.
2. Access the main controller PCA, and then set DIPSW4 to one of the following:

**Figure 1-546** DIPSW4 alignment settings



3. Connect the interface cable to the product, and then turn the product power on.
4. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA. When SW3 is pressed, the swing guide opens and the alignment plate moves to the prescribed position.
5. Place ten sheets of A4 or LTR paper between the alignment plates and align them squarely against the stopper.

**NOTE:** The object of this calibration is to adjust the plates so that they lightly and evenly touch the sides of the stacked paper.

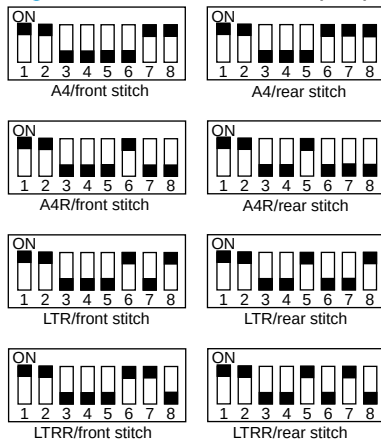
6. Press SW1 or SW2 on the main controller PCA and adjust the alignment plate against the paper. The adjustment range is  $\pm 4.2$  mm (0.165 in).
  - Pressing SW1 moves the alignment plate 0.42 mm (0.016 in) forward
  - Pressing SW2 moves the alignment plate 0.42 mm (0.016 in) backward
7. When the adjustment is complete, remove the paper, and then press SW3 once to write the adjustment values to the memory device on the PCA.
8. Return all of the switches on DIPSW4 to the OFF position.
9. Turn the product power off, and then install the covers.

## Adjust the staple position

Adjust the stapler position if the staple position must be changed. This adjustment sets the front and rear stitches with A4/A4R when the paper used for adjustment is AB type and with LTR/LTRR when the paper is INCH type.

1. Turn the product power off, and then disconnect the interface cable from the product.
2. Access the main controller PCA, and then set DIPSW4 according to paper/stitch position used for adjustment:

**Figure 1-547** DIPSW4 staple position settings



3. Connect the interface cable to the product, and then turn the product power on.
4. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA. When SW3 is pressed, the swing guide opens and the alignment plate moves to the prescribed position.
5. Place two sheets paper between the alignment plates and align them squarely against the stopper, and then push the rear edge of the paper against the rear alignment plate.  
  
If the gap between the front alignment plate and front edge of the paper is 1 mm (0.039 in) or greater, adjust the plate alignment before continuing. See [Adjust the alignment position on page 359](#).
6. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA once to staple the paper. Remove the stapled paper and verify the staple position.
7. Press SW3 on the main controller PCA once.
8. If the staple position is correct, insert a sheet of paper between the aligning plates and align it against the stopper, push the far end edge of the paper to the rear aligning plate, press SW3 once (stapling action/store adjustment value), and then proceed to step 9.
9. If the staple position is incorrect, press SW1 or SW2 on the main controller PCA to adjust the staple position.
  - Pressing SW1 moves the alignment plate 0.49 mm (0.019 in) forward
  - Pressing SW2 moves the alignment plate 0.49 mm (0.019 in) backward
10. Repeat step 4 and step 5 until the staple is in the correct position.

11. Return all of the switches on DIPSW4 to the OFF position.
12. Turn the product power off, and then install the covers.

#### Adjust the folding position to the stitch position (booklet maker only)

Adjust the position of the booklet fold by changing the settings of bits six through eight of DIPSW on the booklet maker controller PCA to match the booklet stapling (stitching) position.

If the booklet maker controller PCA has been replaced, be sure to set the new DIPSW so that the settings will be the same as those on the old DIPSW.

Perform this adjustment if you must change the folding position. Set the DIPSW on the booklet maker controller PCA to match the stitching position (adjusting the distance over which the paper positioning plate is moved to the folding position from the stitching position).

1. Turn the product power off, and then disconnect the interface cable from the product.
2. Access the booklet maker controller PCA, and then set DIPSW. To establish a baseline for measurements, set bits 1 through 8 of DIPSW on the booklet maker controller PCA as follows:



**NOTE:** Do not change bit 5.

**Figure 1-548** DIPSW folding position settings



Do not change bit 5.

3. Do the following:
  - Open the front door and the paper-jam-access guide plate on the saddle guide assembly.
  - At the rear of the accessory, tape the actuator of the inlet-cover sensor (saddle guide assembly PI9) and inlet door switch (saddle guide assembly SW1) so that both sensor and switch remain activated. This simulates that the saddle guide is in the closed position throughout the adjustment procedure.

4. Using two sheets of A3 or 11 x 17 paper, mark the top of the paper as shown below. This is a reference mark to show a specific end of the paper. The mark just needs to be somewhere at one end of the paper as shown below.

**Figure 1-549** Mark the paper



5. Close the saddle guide assembly and the front door of the accessory. Reconnect the interface cable from the booklet maker to the product. Turn the product power on, and wait until the product is in a Ready state.
6. Press SW1 on the booklet maker controller PCA to activate the feed motor (M1). You will need to press and hold down SW1 for three seconds (or longer) if 11 x 17 paper is used.
7. Open the front door of the accessory, and then open saddle guide assembly (callout 1). Insert the two sheets of marked paper into the paper path leading to the folding unit and past the booklet stapler unit. Push them in by hand until the front edge of the sheets push against the paper positioning plate.

**Figure 1-550** Folding position adjustment (1 of 2)



8. Verify that the paper is properly located against the paper positioning plate by opening the booklet delivery door and looking at the paper positioning plate (callout 1).



**NOTE:** It is important for the bottom of the sheets of paper to be squarely resting on the paper positioning plate for the adjustment to be accurate.

**Figure 1-551** Folding position adjustment (2 of 2)

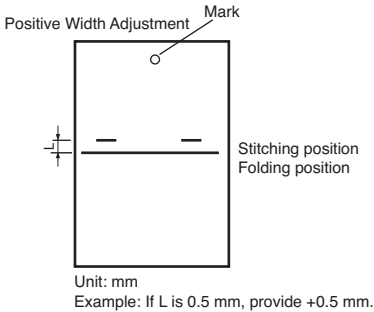
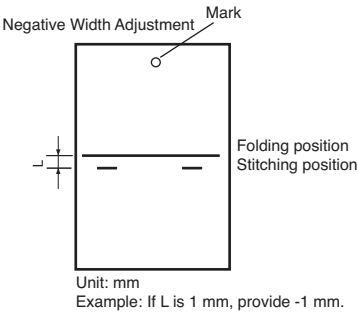
9. Close the saddle guide assembly.
10. Press SW1 on the booklet maker controller PCA. The saddle stitcher unit will "stitch" the sheets, and fold and deliver the stack automatically to the booklet output bin.
11. Measure the distance (L) between the stitching position and the folding position. Then perform a positive-width adjustment or a negative-width adjustment to suit the relationship between the stitching position and the folding position.



**NOTE:** If the L adjustment is significantly larger than what the adjustment allows, the most common cause is that the paper was not fully inserted and resting squarely on the paper position plate.

- If the stitching position is above the folding position, perform a positive-width adjustment."
- If the stitching position is below the folding position, perform a negative-width adjustment."

**Figure 1-552** Positive and negative width adjustment



12. Refer to the following tables, and then change the settings of bits 6 through 8 on DIPSW.

**Table 1-11** DIPSW settings

| DIPSW Bit settings |       |       | Setting                 |
|--------------------|-------|-------|-------------------------|
|                    |       |       | 0.5 mm (0.019 in) units |
| Bit 6              | Bit 7 | Bit 8 |                         |
| OFF                | ON    | ON    | +3                      |
| OFF                | ON    | OFF   | +2                      |
| OFF                | OFF   | ON    | +1                      |
| OFF                | OFF   | OFF   | 0                       |
| ON                 | OFF   | ON    | -1                      |
| ON                 | ON    | OFF   | -2                      |
| ON                 | ON    | ON    | -3                      |
| ON                 | OFF   | OFF   |                         |

**Table 1-12** Do not use these DIPSW settings

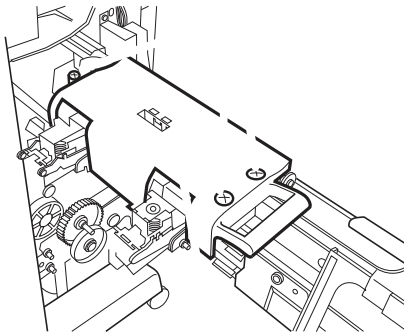
| DIPSW Bit settings |       |       |
|--------------------|-------|-------|
| Bit 6              | Bit 7 | Bit 8 |
| ON                 | OFF   | OFF   |

13. When adjustment has been completed and the stitch staples are within the fold line, set DIPSW bits 1 to 4 (only) to OFF.
14. Remove the tape from the actuator arm of switch SW1 and PI9 on the rear frame of the accessory.

#### Adjust the stitcher unit

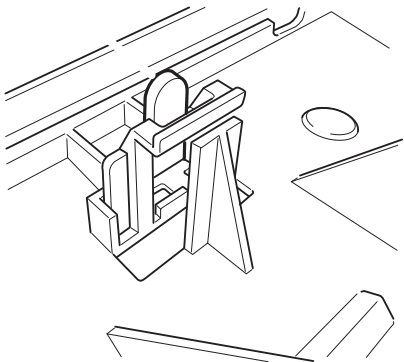
1. Open the front cover.
2. Pull out the stitcher mount unit to the front. Pull the stitcher towards you and then pull up.
3. Remove three screws (callout 1) and then remove the stitcher cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-553** Adjust the stitcher (1 of 6)



4. Remove the stitcher positioning tool (callout 1) from the back of the cover.

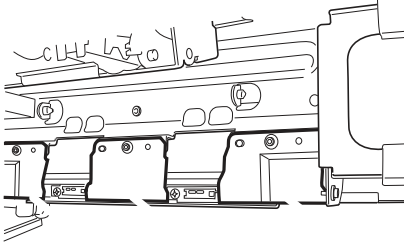
**Figure 1-554** Adjust the stitcher (2 of 6)



5. To adjust the front stitcher, remove the front guide plate (callout 1) and center guide plate (callout 2). To adjust the rear stitcher, remove the center guide plate (callout 2) and the rear guide plate (callout 3).

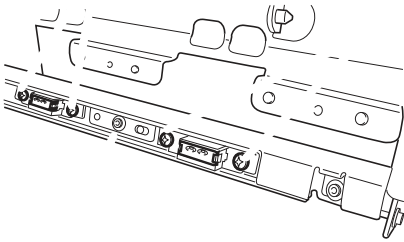
 **TIP:** Remove one screw from each plate to remove the plates.

**Figure 1-555** Adjust the stitcher (3 of 6)



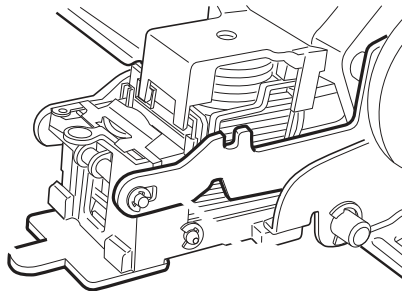
6. To adjust the front stitcher, loosen the two screws (callout 1) on the stitcher mount (callout 2). To adjust the rear stitcher, loosen the two screws (callout 3) on the stitcher mount.

**Figure 1-556** Adjust the stitcher (4 of 6)



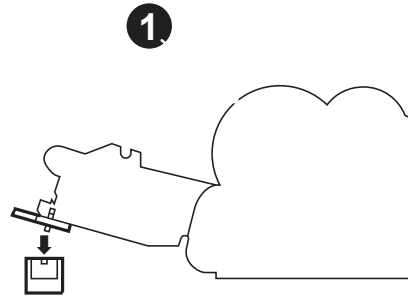
7. Insert the tool (callout 1) into the staple slot of the stitcher (callout 2).

**Figure 1-557** Adjust the stitcher (5 of 6)



8. Tilt the stitcher, and turn the stitcher gear (callout 1) to match the recess of the tool (callout 2) and the mount (callout 3) and then tighten the screws on the stitcher mount.

**Figure 1-558** Adjust the stitcher (6 of 6)



## Entrance upper guide assembly

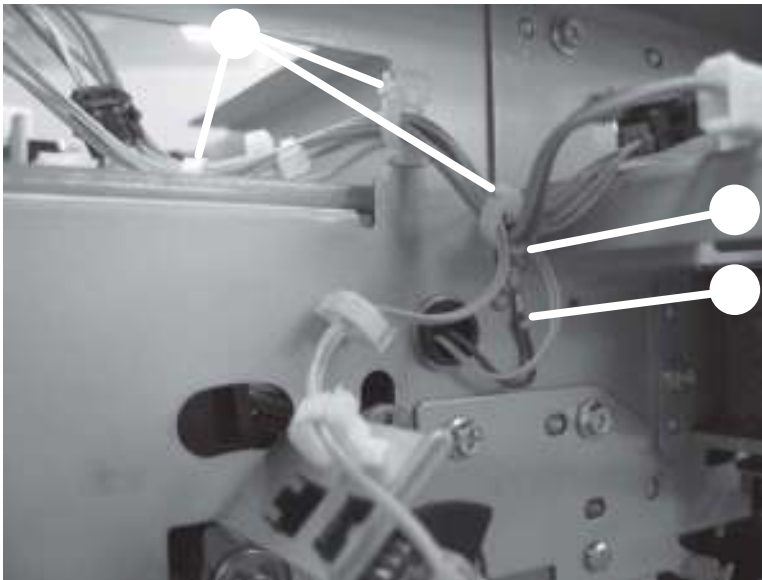
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Top door assembly. See [Top door assembly on page 328](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).

### Remove the entrance upper guide assembly

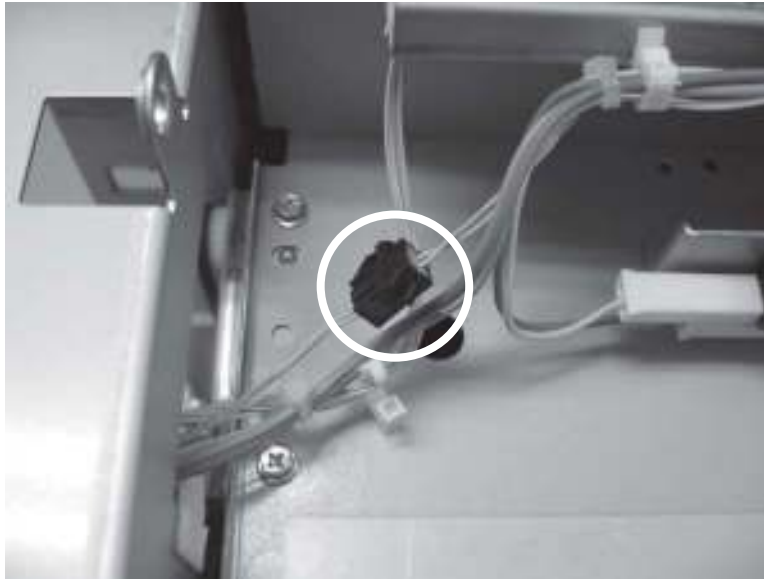
1. On the upper front chassis, remove one screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire (callout 2), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 3).

**Figure 1-559** Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (1 of 3)



2. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-560** Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (2 of 3)



3. Do the following:
  - a. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the door lock assembly (callout 2).
  - b. Remove one screw (callout 3) to release the remove the ground wire (callout 4).



**TIP:** Use a small Phillips head screwdriver to remove this screw.

- c. Remove one screw (callout 5), and then remove the hinge pin (callout 6).
  - d. Lift the assembly up (callout 7), and then slide it to the right (carefully remove the wire harness through the access hole in the chassis) to remove it (callout 8).

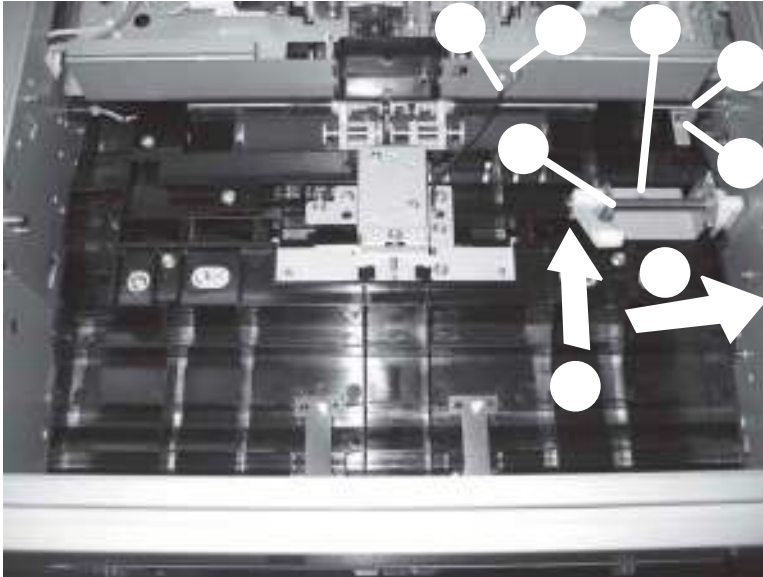


**NOTE:** The figure below shows the entrance guide assembly in the BM accessory. The assembly in the SSHP accessory is considerably smaller (about one half the size shown).

 **Reinstallation tip** Carefully guide the wire harness through the access hole in the chassis when you reinsert the entrance assembly.

---

**Figure 1-561** Remove the entrance upper guide assembly (3 of 3)





## Rear foot cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).

### Remove the rear foot cover assembly

1. Before proceeding, use the figure below to locate the three mounting tabs.

**Figure 1-562** Remove the rear foot cover assembly (1 of 7)

2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-563** Remove the rear foot cover assembly (2 of 7)

3. Use your fingers to reach up under the cover, release two tabs, and then slightly raise the cover.



---

**TIP:** Look for the arrows embossed on the cover to locate the tabs.

---

**Figure 1-564** Remove the rear foot cover assembly (3 of 7)

4. Release one tab, and slightly raise the cover.



---

**TIP:** Look for the arrow embossed on the cover to locate the tab.

---

**Figure 1-565** Remove the rear foot cover assembly (4 of 7)

5. Slightly flex the end of the cover (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the stack bin end of the finishing accessory (callout 2).

**Figure 1-566** Remove the rear foot cover assembly (5 of 7)

'

6. Continue to slide the cover toward the stack bin end of the finishing accessory until the front edge is past the height wall center assembly.

**Figure 1-567** Remove the rear foot cover assembly (6 of 7)

7. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-568** Remove the rear foot cover assembly (7 of 7)

## Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).

### Remove the stack wall upper cover assembly

1. If the upper stack bin is in the raised position do the following:
  - a. Support the bin.
  - b. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the bin locking gear located on the underside of the bin near the drive assembly cover.

**TIP:** Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the bin locking gear located on the underside of the bin near the drive assembly cover.
  - c. Lower the bin to access the stack wall upper cover.

**Figure 1-569** Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (1 of 5)

2. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-570** Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (2 of 5)

3. Raise the upper wall guide, and then remove one screw.

**Figure 1-571** Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (3 of 5)

4. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-572** Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (4 of 5)

5. If necessary, separate the upper guide wall (callout 1) from the stack wall upper assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-573** Remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly (5 of 5)

## Upper crossmember assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Top cover assembly. See [Top door assembly on page 328](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).

### Remove the upper crossmember assembly

1. At the top of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).



**TIP:** The connector is located near the two solenoids mounted at the middle of the crossmember assembly.

**Figure 1-574** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (1 of 13)



2. Release the wire harness from two retainers, and move it out of the way.

**Figure 1-575** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (2 of 13)

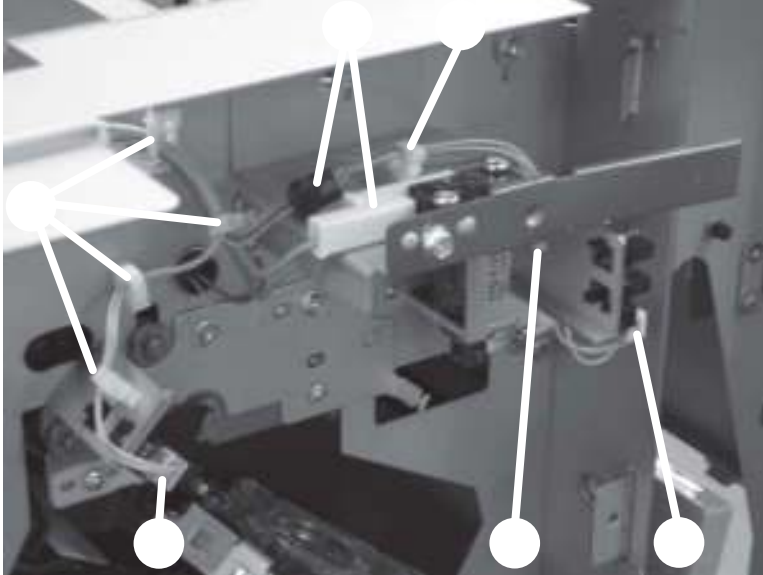
3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal bracket (callout 2).

**Figure 1-576** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (3 of 13)

4. At the front of the accessory, disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then remove the wire from the six wire retainers (callout 2).

 **TIP:** Use a small flat blade screwdriver to loosen, and then remove the large white-plastic connector on the front door detection switch.

**Figure 1-577** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (4 of 13)



5. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove two wire tie retainers.

**Figure 1-578** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (5 of 13)

6. Remove one screw to release the ground wire.

**Figure 1-579** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (6 of 13)

7. Release two connectors (callout 1) and three inline connectors (callout 2).



---

**TIP:** Use a small flat blade screwdriver to loosen, and then remove the two large white-plastic connectors.

---

**Figure 1-580** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (7 of 13)

8. Release the wire harnesses from five retainers (callout 1) along the top of the assembly, and then release the wire harnesses from eleven retainers (callout 2) along the inside of the assembly.



---

**TIP:** Move the wire harnesses out of the way.

---

**Figure 1-581** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (8 of 13)

9. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal bracket (callout 2).

**Figure 1-582** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (9 of 13)

10. Remove four screws.

**Figure 1-583** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (10 of 13)

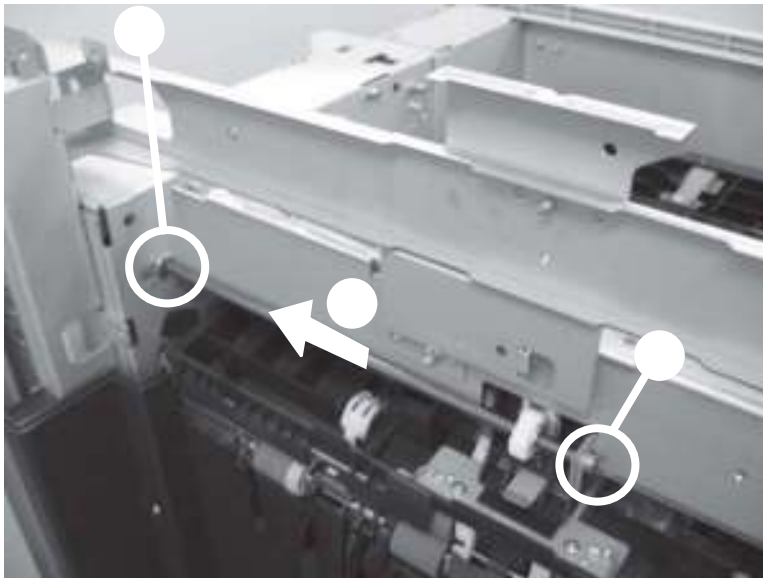
11. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), slide the gear shaft to the left (callout 2), remove one bushing (callout 3), and then move the gear shaft out of the way.

---

**CAUTION:** Do not lose the bushing (callout 3).

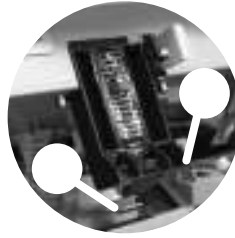
---

**Figure 1-584** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (11 of 13)



12. Carefully rotate the edge of the upper crossmember assembly up (callout 1), support the swing guide assembly (callout 2), and then separate the black-plastic gear rack (callout 3) from the sheet metal tab (callout 4).

**Figure 1-585** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (12 of 13)



13. Remove the assembly.

 **CAUTION:** The black plastic bracket (callout 1) along the front edge of the assembly, and the spring (callout 2) underneath the assembly are not captive. Do not lose these parts when removing or handling the assembly.

---

**Figure 1-586** Remove the upper crossmember assembly (13 of 13)

## Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly

1. When the assembly is positioned in the accessory, make sure that the spring underneath the assembly is seated on the pedestal on the swing guide.

**Figure 1-587** Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (1 of 7)

2. Verify that the two pivot arms are positioned in front of the pins (callout 1), and that the locking bar is seated in the cradle (callout 2).

 **Reinstallation tip** If after the upper crossmember assembly is removed and replaced the message **13.60.A1 Jam in Top Left Door** appears on the control panel display (or in the event log) after the product power is turned on, the two pivot arms or the locking bar might not have been properly installed.

**Figure 1-588** Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (2 of 7)





3. Install the mounting screws to secure the assembly to the chassis. Recheck the spring underneath the assembly. Verify that the spring is correctly positioned.

**Figure 1-589** Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (3 of 7)



4. Recheck the locking bar underneath the assembly. Verify that it is correctly positioned in the cradle. If it is not correctly positioned, slightly lift up the upper crossmember assembly, and reposition the locking bar in the cradle.

---

 **TIP:** If necessary, slightly loosen, but do not remove, the assembly mounting screws to allow the assembly to be lifted up. Make sure that you retighten the mounting screws.

---

**Figure 1-590** Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (4 of 7)



5. To reinstall the gear shaft right-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis mounting tab.

**Figure 1-591** Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (5 of 7)



6. To reinstall the gear shaft left-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis (callout 1), and then install the e-ring (callout 2).

 **Reinstallation tip** If the e-ring slot on the gear shaft is not visible, make sure that the drive gear, clutch, and pin—on the drive gear side of the shaft—are correctly assembled. If necessary, see the following step to reassembly the gear-shaft-pin assembly.

**Figure 1-592** Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (6 of 7)



7. **Optional step:** Make sure that the clutch is correctly position on the gear—two tabs on the clutch engage two slots on the gear face—and that the pin is positioned in the slot on the end of the shaft.

Reinstall the gear shaft left-side bushing, and then install the e-ring (callout 2). See [Figure 1-592 Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly \(6 of 7\) on page 388](#).

**Figure 1-593** Reinstall the upper crossmember assembly (7 of 7)

## Paper feed drive assembly

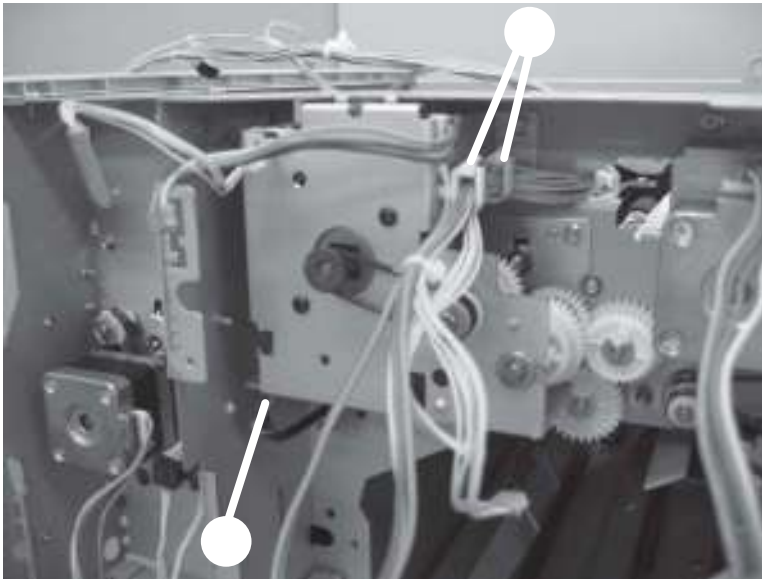
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Top cover assembly. See [Top door assembly on page 328](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Main controller PCA assembly. See [Main controller PCA assembly on page 353](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Upper crossmember assembly. See [Upper crossmember assembly on page 378](#).

### Remove the paper feed drive assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-594** Remove the paper feed drive assembly (1 of 2)

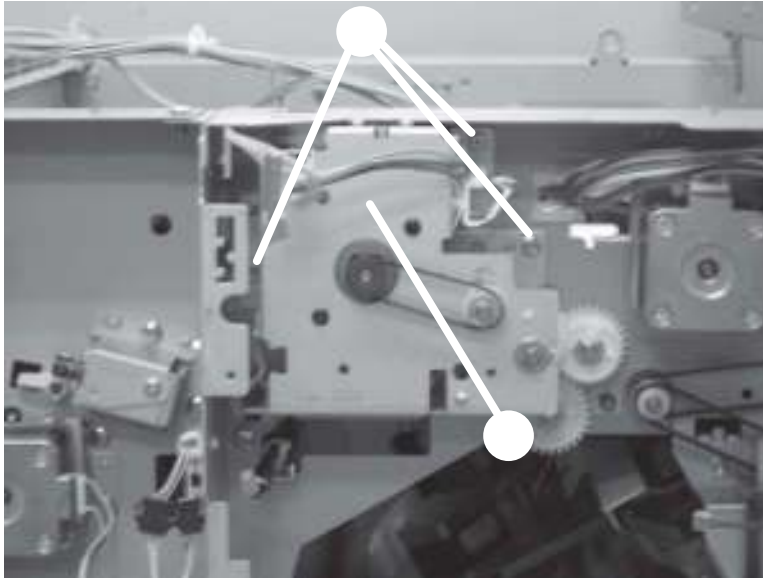


2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the paper feed drive assembly (callout 2).



**NOTE:** As you remove the assembly, slip the drive belt located behind the assembly off of the drive gear. Do not lose the belt.

**Figure 1-595** Remove the paper feed drive assembly (2 of 2)



## Pressure roller assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Top cover assembly. See [Top door assembly on page 328](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Main controller PCA assembly. See [Main controller PCA assembly on page 353](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Upper crossmember assembly. See [Upper crossmember assembly on page 378](#).

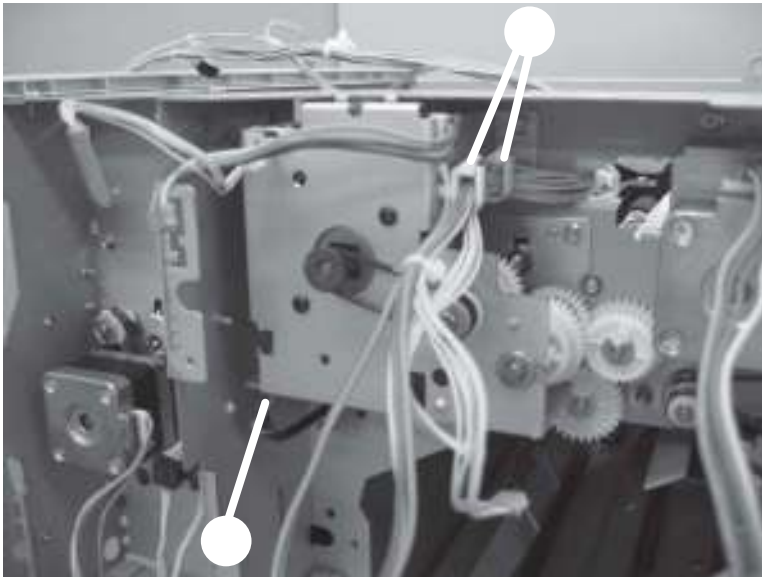
### Remove the pressure roller assembly



**NOTE:** Some of the figures in this procedure show white plastic drive gears. The gears in the accessory are black plastic. However, this removal procedure is correct for this accessory.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) and then release two retainers (callout 2).

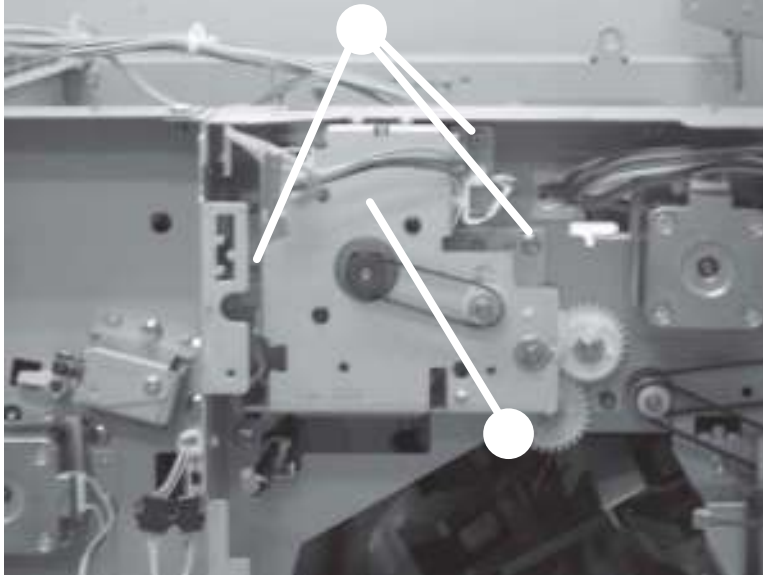
**Figure 1-596** Remove the pressure roller assembly (1 of 8)



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the paper feed motor assembly (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** As you remove the assembly, slip the drive belt located behind the assembly off of the drive gear. Do not lose the belt. Make sure that you connect the belt to the gear when the paper feed motor assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-597** Remove the pressure roller assembly (2 of 8)



3. Rotate the outer gear until the square box on the face of the gear is facing down. This horizontally aligns the locking pin behind the gear, and minimizes the possibility of the pin falling into the accessory when the gear is removed in the next step.

 **NOTE:** The outer gear is shown removed in the figure below.

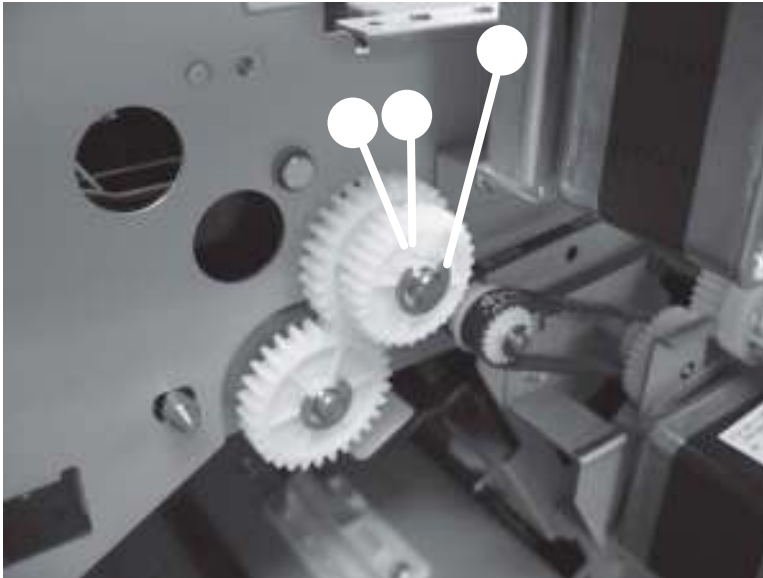
**Figure 1-598** Remove the pressure roller assembly (3 of 8)

4. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), one gear (callout 2), and one pin (callout 3) behind the gear.



**Reinstallation tip** Use the horizontal pin alignment described above to reinstall the pin.

**Figure 1-599** Remove the pressure roller assembly (4 of 8)



5. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), one gear (callout 2), and one pin (callout 3) behind the gear.

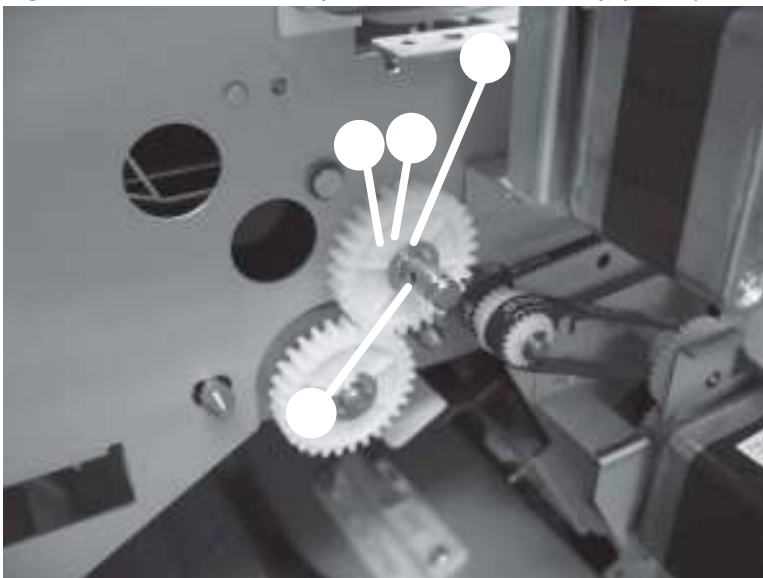


**NOTE:** Before proceeding, rotate the inner gear until the visible hole in the shaft (callout 4) is horizontal to prevent the locking pin behind the gear from falling out of the shaft.



**Reinstallation tip** Use the horizontal hole alignment described above to reinstall the pin.

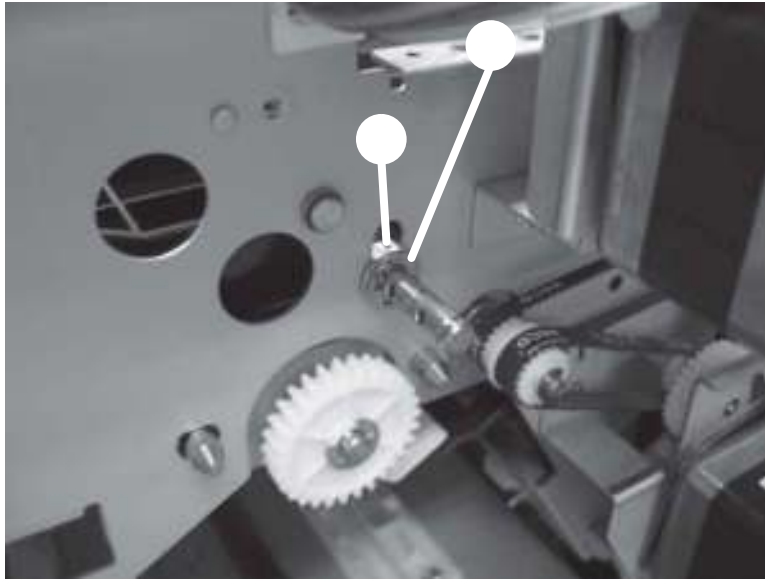
**Figure 1-600** Remove the pressure roller assembly (5 of 8)





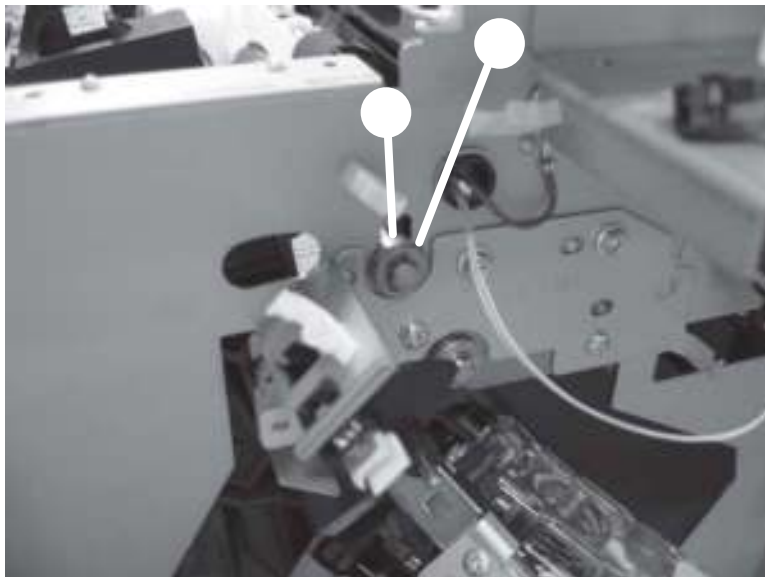
6. Remove the e-ring (callout 1) and then remove one bushing (callout 2).

**Figure 1-601** Remove the pressure roller assembly (6 of 8)



7. At the opposite side of the accessory, remove the e-ring (callout 1) and then remove one bushing (callout 2).

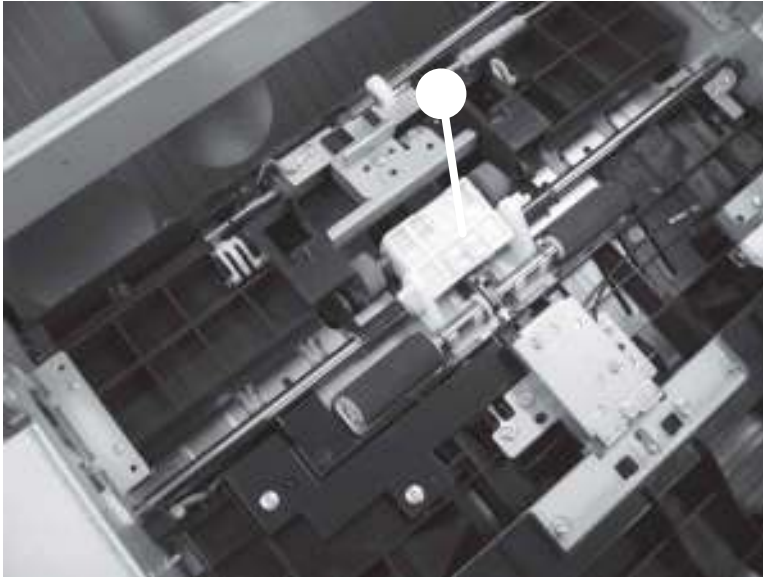
**Figure 1-602** Remove the pressure roller assembly (7 of 8)



8. Grasp the plastic component (callout 1) in the middle of the assembly, lift it up to clear the metal bracket, and then slide the assembly to the rear to release the front of the shaft. Lift the pressure roller assembly out of the accessory to remove it.

 **Reinstallation tip** When the assembly is reinstalled, first position the rear of the shaft in the hole of the chassis.

**Figure 1-603** Remove the pressure roller assembly (8 of 8)



## Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Remove the following assemblies only if you need to remove the lower bin.
  - Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
  - Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).

### Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assembly



**NOTE:** The stack upper bin assembly and the stack lower bin assembly look identical, but are different. Do not reverse the locations of the bins when they are reinstalled.

The upper bin assembly has two connectors and a ground wire at the end of the cable. The lower bin assembly has only one connector and a ground wire at the end of the cable. Also, the lower bin assembly has a coil around the end of the cable.

1. Do the following:

**Stack upper bin assembly:** Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).

**Stack lower bin assembly:** Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

**Figure 1-604** Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (1 of 5)

2. Release the wire harnesses from two retainers, and then do the following:

**Stack upper bin assembly:** Remove one ground screw (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2) on the controller PCA (J7 and J14).

**Stack lower bin assembly:** Remove one ground screw (callout 3), and then disconnect one connector (callout 4) on the controller PCA (J8).

**Figure 1-605** Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (2 of 5)

3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal stop brackets (callout 2).



---

**TIP:** The upper bin can be removed now.

---

**Figure 1-606** Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (3 of 5)

4. **Lower bin assembly only:** If you are removing the lower bin, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal stop bracket (callout 2).

**Figure 1-607** Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (4 of 5)

5. Carefully slide the bin up and off of the finishing accessory.

**Figure 1-608** Remove the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies (5 of 5)

#### Reinstall the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies

When the bins are reinstalled, use the following procedure to release the clutch and slide the bin down onto the accessory.

1. Support the bin.
2. Release the bin clutch located on the underside of the bin, and then lower the bin to access the cover.

---

 **TIP:** Use a small flat blade screw driver to slide the raised portion of the clutch toward the spring to release the clutch and lower the bin.

---

**Figure 1-609** Reinstall the stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies

## Height wall assembly

---

 **NOTE:** This assembly is described in the parts chapter as the following:

- Height wall lower assembly (stapler/stacker and stapler stacker with hole punch)
  - Height wall center assembly (booklet maker)
- 

### Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).

### Remove the height wall center assembly

---

 **NOTE:** The following figures show the height wall assembly on the stapler/stacker with hole punch finishing accessory. This removal procedure is valid for all of the finishing accessories.

---

1. Remove ten screws.

**Figure 1-610** Remove the height wall assembly (1 of 2)

2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-611** Remove the height wall assembly (2 of 2)

#### Reinstall the height wall assembly

Make sure that the black bracket is in the down position when the height wall assembly is reinstalled. If the bracket is in the up position when the assembly is reinstalled, the upper stack wall will not move up and down.

**Figure 1-612** Reinstall the height wall assembly



## Paper face sensor and flag assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).

### Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly

1. From the output side of the accessory, take note of how the spring on the left end of the flag is installed.

**Figure 1-613** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (1 of 9)



2. Disengage the bottom portion of the spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2) on the chassis.



**NOTE:** The figure below shows the spring disengaged.

---

**Figure 1-614** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (2 of 9)

3. Carefully flex the middle of the flag shaft away from the accessory (callout 1), and then disengage the end of the shaft from the mounting hole in the chassis (callout 2).

**Figure 1-615** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (3 of 9)

4. Remove the paper sensor flag.

**Figure 1-616** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (4 of 9)

5. Release one tab, and then release the wire tie retainer.

**Figure 1-617** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (5 of 9)



6. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from five retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-618** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (6 of 9)

7. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-619** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (7 of 9)

8. At the rear of the accessory, remove one screw.

**Figure 1-620** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (8 of 9)

9. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-621** Remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly (9 of 9)

## Staple sub assembly

Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover out of the way. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).

### Remove the staple sub assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the protective cover (callout 2)

**Figure 1-622** Remove the staple sub assembly (1 of 6)

2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1) on the PCA, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2) on the motor.

**Figure 1-623** Remove the staple sub assembly (2 of 6)

3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the sub staple PCA (callout 2).

**Figure 1-624** Remove the staple sub assembly (3 of 6)

4. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-625** Remove the staple sub assembly (4 of 6)

5. Slide the staple sub assembly away from the staple sub assembly motor to release the rear tabs of the assembly from the sheet-metal bracket.



**Reinstallation tip** It is important that when you reinstall the staple sub assembly, make sure that the rear tabs of the assembly engage the slots in the sheet-metal bracket.

---

**Figure 1-626** Remove the staple sub assembly (5 of 6)

6. Remove the staple sub assembly.

**Figure 1-627** Remove the staple sub assembly (6 of 6)



## Staple connecting cable assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).



**NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

---

- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Staple sub assembly. See [Staple sub assembly on page 408](#).

### Remove the staple connecting cable assembly

1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-628** Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (1 of 2)

2. Release the cable from three retainers, and then remove the cable.



**Reinstallation tip** When the cable is reinstalled, make sure that it is positioned correctly and will not be pulled tight at either end when the staple sub assembly moves along the staple assembly.

Align the black marks on the cable with the black marks on the chassis to place the cable in the correct position.

**Figure 1-629** Remove the staple connecting cable assembly (2 of 2)

## Staple assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).



**NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

---

- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Staple sub assembly. See [Staple sub assembly on page 408](#).

### Remove the staple assembly

1. Remove two screws.



**NOTE:** These screws are located under the controller PCA at the rear side of the accessory.

---

**Figure 1-630** Remove the staple assembly (1 of 7)

2. Carefully push the staple sub assembly base into the accessory.

**Figure 1-631** Remove the staple assembly (2 of 7)

3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal sensor cover (callout 2).

**Figure 1-632** Remove the staple assembly (3 of 7)

4. Release one sensor (callout 1), and then release one wire retainer (callout 2).

To remove the sensor, use your finger to release the sensor tabs from the underside of the assembly.

---

 **TIP:** It is easier to release the entire retainer from the sheet-metal stapler assembly tray than trying to release the wire harness from the retainer.

---

**Figure 1-633** Remove the staple assembly (4 of 7)

5. Carefully push the stapler assembly about one-half way into the accessory to release two tabs under the front edge of the assembly.

---

 **Reinstallation tip** Make sure that the two tabs are engaged in the slots in the chassis when the assembly is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-634** Remove the staple assembly (5 of 7)

6. Lift up the stapler assembly.

**Figure 1-635** Remove the staple assembly (6 of 7)

7. Carefully slide the stapler assembly out of the accessory.

---

 **TIP:** You might have to move the staple assembly up and down, and rotate it right and left, as you slide it out of the accessory to completely remove it.

---

**Figure 1-636** Remove the staple assembly (7 of 7)

## Paper detect holder assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).
- Height wall assembly. See [Height wall assembly on page 401](#).

### Remove the paper detect holder assembly

The assembly is very fragile. Grip the assembly by the snap fasteners (callout 1) and not by the arm. To remove the paper detect assembly, start at one end, grip each snap fastener at the base and gently pull to remove one at a time.

**Figure 1-637** Remove the paper detect holder assembly



### Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly

When reinstalling, the small tab (callout 1) on each snap fastener must be inserted into a hole (callout 2). The paper detect assembly (callout 3) will not work properly if the tabs are not installed correctly.

**Figure 1-638** Reinstall the paper detect holder assembly



## Operation tray assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Main controller PCA assembly. See [Main controller PCA assembly on page 353](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).
- Height wall assembly. See [Height wall assembly on page 401](#).
- Paper detect holder assembly. See [Paper detect holder assembly on page 417](#).

The following figure shows the operation tray assembly. Use this figure to identify the assembly in the accessory.

**Figure 1-639** Identify the operation tray assembly

## Remove the operation tray assembly

1. Remove one e-ring.

**Figure 1-640** Remove the operation tray assembly (1 of 11)

2. Carefully slide the gear and belt (callout 1) off of the shaft, and then remove the locking pin (callout 2). The locking pin behind the gear is not captive. Do not lose the pin when removing the gear and belt.

 **TIP:** Before removing the gear, rotate the gear until the lines on the gear face are vertical. This horizontally aligns the pin, and minimizes the possibility of it falling into the accessory when the gear is removed.

---

**Figure 1-641** Remove the operation tray assembly (2 of 11)

3. Remove one e-ring.

**Figure 1-642** Remove the operation tray assembly (3 of 11)

4. Remove one small flat washer and one bearing.



---

**TIP:** It might be easier to remove the washer and bearing by using a small flat blade screwdriver.

---

**Figure 1-643** Remove the operation tray assembly (4 of 11)

5. At the rear of the accessory, remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then slide the clutch (callout 2) off of the shaft to remove it.

**Figure 1-644** Remove the operation tray assembly (5 of 11)

6. Slide the stack-delivery roller to the left (callout 1) to release the bearing (callout 2).

---

 **CAUTION:** Avoid touching the rollers on the assembly. Skin oils can cause paper handling problems.

---

**Figure 1-645** Remove the operation tray assembly (6 of 11)

7. Carefully slide the bearing down the slot in the chassis.

**Figure 1-646** Remove the operation tray assembly (7 of 11)



8. Remove the stack-delivery roller.

**Figure 1-647** Remove the operation tray assembly (8 of 11)

9. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-648** Remove the operation tray assembly (9 of 11)

10. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-649** Remove the operation tray assembly (10 of 11)

11. Raise the swing guide assembly, and then remove the operation tray assembly.

**Figure 1-650** Remove the operation tray assembly (11 of 11)

#### Reinstall the operation tray assembly

1. Before installing the operation-tray assembly, make sure that the staple assembly is out of the way.

**Figure 1-651** Reinstall the operation tray assembly (1 of 5)



2. On the assembly, slide the joggers to the inside position.

**Figure 1-652** Reinstall the operation tray assembly (2 of 5)

3. When the assembly is installed, do not damage the mylar sheets inside the accessory.

**Figure 1-653** Reinstall the operation tray assembly (3 of 5)

4. Before installing the drive gear, make sure that it will be positioned on the shaft with the white-plastic pin on the back of the gear facing the chassis.

**Figure 1-654** Reinstall the operation tray assembly (4 of 5)

5. Rotate the shaft so that the locking pin hole is horizontal, install the locking pin (callout 1), place the belt on the gear, and then slide the gear onto the shaft (callout 2).



---

**TIP:** Rotate the gear until the lines on the gear face are vertical so that the slot on the back side of the gear for the locking pin is horizontally aligned.

When the gear is correctly installed on the shaft, the shaft should rotate when the gear is rotated—the gear should not freely rotate on the shaft.

---

**Figure 1-655** Reinstall the operation tray assembly (5 of 5)

## Swing guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Main controller PCA assembly. See [Main controller PCA assembly on page 353](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).
- Height wall assembly. See [Height wall assembly on page 401](#).
- Paper detect holder assembly. See [Paper detect holder assembly on page 417](#).
- Operation tray assembly. See [Operation tray assembly on page 419](#).

The following figure shows the swing guide assembly. Use this figure to identify the assembly in the accessory.

**Figure 1-656** Identify the operation tray assembly

## Remove the swing guide assembly

1. Look inside the accessory where the operation tray assembly was removed, and then locate and remove one e-ring.



**NOTE:** This e-ring is located on the inside rear wall of the chassis.

**Figure 1-657** Remove the swing guide assembly (1 of 12)



2. Slide the white-plastic bushing out of the holder.

**Figure 1-658** Remove the swing guide assembly (2 of 12)



3. Release one belt (callout 1), and then move it out of the way.

**Figure 1-659** Remove the swing guide assembly (3 of 12)

4. Remove one belt (callout 1).

**Figure 1-660** Remove the swing guide assembly (4 of 12)

5. Look inside the accessory where the operation tray assembly was removed, and then locate and remove one e-ring. Slide the bushing out of the holder.



**NOTE:** This e-ring and bushing are located on the inside front wall of the chassis.

**Figure 1-661** Remove the swing guide assembly (5 of 12)



6. At the top of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).



**TIP:** Follow the wire harness to the swing guide assembly, and release two more retainers (not shown) on the front and bottom of the crossmember assembly.

**Figure 1-662** Remove the swing guide assembly (6 of 12)

7. At the rear of the accessory, remove one retainer pin (callout 1), and then slide the clutch (callout 2) and gear (callout 3) off of the shaft to remove them.

**Figure 1-663** Remove the swing guide assembly (7 of 12)

8. At the output side of the accessory, remove one e-ring (callout 1), slide the gear shaft to the left (callout 2), remove one bushing (callout 3).

---

 **CAUTION:** Do not lose the bushing (callout 3).

---

**Figure 1-664** Remove the swing guide assembly (8 of 12)



9. Remove the gear-shaft assembly.

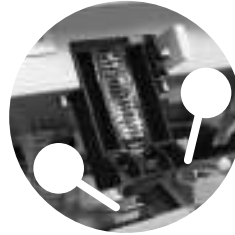
**Figure 1-665** Remove the swing guide assembly (9 of 12)

10. At the top of the accessory, loosen, but do not remove, four screws on the upper crossmember assembly.

**Figure 1-666** Remove the swing guide assembly (10 of 12)

11. Carefully lift up on the edge of the upper crossmember assembly (callout 1), and then separate the black-plastic gear rack (callout 2) from the sheet metal tab (callout 3).

**Figure 1-667** Remove the swing guide assembly (11 of 12)



12. Carefully remove the swing guide assembly.

**Figure 1-668** Remove the swing guide assembly (12 of 12)

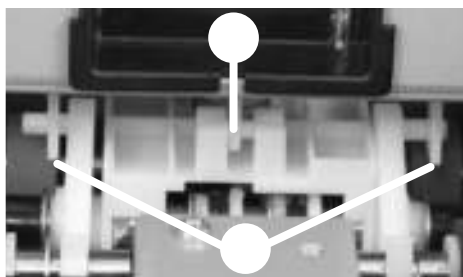
## Reinstall the swing guide assembly

1. After the swing guide is reinstalled, verify that the two pivot arms on the upper crossmember are positioned in front of the pins (callout 1), and that the locking bar is seated in the cradle (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** Do not forget to retighten the four upper crossmember mounting screws.

 **Reinstallation tip** If, after the swing guide assembly is removed and replaced, the message **13.60.A1 Jam in Top Left Door** appears on the control panel display (or in the event log) after the product power is turned on, the two pivot arms or the locking bar might not have been properly installed.

**Figure 1-669** Reinstall the swing guide assembly (1 of 7)



2. Verify that the spring underneath the upper crossmember assembly is correctly positioned.

**Figure 1-670** Reinstall the swing guide assembly (2 of 7)



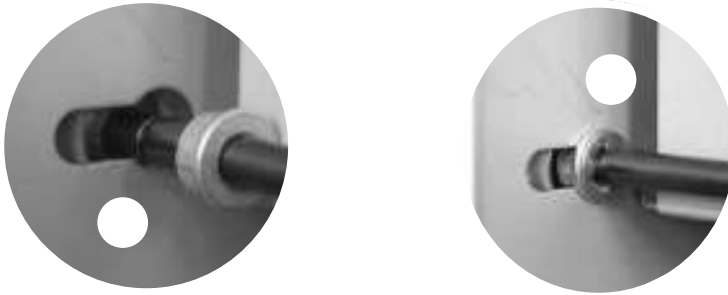
3. To reinstall the gear shaft right-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis mounting tab.

**Figure 1-671** Reinstall the swing guide assembly (3 of 7)



4. To reinstall the gear shaft left-side bushing, align the keyed portion of the bushing with the slot in the chassis (callout 1), and then install the e-ring (callout 2).

**Figure 1-672** Reinstall the swing guide assembly (4 of 7)



5. Make sure that the clutch is correctly position on the gear—two tabs on the clutch engage two slots on the gear face—and that the pin is positioned in the slot on the end of the shaft.

**Figure 1-673** Reinstall the swing guide assembly (5 of 7)

6. Recheck the locking bar underneath the upper crossmember assembly. Verify that it is correctly positioned in the cradle. If it is not correctly positioned, slightly lift up the upper crossmember assembly, and reposition the locking bar in the cradle.

---

 **TIP:** If necessary, slightly loosen, but do not remove, the assembly mounting screws to allow the assembly to be lifted up. Make sure that you retighten the mounting screws.

---

**Figure 1-674** Reinstall the swing guide assembly (6 of 7)



7. Make sure that the drive belts are correctly installed.

**Figure 1-675** Reinstall the swing guide assembly (7 of 7)

## Return roller assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

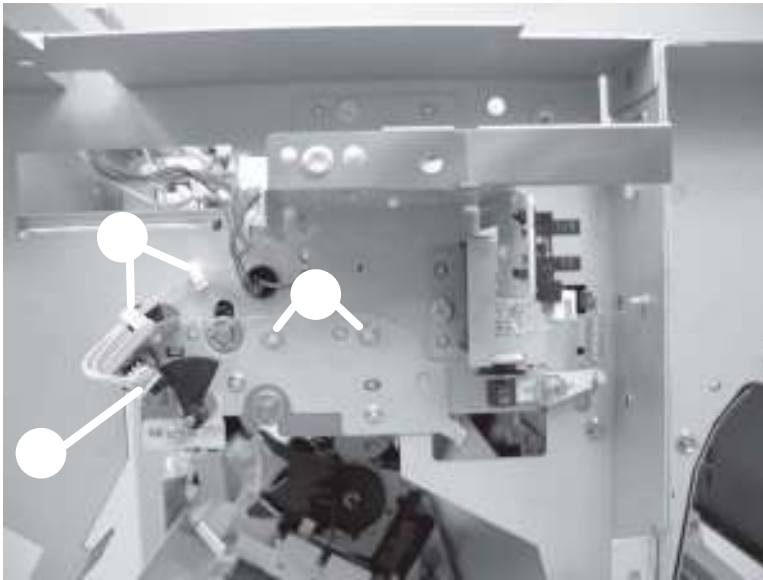
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Main controller PCA assembly. See [Main controller PCA assembly on page 353](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assembly. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).
- Height wall assembly. See [Height wall assembly on page 401](#).
- Paper detect holder assembly. See [Paper detect holder assembly on page 417](#).
- Operation tray assembly. See [Operation tray assembly on page 419](#).
- Swing guide assembly. See [Swing guide assembly on page 430](#).

## Remove the return roller assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two wire retainers (callout 2), and then remove two screws (callout 3).

 **TIP:** To make removing the return roller assembly easier, push the stapler assembly all of the way inside the accessory.

**Figure 1-676** Remove the return roller assembly (1 of 2)



2. Remove the return roller assembly from the front side of the chassis.

 **NOTE:** When you remove the assembly, use both hands to support the return roller.

 **TIP:** Be careful not to damage the mylar sheet during removal or replacement.

**Figure 1-677** Remove the return roller assembly (2 of 2)



## Clutch assembly (rear side)

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the clutch assembly (rear side)

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).  
Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

**Figure 1-678** Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 1 of 6)

2. Disconnect eight connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer and guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-679** Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 2 of 6)

3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-680** Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 3 of 6)

4. Remove four screws (callout 1), release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2), and then slightly lift up on the controller PCA sheet-metal bracket (callout 3) to release it.

**Figure 1-681** Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 4 of 6)

5. Carefully rotate the top of the controller PCA away from the chassis, and then move it out of the way.



**NOTE:** If needed, release additional wire harnesses from retainers to make it easier to rotate the PCA out of the way.

**Figure 1-682** Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 5 of 6)



6. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then slide the clutch off of the shaft to remove it.

**Figure 1-683** Remove the clutch assembly (rear side; 6 of 6)

## Stack ejection motor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the stack ejection motor assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).  
Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

**Figure 1-684** Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (1 of 7)

2. Disconnect eight connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer and guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-685** Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (2 of 7)

3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-686** Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (3 of 7)

4. Remove four screws (callout 1), release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2), and then slightly lift up on the controller PCA sheet-metal bracket (callout 3) to release it.

**Figure 1-687** Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (4 of 7)

5. Carefully rotate the top of the controller PCA away from the chassis, and then move it out of the way.



**NOTE:** If needed, release additional wire harnesses from retainers to make it easier to rotate the PCA out of the way.

**Figure 1-688** Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (5 of 7)



6. Remove three screws.

**Figure 1-689** Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (6 of 7)

7. Remove the motor and drive belt.

---

 **CAUTION:** The drive belt behind the motor is not captive. Do not lose the belt when the motor is removed.

 **Reinstallation tip** If you are installing a replacement motor, remove the wire harness (callout 1) and drive belt (callout 2) from the discarded motor, and then install them on the replacement motor.

---

**Figure 1-690** Remove the stack ejection motor assembly (7 of 7)

## Press motor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the press motor assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the upper sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 2).  
Remove one screw (callout 3), and then remove the lower sheet-metal cable retainer (callout 4).

**Figure 1-691** Remove the press motor assembly (1 of 7)

2. Disconnect eight connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer and guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-692** Remove the press motor assembly (2 of 7)



3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-693** Remove the press motor assembly (3 of 7)

4. Remove four screws (callout 1), release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2), and then slightly lift up on the controller PCA sheet-metal bracket (callout 3) to release it.

**Figure 1-694** Remove the press motor assembly (4 of 7)

5. Carefully rotate the top of the controller PCA away from the chassis, and then move it out of the way.



**NOTE:** If needed, release additional wire harnesses from retainers to make it easier to rotate the PCA out of the way.

**Figure 1-695** Remove the press motor assembly (5 of 7)



6. Support the motor, and then remove three screws.

**Figure 1-696** Remove the press motor assembly (6 of 7)

7. Remove the motor.



---

**Reinstallation tip** If you are installing a replacement motor, remove the wire harness (callout 1) from the discarded motor, and then install it on the replacement motor.

---

**Figure 1-697** Remove the press motor assembly (7 of 7)

## Common driver PCA assembly



**NOTE:** Only the booklet maker and stapler stacker accessories have a common driver PCA.

---

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the common controller PCA



**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.



**NOTE:** The following connectors are not used on the PCA: J804, and J805.

---

1. Disconnect all of the connectors.

**Figure 1-698** Remove the common driver PCA assembly (1 of 2)

2. Remove one screw (callout 1), use a pair of needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA (callout 3).

**Figure 1-699** Remove the common driver PCA assembly (2 of 2)

## Interface cable assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the interface cable assembly

1. Disconnect two connectors on the main controller PCA (J11 and J29; callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-700** Remove the interface cable assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-701** Remove the interface cable assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-702** Remove the interface cable assembly (3 of 3)

## Reverse driver PCA assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the reverse driver PCA assembly

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

Disconnect the four connectors, remove two screws (callout 1) and release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA.

---

 **TIP:** It might be easier to release the standoffs first, before disconnecting the top connector. Use needle-nose pliers to release the standoffs.

---

**Figure 1-703** Remove the reverse driver PCA assembly



## Reverse assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Upper reverse cover assembly. See [Upper reverse cover assembly on page 316](#).

### Remove the reverse assembly

1. Release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

**Figure 1-704** Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 1 of 5)

2. Remove the wire paper-retaining guide (callout 1).



---

**Reinstallation tip** If you are installing a replacement assembly, install the wire paper-retaining guide on the replacement reverse assembly.

---

**Figure 1-705** Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 2 of 5)

3. Remove four screws.



---

**NOTE:** These screws have a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use these screws when the assembly is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-706** Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 3 of 5)

4. Remove three screws.



**NOTE:** These screws have a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use these screws when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-707** Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 4 of 5)

5. Lift the assembly up to release it (callout 1), and then remove the assembly (callout 2).

**Figure 1-708** Remove the reverse assembly (BM and SS; 5 of 5)

## Paper pass assembly



**NOTE:** This assembly is installed on the stapler/stacker (SS) and stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP) only.

---

### Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Upper reverse cover assembly. See [Upper reverse cover assembly on page 316](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).



**NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

---

- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 459](#).

### Remove the paper pass assembly

1. Disconnect two in-line connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-709** Remove the paper pass assembly (1 of 7)

2. Release the wire harness from two retainers.

**Figure 1-710** Remove the paper pass assembly (2 of 7)

3. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-711** Remove the paper pass assembly (3 of 7)

4. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-712** Remove the paper pass assembly (4 of 7)

5. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-713** Remove the paper pass assembly (5 of 7)

6. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-714** Remove the paper pass assembly (6 of 7)

7. Lift the assembly up to release it, and then remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-715** Remove the paper pass assembly (7 of 7)

## Booklet maker accessory

The assemblies described in this section are unique to the booklet-maker (BM) finishing accessory. For information about removing and replacing assemblies that are common to all of the finishing accessories, see [Shared finishing accessory assemblies on page 307](#).

- [Knob](#)
- [Saddle output bin assembly](#)
- [Right cover assembly \(BM PCA\)](#)
- [Booklet maker controller PCA](#)
- [Inner side plate assembly](#)
- [Guide sensor assembly](#)
- [Guide motor assembly](#)
- [Saddle motor assembly](#)
- [Saddle feed motor assembly](#)
- [Folding-motor mount assembly](#)
- [Delivery switch mount assembly](#)
- [Saddle stapler assembly](#)
- [Lower left guide assembly](#)
- [Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly](#)
- [Saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly](#)
- [Saddle guide assembly](#)
- [Saddle feed assembly](#)
- [Saddle assembly](#)
- [Upper delivery guide assembly](#)
- [Saddle paper delivery assembly](#)
- [Saddle rear end sensor assembly](#)



## Knob

Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the green knob (callout 2).

**Figure 1-716** Remove the knob

## Saddle output bin assembly

1. Carefully push in on the bin hinges to release the hinge pins, and then separate the bin from the finishing accessory.

---

 **CAUTION:** The saddle output bin is still connected to the finishing accessory by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the bin.

 **TIP:** It might be easier to use a small flat blade screwdriver to push in on the bin hinges and release them.

---

**Figure 1-717** Remove the saddle output bin assembly (1 of 2)

2. Disconnect one in-line connector, and then remove the bin.

---

 **Reinstallation tip** Make sure that this connector is reconnected before you reinstall the assembly.

---

**Figure 1-718** Remove the saddle output bin assembly (2 of 2)

### Reinstall the saddle output bin

The spring loaded arm above the saddle output bin assembly can be easily dislodged. Hold the arm out of the way when you position the assembly on the accessory. Make sure that the arm is intact when the assembly is installed.

**Figure 1-719** Reinstall the saddle output bin assembly

## Right cover assembly (BM PCA)

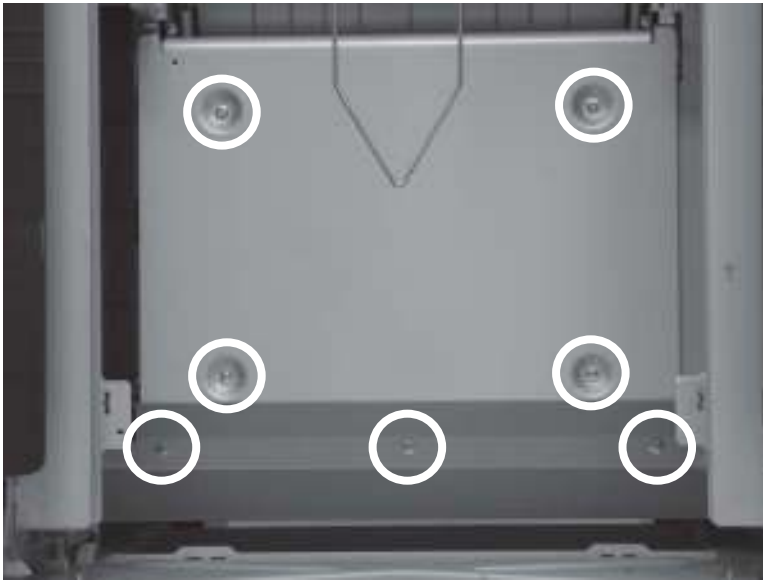
Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).

### Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA)

1. Remove seven screws.

**Figure 1-720** Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 1 of 2)



2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-721** Remove the right cover assembly (BM PCA; 2 of 2)

## Booklet maker controller PCA

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See [Right cover assembly \(BM PCA\) on page 470](#).

### Remove the booklet maker controller PCA

---

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

---

Disconnect all of the connectors, remove four screws, and then remove the PCA.

**Figure 1-722** Remove the booklet maker controller PCA

## Inner side plate assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See [Right cover assembly \(BM PCA\) on page 470](#).
- Booklet maker controller PCA. See [Booklet maker controller PCA on page 471](#).

### Remove the inner side plate assembly

---

 **TIP:** To make it easier to remove the inner side plate assembly, remove the wire paper-retaining guide that hangs off of the accessory.

---

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from two retainers (callout 2).

**Figure 1-723** Remove the inner side plate assembly (1 of 8)

2. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-724** Remove the inner side plate assembly (2 of 8)

3. At the drive gear side of the accessory, remove two screws.



---

**TIP:** Removing these screws loosens the tray under the assembly. When the tray is loose, it can be slightly moved out of the way which makes removing the inner side plate assembly easier.

---

**Figure 1-725** Remove the inner side plate assembly (3 of 8)

4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then move the wire harness out of the way.

---

 **CAUTION:** When you remove the assembly, do not allow the right end of the shaft on the assembly to damage the sensor (callout 2).

 **Reinstallation tip** Make sure that you reconnect the sensor connector (callout 1) when the assembly is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-726** Remove the inner side plate assembly (4 of 8)

5. Slide the left end of the assembly shaft forward in the mounting hole provided in the chassis.

**Figure 1-727** Remove the inner side plate assembly (5 of 8)



6. Slightly slide the assembly toward the left, and then rotate the right side of the shaft out of the hole in the chassis.

**Figure 1-728** Remove the inner side plate assembly (6 of 8)

7. Continue to move the assembly toward the left until the right side of the shaft is past the chassis.

---

 **CAUTION:** Do not damage the sensor (callout 1) with the end of the shaft (callout 2) when the shaft is rotated out of the chassis.

 **TIP:** The assembly might feel stuck as you remove it. Continue to move the assembly left, and rotate the right end of the shaft out of the chassis. It might take some time to get the shaft out of the chassis.

---

**Figure 1-729** Remove the inner side plate assembly (7 of 8)

8. Carefully remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-730** Remove the inner side plate assembly (8 of 8)

#### Before reinstalling the inner side plate assembly

To avoid damage to the assembly sensors, and to make reinstallation of the assembly easier, move the inner plate on the assembly to the middle of the inner plate assembly. After positioning the inner plate assembly, go to [Reinstall the inner side plate assembly on page 477](#).

**Figure 1-731** Inner plate assembly at the up position

**Figure 1-732** Inner plate assembly at the middle position

**Reinstall the inner side plate assembly**

1. Position the assembly in the chassis by aligning the sheet-metal fingers of the inner plate assembly (callout 1) with the slots (callout 2) in the saddle assembly.

**Figure 1-733** Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (1 of 3)

2. Slide the left end of the assembly shaft into the hole in the chassis.

**Figure 1-734** Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (2 of 3)

3. Push down on the assembly (callout 1) while rotating (callout 2) the right end of the shaft into the chassis.

---

 **CAUTION:** Do not damage the sensor (callout 3) with the end of the shaft (callout 4) when the shaft is rotated into the chassis.

 **TIP:** The assembly might feel stuck as you install it. Continue to move the assembly left, and rotate the right end of the shaft into the chassis. It might take some time to get the shaft into the chassis.

---

**Figure 1-735** Reinstall the inner side plate assembly (3 of 3)

## Guide sensor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the guide sensor assembly

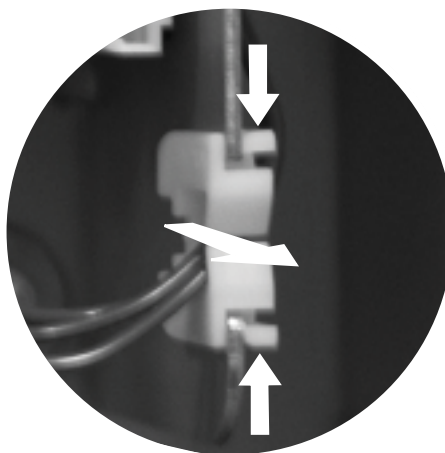
 **NOTE:** This assembly is the folding roller home position sensor.

1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-736** Remove the guide sensor assembly (1 of 4)

2. Release two tabs on the retainer, and the remove the retainer from the sheet-metal bracket.

**Figure 1-737** Remove the guide sensor assembly (2 of 4)



3. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-738** Remove the guide sensor assembly (3 of 4)

4. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-739** Remove the guide sensor assembly (4 of 4)

## Guide motor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the guide motor assembly

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-740** Remove the guide motor assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove two screws.



**TIP:** One screw is hidden behind the wire harnesses along the left side of the sheet-metal mounting bracket. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to hold the wire harnesses out of the way to access this screw.

**Figure 1-741** Remove the guide motor assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-742** Remove the guide motor assembly (3 of 3)



## Saddle motor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the saddle motor assembly (SS and BM)

1. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-743** Remove the saddle motor assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove three screws.

**Figure 1-744** Remove the saddle motor assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the motor.

---

 **CAUTION:** The drive belt behind the motor is not captive. Do not lose the belt when the motor is removed.

---

**Figure 1-745** Remove the saddle motor assembly (3 of 3)

## Saddle feed motor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the saddle feed assembly

1. Before beginning, take note of how the drive belt is routed over the gears and belt-tension arm. The belt will not be tensioned correctly if the belt is not routed properly when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-746** Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (1 of 6)

2. Push down on the belt tension arm (callout 1), and then remove the timing belt from the motor drive gear.



---

**IMPORTANT:** Take note of how the belt is routed over the gears and belt-tension arm before you disengage the belt.

---

**Figure 1-747** Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (2 of 6)

3. Remove one plastic wire cable tie.



---

**CAUTION:** Do not damage the wire harnesses when this cable tie is removed.

---

Do not attempt to remove the connector at the motor end of the wire harness. This wire harness is soldered to the motor and cannot be removed.

---

**Figure 1-748** Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (3 of 6)

4. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-749** Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (4 of 6)

5. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-750** Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (5 of 6)

6. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-751** Remove the saddle feed motor assembly (6 of 6)

## Folding-motor mount assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).

 **NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly \(remove\) on page 341](#).

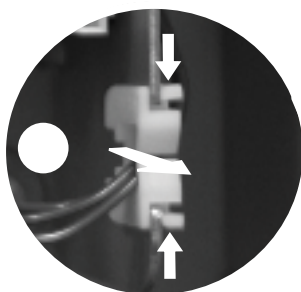
 **NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See [Right cover assembly \(BM PCA\) on page 470](#).

### Remove the motor mount assembly

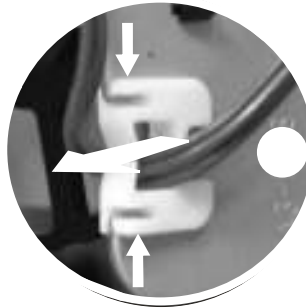
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs on one retainer (callout 2), remove the retainer from the sheet-metal bracket, and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 3).

**Figure 1-752** Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (1 of 6)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (one each side; callout 2) of two retainers (callout 3), and then remove the retainers from the sheet-metal bracket.

**Figure 1-753** Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (2 of 6)



3. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from two retainers (callout 2).

 **TIP:** One of the retainers is on the back side of the sheet-metal support bracket. Use a long-barrel flat blade screw driver to release a tab on the retainer to open it

When the assembly is reinstalled, you might have to disconnect connectors on the controller PCA, or release wire harnesses from other retainers in order to gain enough slack in the wire harnesses to close the retainer latch.

**Figure 1-754** Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (3 of 6)



4. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-755** Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (4 of 6)

5. Remove three screws.

**Figure 1-756** Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (5 of 6)

6. Remove the assembly.

 **CAUTION:** There are two keyed bushings on the gear shafts that fit into holes on the chassis (see [Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly on page 493](#)). The bushings are not captive. Do not lose them when the assembly is removed.

---

**Figure 1-757** Remove the folding-motor mount assembly (6 of 6)

### Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly

Make sure that the two brass bushings (callout 1) are installed on the gear shafts, and that the keyed portion of the bushings are aligned with the associated large slots in the chassis mounting holes (callout 2). The sheet-metal mounting bracket must be tight up against the chassis before you install the mounting screws.

**Figure 1-758** Reinstall the folding-motor mount assembly



## Delivery switch mount assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).

---

 **NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

---

- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly \(remove\) on page 341](#).

---

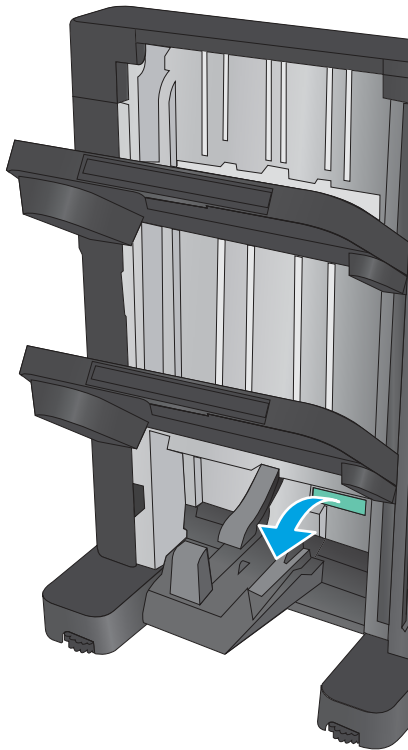
 **NOTE:** This cover only needs to be moved out of the way.

---

### Remove the delivery switch mount assembly

1. Open the lower booklet jam access door.

**Figure 1-759** Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (1 of 4)



2. Release the wire harnesses from two retainers (callout 1), and then disconnect two inline connectors (callout 2).



---

**TIP:** Releasing the wire harnesses from the retainers first, makes it easier to disconnect the connectors.

---

**Figure 1-760** Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (2 of 4)

3. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-761** Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (3 of 4)

4. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-762** Remove the delivery switch mount assembly (4 of 4)

## Saddle stapler assembly

Before proceeding, do the following:

- Move the inner upper cover out of the way. See [Inner upper cover assembly on page 333](#).
- Move the inner lower cover out of the way. See [Inner lower cover assembly \(remove\) on page 341](#).

### Remove the saddle stapler assembly

1. Remove one e-ring.

**Figure 1-763** Remove the saddle stapler assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove one shaft (callout 1), and then remove the white plastic wheel (callout 2).



**Reinstallation tip** The wheel is asymmetric. The small diameter end of the wheel should face towards the saddle stapler assembly when it is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-764** Remove the saddle stapler assembly (2 of 3)

3. Pull the assembly straight out of the saddle assembly to remove it.



**Reinstallation tip** If you are installing a replacement assembly, remove the staple cartridges from the discarded saddle stapler assembly, and then install them in the replacement assembly.

---

**Figure 1-765** Remove the saddle stapler assembly (3 of 3)



## Lower left guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- **Booklet maker accessory only:** Saddle output bin assembly. See [Saddle output bin assembly on page 468](#).

### Remove the lower left guide assembly

1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-766** Remove the lower left guide assembly (1 of 3)

2. Release two tabs, and then remove the cover.

**Figure 1-767** Remove the lower left guide assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-768** Remove the lower left guide assembly (3 of 3)

## Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).

### Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly

1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-769** Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (1 of 3)

2. Slide the cover up to release two tabs.

**Figure 1-770** Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-771** Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly (3 of 3)

## Saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cove assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Stack wall upper cover assembly. See [Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide assembly on page 375](#).
- Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies. See [Stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies on page 397](#).
- Height wall center assembly. See [Height wall assembly on page 401](#).

### Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly

1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-772** Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (1 of 3)

2. Slide the cover up to release two tabs.

**Figure 1-773** Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-774** Remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear assembly (3 of 3)

## Saddle guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See [Right cover assembly \(BM PCA\) on page 470](#).



**NOTE:** Removing this cover is optional. It might make it easier to remove the saddle guide assembly if this cover removed first.

- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 459](#).
- Paper pass assembly. See [Paper pass assembly on page 462](#).

### Remove the saddle guide assembly

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal support bracket (callout 2).

**Figure 1-775** Remove the saddle guide assembly (1 of 5)

2. Release the lever, and then open the saddle guide.

**Figure 1-776** Remove the saddle guide assembly (2 of 5)





3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the hinge pin retainer (callout 2).



**TIP:** Slightly move the saddle guide assembly back and forth to make removing the hinge pin retainer easier.

---

**Figure 1-777** Remove the saddle guide assembly (3 of 5)

4. Slightly rotate the left side of the assembly away from the saddle assembly (callout 1), and then slide it to the left (callout 2).



**NOTE:** There is a pin on the left side of the assembly that must clear the accessory chassis.

---

**Figure 1-778** Remove the saddle guide assembly (4 of 5)

5. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-779** Remove the saddle guide assembly (5 of 5)

### Reinstall the saddle guide assembly

1. Slide the saddle stapler out of the accessory to avoid damage to the mylar strips on the saddle guide assembly when it is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-780** Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (1 of 4)

2. When you reinstall the assembly, do not damage the mylar strips (callout 1) on the assembly.

**Figure 1-781** Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (2 of 4)

3. Make sure the shaft-end edge of the assembly, and the hinge-pin edge of the assembly, are behind the sheet-metal stoppers on the chassis.

**Figure 1-782** Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (3 of 4)

4. Install the hinge pin retainer (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure the assembly.



---

**TIP:** Slightly move the saddle guide assembly back and forth to make installing the hinge pin retainer easier.

---

**Figure 1-783** Reinstall the saddle guide assembly (4 of 4)

## Saddle feed assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

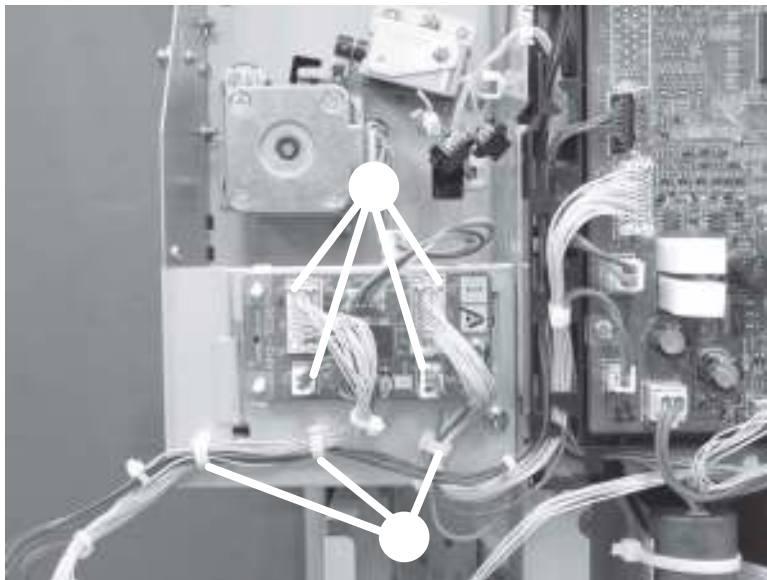
- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See .
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).

### Remove the saddle feed assembly

1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 2).

 **TIP:** It might be easier to disconnect the connectors if you first release the wire harnesses from the retainers.

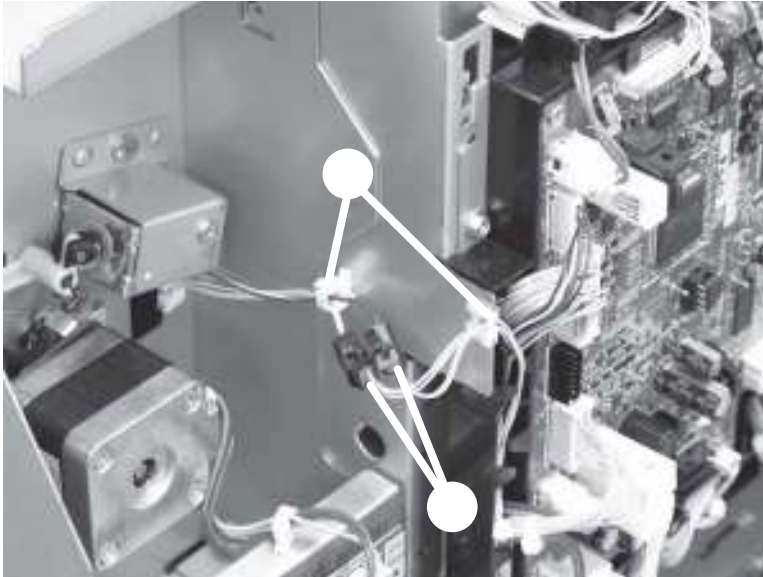
**Figure 1-784** Remove the saddle feed assembly (1 of 5)



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from two retainers (callout 2).

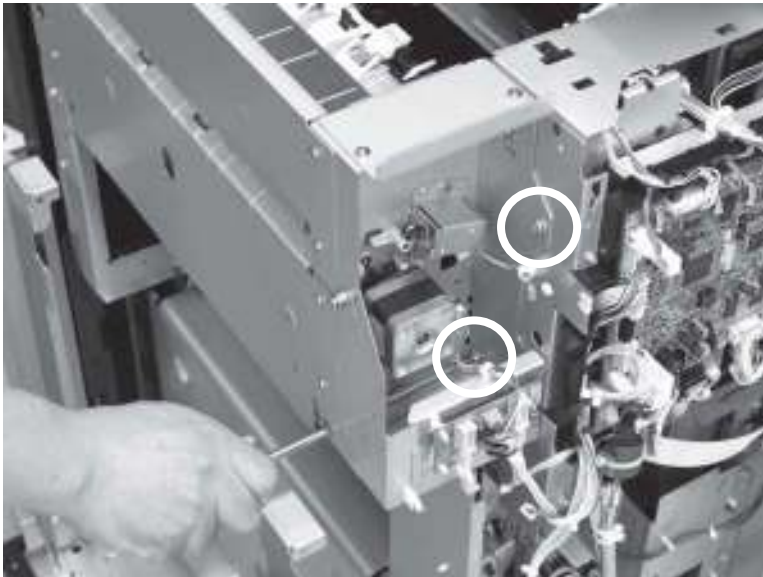
 **TIP:** It might be easier to disconnect the connectors if you first release the wire harnesses from the retainers.

**Figure 1-785** Remove the saddle feed assembly (2 of 5)



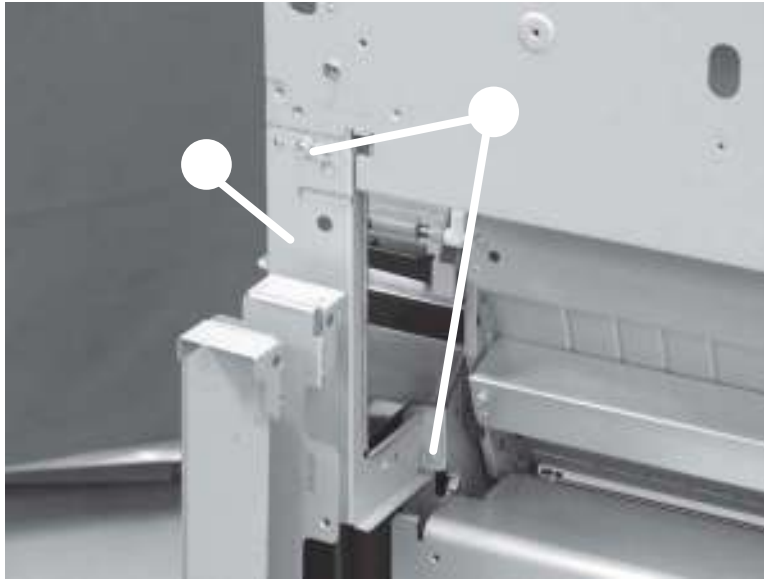
3. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-786** Remove the saddle feed assembly (3 of 5)



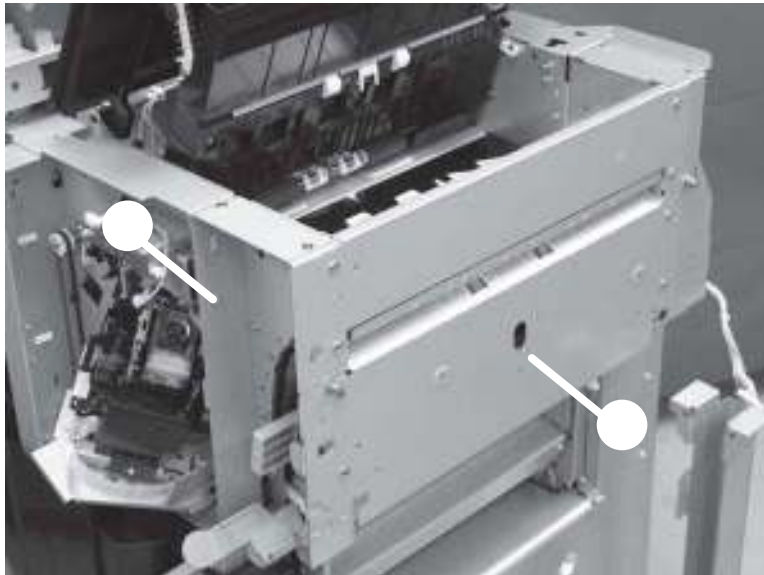
4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal bracket (callout 2).

**Figure 1-787** Remove the saddle feed assembly (4 of 5)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), grasp the top of the saddle feed assembly (callout 2), and then lift it up to remove it.

**Figure 1-788** Remove the saddle feed assembly (5 of 5)



## Saddle assembly



**NOTE:** The saddle assembly is not an orderable service part. This removal procedure is for reference only. HP does not recommend removing the saddle assembly at this time.

### Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 459](#).
- Saddle output bin assembly. See [Saddle output bin assembly on page 468](#).
- Paper pass assembly. See [Paper pass assembly on page 462](#).
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See [Right cover assembly \(BM PCA\) on page 470](#).
- Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly. See [Saddle delivery inner cover, front assembly on page 501](#).



## Remove the saddle assembly

1. Release the wire harnesses from the two retainers.

**Figure 1-789** Remove the saddle assembly (1 of 15)

2. Disconnect two in-line connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from one retainer (callout 2).

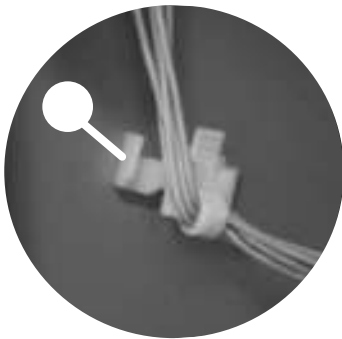
**Figure 1-790** Remove the saddle assembly (2 of 15)

3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1) on the main controller PCA, and then release the wire harness from the guide (callout 2).

**Figure 1-791** Remove the saddle assembly (3 of 15)

4. Release one tab (callout 1; one tab on each retainer) on two retainers to release them from the sheet-metal support bracket.

**Figure 1-792** Remove the saddle assembly (4 of 15)



5. Remove one spring on the jam access locking arm. Set the spring aside.

---

 **CAUTION:** The spring is not captive. Do not lose the spring when releasing it.

 **Reinstallation tip** Do not forget to reinstall this spring when the assembly is reinstalled, or a replacement assembly is installed.

---

**Figure 1-793** Remove the saddle assembly (5 of 15)

6. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-794** Remove the saddle assembly (6 of 15)

7. Remove the sheet-metal support post. Repeat the previous step and this step for the opposite post.



---

**Reinstallation tip** When you reinstall the support posts, Make sure that the edges with the slotted tabs (callout 1) are positioned toward the saddle assembly. If the tabs are not correctly positioned, you will not be able to correctly install the accessory right cover.

---

**Figure 1-795** Remove the saddle assembly (7 of 15)

8. Remove two screws.

**Figure 1-796** Remove the saddle assembly (8 of 15)

9. Remove one screws.



---

**NOTE:** If you have not already removed the sheet-metal support post (callout 1), remove it now. See [Figure 1-794 Remove the saddle assembly \(6 of 15\) on page 517](#) and [Figure 1-795 Remove the saddle assembly \(7 of 15\) on page 518](#).

---

**Figure 1-797** Remove the saddle assembly (9 of 15)

10. Remove the sheet metal bracket.

**Figure 1-798** Remove the saddle assembly (10 of 15)

11. Remove two screws.



---

**NOTE:** These two screws are located on the common controller PCA side of the accessory.

---

**Figure 1-799** Remove the saddle assembly (11 of 15)

12. Open the jam access plate, and then remove two screws.

**Figure 1-800** Remove the saddle assembly (12 of 15)

13. Remove one screw.



---

**NOTE:** These two screws are located on the front side of the accessory.

---

**Figure 1-801** Remove the saddle assembly (13 of 15)

14. Slightly slide the saddle assembly away from the stack bin side of the accessory to release it.

**Figure 1-802** Remove the saddle assembly (14 of 15)

15. Carefully rotate the top of the assembly away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift the assembly up and out of the accessory (callout 2).

---

 **CAUTION:** The assembly is heavy.

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not grasp the assembly along the top edge (callout 3). Doing so can damage the mylar strip along the edge and cause paper jam problems when the assembly is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-803** Remove the saddle assembly (15 of 15)



## Reinstall the saddle assembly

Make sure that the two hooks on the bottom of the assembly (one shown) are correctly engaged with the chassis, and that the tabs on the rear saddle inner cover are in the slots in the chassis.



**IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the assembly sheet-metal brackets that contact the accessory chassis are flush against the chassis to prevent paper jam problems after the assembly is reinstalled.

Make sure that the drive belts are correctly installed and have not been dislodged when handling the assembly.

---

**Figure 1-804** Reinstall the saddle assembly

## Upper delivery guide assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 459](#).
- Paper pass assembly. See [Paper pass assembly on page 462](#).
- Saddle output bin assembly. See [Saddle output bin assembly on page 468](#).

### Remove the upper delivery guide assembly

1. Open the saddle paper delivery assembly door.

**Figure 1-805** Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (1 of 3)

2. Remove four screws.



**NOTE:** One screw is a ground wire connection. Make sure that you reconnect the ground wire when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-806** Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (2 of 3)

3. Remove the assembly.

**Figure 1-807** Remove the upper delivery guide assembly (3 of 3)

## Saddle paper delivery assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 459](#).
- Paper pass assembly. See [Paper pass assembly on page 462](#).
- Saddle output bin assembly. See [Saddle output bin assembly on page 468](#).

### Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly

1. At the output side of the accessory, remove one screw.

**Figure 1-808** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (1 of 8)

2. Release two tabs.

**Figure 1-809** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (2 of 8)

3. Remove the left lower guide.

**Figure 1-810** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (3 of 8)

4. Disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-811** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (4 of 8)

5. Open the upper delivery assembly door.

**Figure 1-812** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (5 of 8)

6. At the bottom lower-right corner of the upper delivery assembly door, locate and then rotate the locking pin to the upright position.

**Figure 1-813** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (6 of 8)

7. Slide the locking pin to the left to remove it.

**Figure 1-814** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (7 of 8)

8. Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly.

**Figure 1-815** Remove the saddle paper delivery assembly (8 of 8)



## Saddle rear end sensor assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Front door. See [Front door on page 330](#).
- Inner upper cover assembly. See [Inner upper cover assembly \(remove\) on page 334](#).
- Inner lower cover assembly. See [Inner lower cover assembly on page 339](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 459](#).
- Paper pass assembly. See [Paper pass assembly on page 462](#).
- Right cover assembly (BM PCA). See [Right cover assembly \(BM PCA\) on page 470](#).
- Saddle guide assembly. See [Saddle guide assembly on page 505](#).

### Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly

1. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-816** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (1 of 10)

2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then move the sheet-metal plate (callout 2) out of the way.

---

 **CAUTION:** The sheet-metal plate (callout 2) is still attached to the accessory by a wire harness and two retainers. Do not attempt to completely remove the sheet-metal plate.

---

**Figure 1-817** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (2 of 10)

3. At the drive belt side of the accessory, remove one screw (callout 1), and then move the lower-deflector solenoid (callout 2) out of the way.

---

 **CAUTION:** The solenoid (callout 2) is still attached to the accessory by one wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the solenoid.

---

 **NOTE:** The solenoid plunger (callout 3) slides out of the solenoid as it is removed.

---

**Figure 1-818** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (3 of 10)

4. Remove one spring (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2) on the white-plastic retainer, and then slide the retainer and lower-deflector solenoid plunger (callout 3) off of the deflector shaft.

Repeat the previous step and this step to remove the upper-deflector solenoid, spring, retainer, and plunger assemblies.



**NOTE:** The upper-deflector solenoid is located above, and to the left of, the lower-deflector solenoid assembly.

**Figure 1-819** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (4 of 10)



5. At the output side of the accessory, carefully flex the middle of the lower-deflector (callout 1) to release the left end of the deflector shaft from the hole in the chassis (callout 2).



**WARNING!** The deflector shafts (left end and right end of the deflector) are fragile. Do not break either of the deflector shafts when removing the deflector.

**Figure 1-820** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (5 of 10)



6. Slide the deflector to the left to release the right end deflector shaft, and then remove the lower deflector.

Repeat the previous step and this step to remove the upper-deflector.

---

 **Reinstallation tip** The lower and upper deflector shafts are not identical. Make sure that you install the correct deflector when they are reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-821** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (6 of 10)

7. Remove one screw.

**Figure 1-822** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (7 of 10)

8. Lift up on the sensor assembly to release it from the saddle assembly chassis.

 **CAUTION:** The sensor assembly is still attached to the accessory by one wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the sensor assembly.

---

**Figure 1-823** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (8 of 10)



9. Turn the assembly over, and then disconnect one connector.

**Figure 1-824** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (9 of 10)

10. Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly.

**Figure 1-825** Remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (10 of 10)

## Stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker with hole punch accessories

The assemblies described in this section are unique to the stapler/stacker (SS) or stapler/stacker with hole punch (SSHP) finishing accessory. For information about removing and replacing assemblies that are common to all of the finishing accessories, see [Shared finishing accessory assemblies on page 307](#).

- [Punch controller PCA assembly](#)
- [Dust collector assembly](#)
- [Punch inner cover assembly](#)
- [Punch top cover](#)
- [Punch hole assembly](#)

## Punch controller PCA assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the punch controller PCA assembly



**CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

Disconnect the eight connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA.



**TIP:** Releasing the wire harnesses from the retainers might make it easier to disconnect some of the connectors on the PCA.

**Figure 1-826** Remove the punch controller PCA assembly



## Dust collector assembly

Pull the dust collector straight out of the punch assembly to remove it.

**Figure 1-827** Remove the dust collector assembly

## Punch inner cover assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Dust collector assembly. See [Dust collector assembly on page 539](#).

### Remove the punch inner cover assembly

1. Remove three screws.



**NOTE:** These screws have a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use these screws when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-828** Remove the punch inner cover assembly (1 of 2)

2. Remove the cover.

**Figure 1-829** Remove the punch inner cover assembly (2 of 2)

## Punch top cover

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Remove only the rear cover on page 351](#).

### Remove the punch top cover

1. Remove one screw.



**NOTE:** This screw has a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use this screw when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-830** Remove the punch top cover (1 of 6)

2. Open the front door.

**Figure 1-831** Remove the punch top cover (2 of 6)

3. Remove two screws.

---

 **NOTE:** These screws have a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use these screws when the assembly is reinstalled.

 **Reinstallation tip** The mounting holes for these two screws are slotted. Use these screws to adjust the position of the cover when it is reinstalled if it strikes the punch assembly or does not align correctly with the accessory covers.

---

**Figure 1-832** Remove the punch top cover (3 of 6)

4. Slightly raise the front edge of the cover.

**Figure 1-833** Remove the punch top cover (4 of 6)

5. Slide the cover towards the rear of the accessory to release it.

**Figure 1-834** Remove the punch top cover (5 of 6)

6. Rotate the cover up and off of the accessory to remove it.

**Figure 1-835** Remove the punch top cover (6 of 6)

## Punch hole assembly

Before proceeding, remove the following assemblies:

- Right cover assembly. See [Right cover assembly on page 311](#).
- Pre-reverse cover assembly. See [Pre-reverse cover assembly on page 312](#).
- Rear reverse cover assembly. See [Rear reverse cover assembly on page 314](#).
- Upper reverse cover assembly. See [Upper reverse cover assembly on page 316](#).
- Bin cable guide cover. See [Bin cable guide cover on page 317](#).
- Open/closed stepped cover assembly. See [Open/closed stepped cover assembly on page 321](#).
- Upper stepped cover assembly. See [Upper stepped cover assembly on page 322](#).
- Lower stepped cover assembly. See [Lower stepped cover assembly on page 324](#).
- Rear cover assembly. See [Rear cover assembly on page 349](#).
- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 459](#).
- Dust collector assembly. See [Dust collector assembly on page 539](#).
- Punch inner cover assembly. See [Punch inner cover assembly on page 540](#).
- Punch top cover. See [Punch top cover on page 541](#).

### Remove the punch hole assembly

1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) on the main controller PCA, and then release the wire harnesses from one retainer (callout 2).

**Figure 1-836** Remove the punch hole assembly (1 of 5)

2. Release the wire harness from three retainers.

**Figure 1-837** Remove the punch hole assembly (2 of 5)

3. Remove one screw.



---

**NOTE:** This screw has a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use this screw when the assembly is reinstalled.

---

**Figure 1-838** Remove the punch hole assembly (3 of 5)



4. Remove one screw.



**NOTE:** This screw has a larger head than other screws used in the accessory. Make sure that you use this screw when the assembly is reinstalled.

**Figure 1-839** Remove the punch hole assembly (4 of 5)

5. Lift the assembly up to release it, and then remove the assembly.



**Reinstallation tip** If you are installing a replacement assembly, remove the punch controller PCA, and then install it on the replacement punch hole assembly. See [Punch controller PCA assembly on page 538](#).

**Figure 1-840** Remove the punch hole assembly (5 of 5)



## Reinstall the punch hole assembly

Punch adjustment is required when the punch holes are misaligned. If necessary, use the procedure below to adjust the position of punched holes after reinstalling, or replacing, the punch hole assembly.

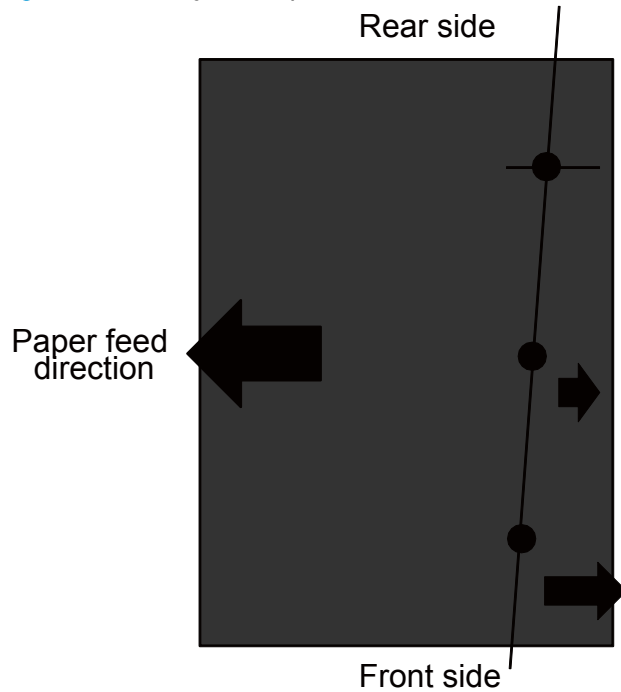
## Adjust the punch hole location

Adjust the screw on the puncher assembly to correct the position of punch holes.

1. Identify in which direction the punched hole adjustment is required.

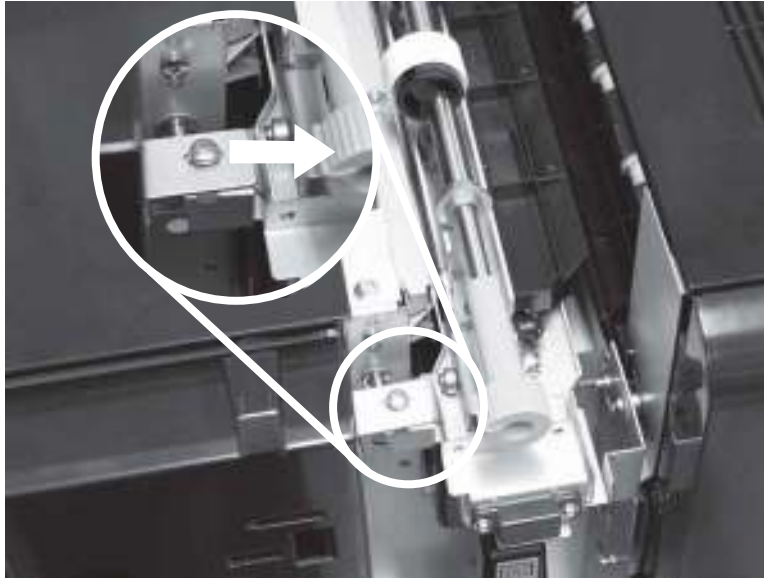
The figure below shows the punched hole misaligned to the left.

**Figure 1-841** Adjust the punch hole location



2. Loosen one screw, and then, move the punch assembly to the right.  
Repeat this step for any other punch assemblies that require adjustment.

**Figure 1-842** Adjust the punch hole location





---

## 2 Parts and diagrams

- [Order parts by authorized service providers](#)
- [How to use the parts lists and diagrams](#)
- [Assembly locations](#)
- [Document feeder and scanner assemblies \(M830\)](#)
- [Document feeder assemblies \(M830\)](#)
- [Scanner assemblies \(M830\)](#)
- [Covers](#)
- [Internal assemblies](#)
- [3500-sheet paper feeder \(HCI\)](#)
- [Stapler stacker/booklet maker](#)
- [Alphabetical parts list](#)
- [Numerical parts list](#)

# Order parts by authorized service providers

## Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Table 2-1 Order parts, accessories, and supplies

|                                            |                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Order supplies and paper                   | <a href="http://www.hp.com/go/suresupply">www.hp.com/go/suresupply</a>                                             |
| Order genuine HP parts or accessories      | <a href="http://www.hp.com/buy/parts">www.hp.com/buy/parts</a>                                                     |
| Order through service or support providers | Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.                                                              |
| Order using HP software                    | For information about using the HP software to order parts, accessories, and supplies, see the product user guide. |

## Related documentation and software

Table 2-2 Related documentation and software

| Item                                                                    | Description             | Part number                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M806 User Guide</i>                           | Product user guide      | CZ244-90904 (M806)         |
| <i>HP LaserJet Enterprise Flow MFP M830 User Guide</i>                  |                         | CF367-90904 (M830)         |
| <i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M806/Flow MFP M830 Repair Manual</i>          | English service manuals | CZ### #####<br>CZ### ##### |
| <i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M806/Flow MFP M830 Troubleshooting Manual</i> |                         |                            |

## Supplies part numbers

**Table 2-3 Supplies part numbers**

| Item                         | Description           | Part number           |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| HP LaserJet toner cartridges | Black toner cartridge | CF325X (new)          |
|                              |                       | CF325-67901 (service) |

## Customer self-repair parts

The following customer self-repair parts are available for the product.

Each kit includes parts and installation instructions. The customer self repair (CSR) level indicates the expected difficulty the customer will experience when replacing this part:

- **A:** Easy
- **B:** Difficult

**Table 2-4 Customer self-repair parts**

| Item                                                  | Description                        | CSR level | Part number |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------|-------------|
| Hard disk drive replacement kit                       | • Hard Disk, 320GB                 | B         | CF367-67913 |
|                                                       | • Hard disk cradle                 |           |             |
| FIPS 140 HDD for US Government Replacement Kit (M806) | • FIPS 140 HDD for U.S. Government | B         | CZ244-67906 |
|                                                       | • Hard disk cradle                 |           |             |
| Solid state memory kit (M806)                         | • Solid state module, 8GB          | B         | CZ244-67905 |
|                                                       | • SSM twist lock                   |           |             |
| 1GB DIMM replacement kit (M830)                       | IC DDR2-SDRAM 128MX64 200 SO-DIMM  | B         | CF367-67917 |
| 512MB DIMM Kit (M806)                                 | 512MB DIMM                         | B         | CF306-67901 |
| 1GB DIMM Kit (M830)                                   | 1GB DIMM                           | B         | CF367-67917 |
| Formatter kit (M830)                                  | • Formatter PCA assembly           | B         | CF367-67915 |
|                                                       | • M3 Screws                        |           |             |
|                                                       | • Formatter cage assembly          |           |             |
|                                                       | • Thumbscrew                       |           |             |
| Formatter kit (M806)                                  | • Formatter PCA assembly           | B         | CZ244-67901 |
|                                                       | • M3 Screws                        |           |             |
|                                                       | • Formatter cage assembly          |           |             |
|                                                       | • Thumbscrew                       |           |             |

**Table 2-4 Customer self-repair parts (continued)**

| Item                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                    | CSR level | Part number                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------------------|
| Fax-card replacement kit (M830)                                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fax card PCA</li> <li>Fax cable</li> </ul>                                                                              | A         | CF367-67911                              |
| Fuser kit                                                                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fuser</li> <li>Recycling instructions</li> </ul>                                                                        |           | CF367-67905 (110V)<br>CF367-67906 (220V) |
| Fuser maintenance kit                                                                             | Fuser                                                                                                                                                          | A         | C2H67-67901 (110V)<br>C2H57-67901 (220V) |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Make sure that you use the correct part number for the rated voltage of the product. |                                                                                                                                                                |           |                                          |
| HCI kit                                                                                           | HCI                                                                                                                                                            |           | C3F79-67901                              |
| HCI right tray kit                                                                                | Tray assembly, right                                                                                                                                           | A         | CZ244-67903                              |
| HCI left tray kit                                                                                 | Tray assembly, left                                                                                                                                            | A         | CZ244-67904                              |
| Stapler/stacker Kit                                                                               | Stapler/stacker                                                                                                                                                | A         | CZ994-67901                              |
| Stapler/stacker 2/3 hole punch kit                                                                | Stapler/stacker 2/3 hole puncher                                                                                                                               |           | CZ995-67901                              |
| Stapler/stacker 2/4 hole punch kit                                                                | Stapler/stacker 2/4 hole puncher                                                                                                                               |           | CZ996-67901                              |
| Booklet maker kit                                                                                 | Booklet maker                                                                                                                                                  |           | CZ285-67901                              |
| Staple-cartridge refill kit                                                                       | Staple cartridge refill                                                                                                                                        | A         | C8085-60541<br>C8091A                    |
| Tray 1 roller kit                                                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tray 1 pickup roller</li> <li>Tray 1 feed roller</li> </ul>                                                             | A         | CF367-67904                              |
| Tray 2-X roller kit                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Feed roller (engine)</li> <li>Pickup roller (engine)</li> <li>Feed roller (HCI)</li> <li>Pickup roller (HCI)</li> </ul> | A         | CF367-67903                              |
| ADF roller maintenance kit (M830)                                                                 | ADF roller                                                                                                                                                     | A         | C1P70-67901                              |
| Black toner cartridge kit                                                                         | Black toner cartridge                                                                                                                                          | A         | CF325-67901                              |
| 2000-staple cartridge kit (booklet maker)                                                         | 2000-staple cartridge                                                                                                                                          | A         | CF367-67914                              |
| USB wireless print server kit                                                                     | Wireless print server                                                                                                                                          | A         | J8026-61001                              |
| NFC accessory kit                                                                                 | NFC accessory                                                                                                                                                  |           | J8029-61001                              |
| Transfer roller kit                                                                               | Transfer roller                                                                                                                                                | A         | CF367-67907                              |
| White backing A/3 kit (M830)                                                                      | White ADF Backing                                                                                                                                              | A         | 5851-5864                                |
| ADF separation pad spring kit (M830)                                                              | Spring, compression                                                                                                                                            | B         | 5851-5855                                |



**Table 2-4 Customer self-repair parts (continued)**

| Item                                               | Description                           | CSR level | Part number                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Backside background selector kit (M830)            | Background selector for backside scan | A         | 5851-5861                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Control-panel assembly kit (M806)                  | Control panel assembly                | A         | 5851-5950                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Control-panel assembly kit (without keyboard-M830) | Control panel assembly                | A         | 5851-5952                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| US English keyboard kit (M830)                     |                                       | A         | 5851-5380                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| UK English keyboard kit (M830)                     |                                       | A         | 5851-5008                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Keyboard overlay kit (M830)                        | Keyboard overlay                      | A         | 5851-6019 (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd)<br>5851-6020 (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd)<br>5851-6021 (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA: UK Kybd)<br>5851-6022 (ZHTW, ZHCN)<br>5851-6023 (ES, PT)<br>5851-6024 (JA-KG, JA-KT) |
| Duplexing assembly kit                             | Duplexing assembly                    | A         | CZ244-00028                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## Service replacement parts

**Table 2-5 Service replacement parts**

| Item                                   | Description                                                                                                                                            | Part number                              |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Front door assembly kit                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Front door assembly</li> <li>HP logo jewel (35mm, round, polished)</li> <li>Product label/name plate</li> </ul> | CF367-67909                              |
| Toner vacuum service kit               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Toner vacuum</li> <li>Instructions for use</li> </ul>                                                           | CC468-69002 (110V)<br>CC468-69003 (220V) |
| ADF whole unit kit (M830)              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ADF whole unit</li> <li>White backing A3 kit</li> </ul>                                                         | CF367-67920                              |
| Image scanner A3 whole unit kit (M830) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Image scanner A3 whole unit</li> <li>White backing A3 kit</li> </ul>                                            | CF367-67919                              |
| Sanner control board kit (M830)        | SCB assembly                                                                                                                                           | CF367-60002                              |
| A3 ADF mylar kit (M830)                | Mylar                                                                                                                                                  | 5851-5857                                |

**Table 2-5 Service replacement parts (continued)**

| Item                                        | Description                                                                                                                       | Part number |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| E-ring, pin, and bushing kit                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>E-ring</li> <li>E-ring for clutch</li> <li>Washer</li> <li>Pin</li> <li>Bushing</li> </ul> | 5851-6142   |
| Stapler/stacker 2/3 hole punch assembly kit | Stapler/stacker 2/3 punch hole puncher assembly                                                                                   | CF367-67922 |
| Stapler/stacker 2/4 hole punch assembly kit | Stapler/stacker 2/4 punch hole puncher assembly                                                                                   | CF367-67923 |

## Accessories

| Item                                               | Description                                                                                              | Part number |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker                        | Stapler/stacker finishing accessory                                                                      | CZ994A      |
| HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker with 2/3 hole punch    | Stapler/stacker with hole punch finishing accessory for countries/regions that use imperial measurements | CZ995A      |
| HP LaserJet Stapler/Stacker with 2/4 hole punch    | Stapler/stacker with hole punch finishing accessory for countries/regions that use metric measurements   | CZ996A      |
| HP LaserJet Booklet Maker/Finisher                 | Booklet maker finishing accessory                                                                        | CZ285A      |
| HP Jetdirect ew2500 Wireless Print Server          | USB wireless print server                                                                                | J8026A      |
| HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC & Wireless Direct Accessory | Wireless direct accessory for “touch” printing from mobile devices                                       | J8029A      |

## How to use the parts lists and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the product and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

 **CAUTION:** Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical components, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the description column. Doing so will ensure that the part number selected is for the correct model.

 **NOTE:** In this manual, the abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

# Assembly locations

## Base product (no optional trays or accessories)

Figure 2-1 M830 product integrated scanner assembly (ISA)

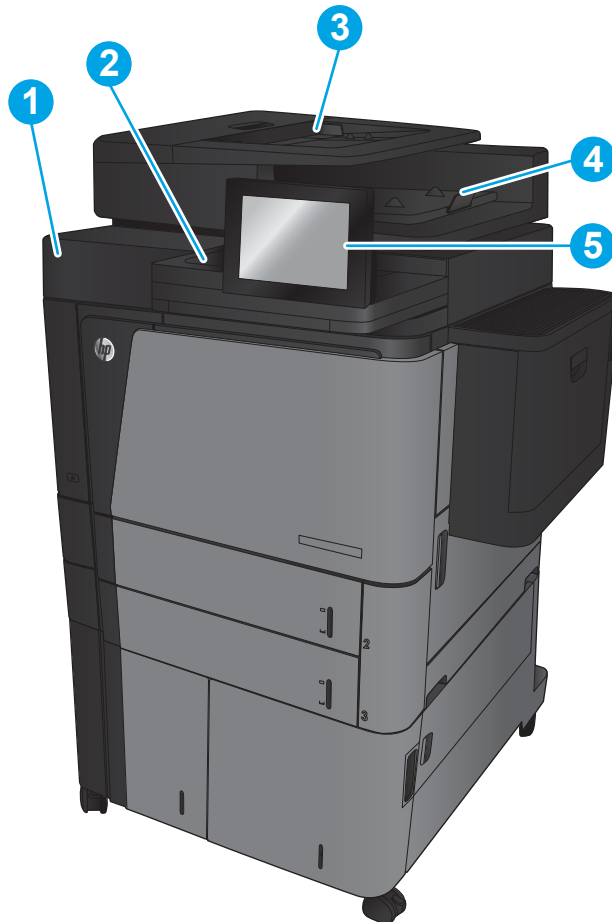


Table 2-6 M830 product integrated scanner assembly (ISA)

| Item | Description                             | Item | Description            |
|------|-----------------------------------------|------|------------------------|
| 1    | Scanner assembly                        | 4    | ADF output bin         |
| 2    | Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover | 5    | Control-panel assembly |
| 3    | Automatic document feeder (ADF)         |      |                        |

Figure 2-2 Base product (no optional trays or accessories)

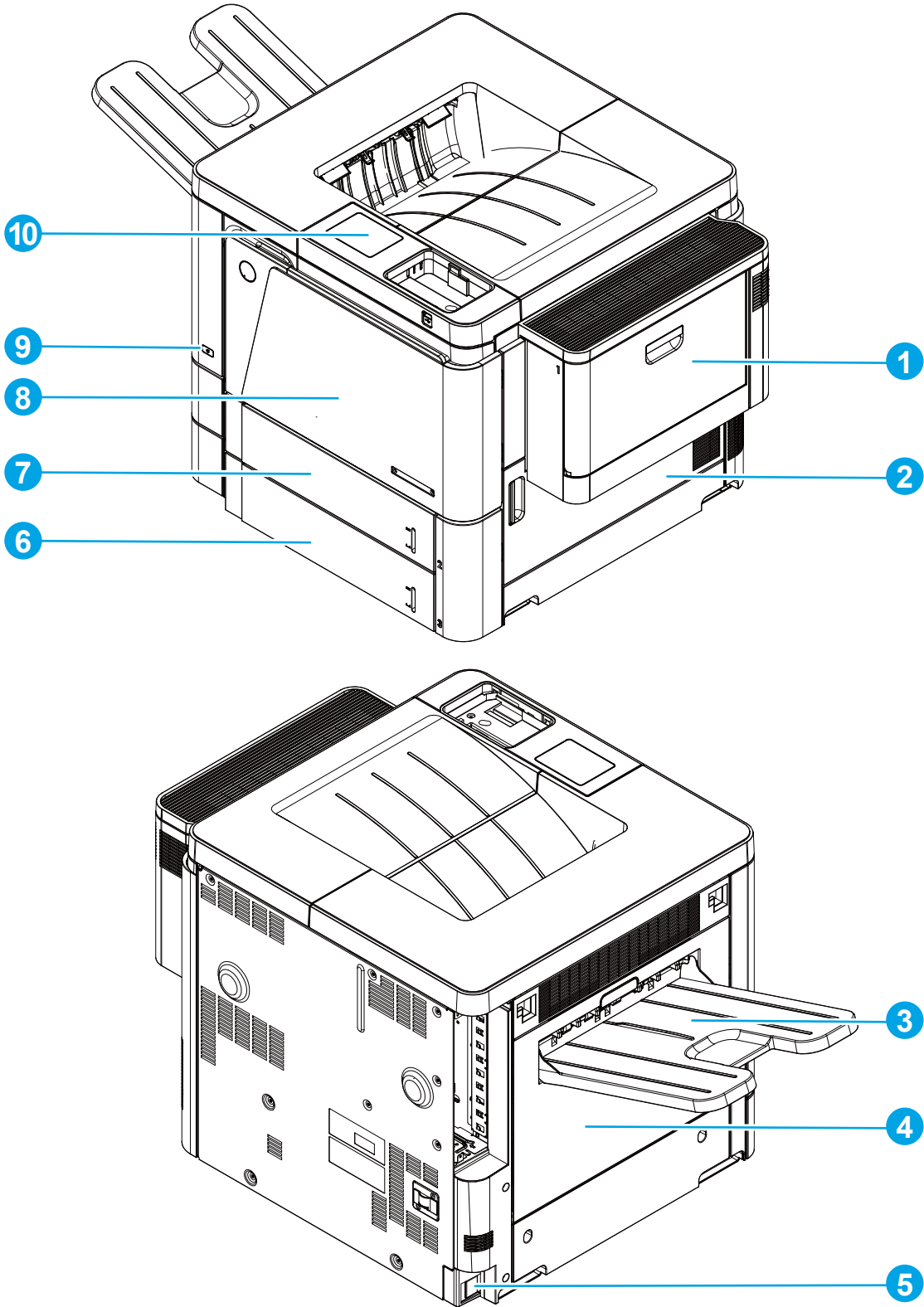


Table 2-7 Base product (no optional trays or accessories)

| Item | Description       | Item | Description |
|------|-------------------|------|-------------|
| 1    | Multipurpose tray | 6    | Cassette 2  |

**Table 2-7** Base product (no optional trays or accessories) (continued)

| Item                                                        | Description      | Item | Description                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 2                                                           | Right door       | 7    | Cassette 1                                          |
| 3                                                           | Face-up tray     | 8    | Front door                                          |
| 4                                                           | Left door        | 9    | Power switch                                        |
| 5                                                           | Power receptacle | 10   | Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only) |
| <b>NOTE:</b> This cover is on the ISA for the M830 product. |                  |      |                                                     |

# Document feeder and scanner (M830)

Figure 2-3 Document feeder and scanner (M830)

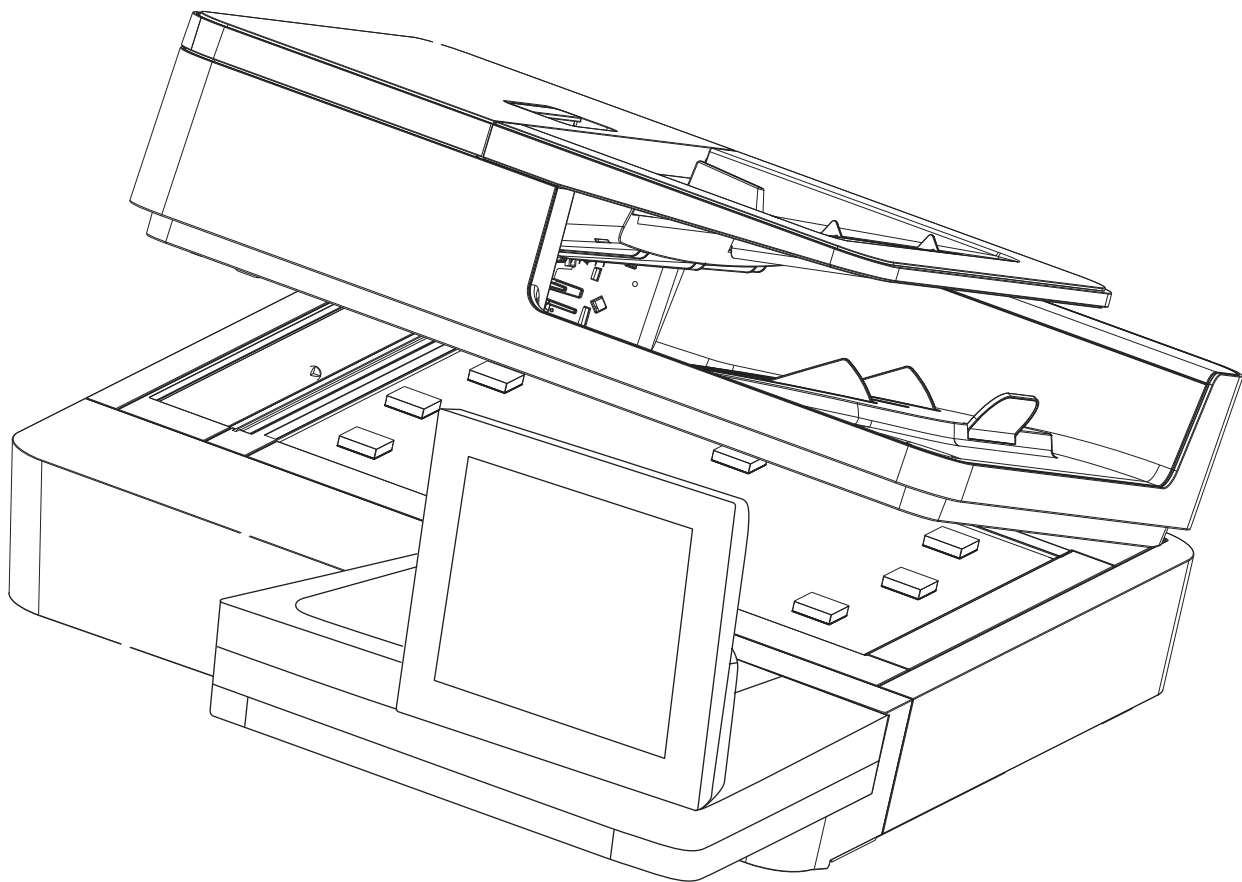


Table 2-8 Document feeder and scanner (M830)

| Item | Description              |
|------|--------------------------|
| 1    | Document feeder assembly |
| 2    | Scanner assembly         |

# High capacity input (HCI) feeder

Figure 2-4 High capacity input (HCI) feeder covers

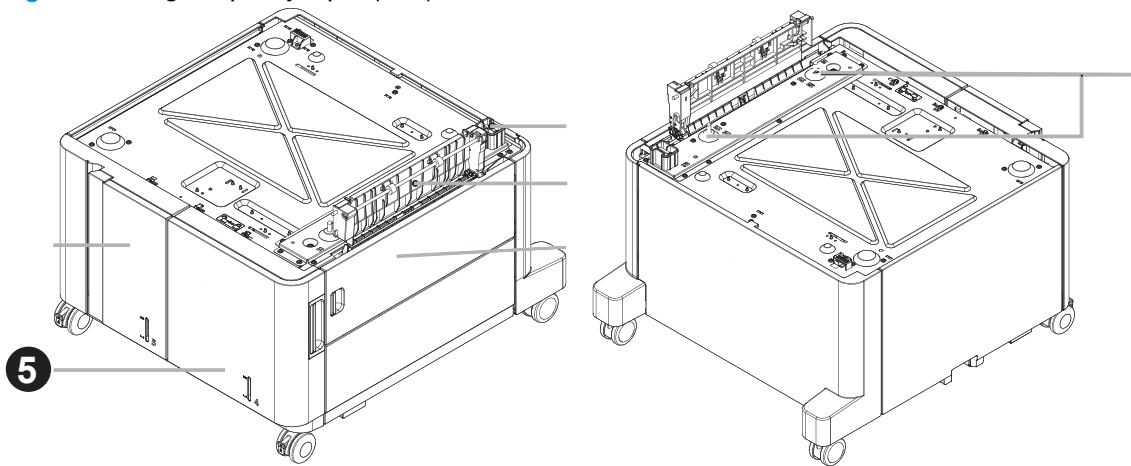


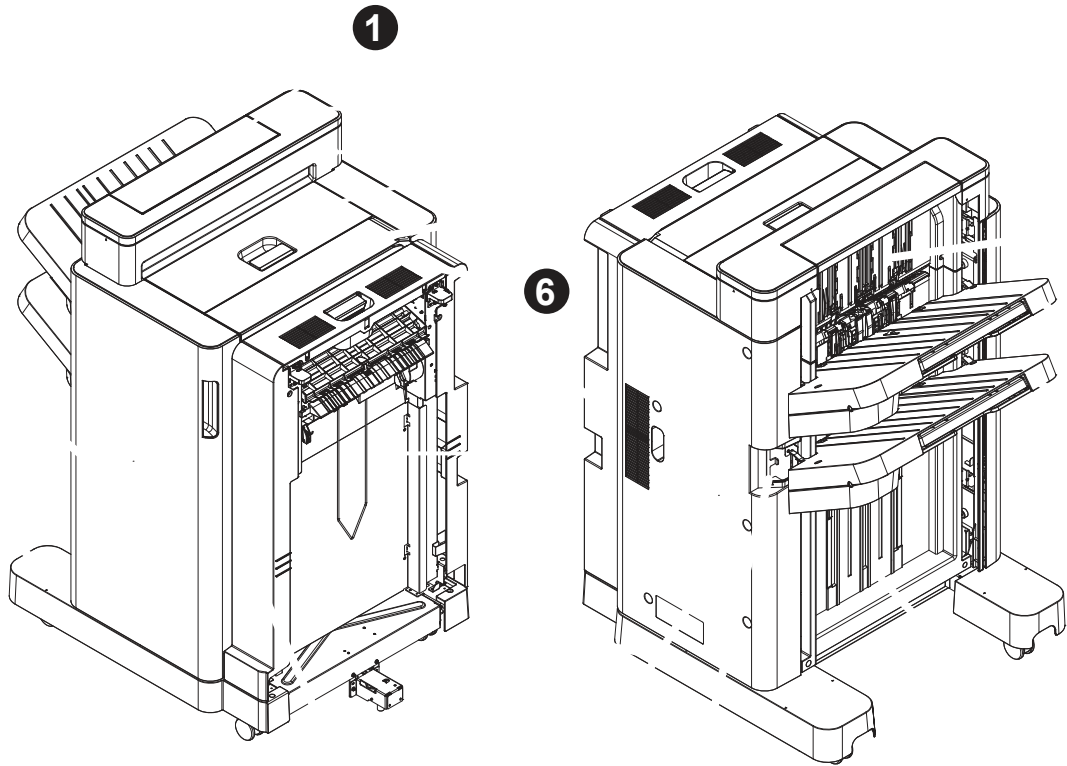
Table 2-9 High capacity input (HCI) feeder covers

| Item | Description         | Item | Description     |
|------|---------------------|------|-----------------|
| 1    | Connector           | 4    | Positioning pin |
| 2    | Paper path assembly | 5    | Right cassette  |
| 3    | Right door          | 6    | Left cassette   |

# Finishing accessories

 **NOTE:** Unless otherwise noted, many of the covers, doors, and output bins are common to all of the finishing accessories.

**Figure 2-5** Stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker with hole punch covers



**Table 2-10** Stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker with hole punch covers

| Item                                               | Description               | Item | Description                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1                                                  | Open/closed stepped cover | 10   | Rear cover                                     |
| 2                                                  | Upper stepped cover       | 11   | Bin cable cover                                |
| 3                                                  | Lower stepped cover       | 12   | Pre-reverse cover                              |
| 4                                                  | Upper (top) cover         | 13   | Front foot cover                               |
| 5                                                  | Punch cover               | 14   | Front cover (door)                             |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Stapler/stacker with hole punch only. |                           |      |                                                |
| 6                                                  | Upper reverse cover       | 15   | Height wall assembly                           |
| 7                                                  | Rear reverse cover        | 16   | Lower bin assembly                             |
| 8                                                  | Right cover               | 17   | Upper bin assembly                             |
| 9                                                  | Rear foot cover           | 18   | Stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide |



Figure 2-6 Booklet maker only covers

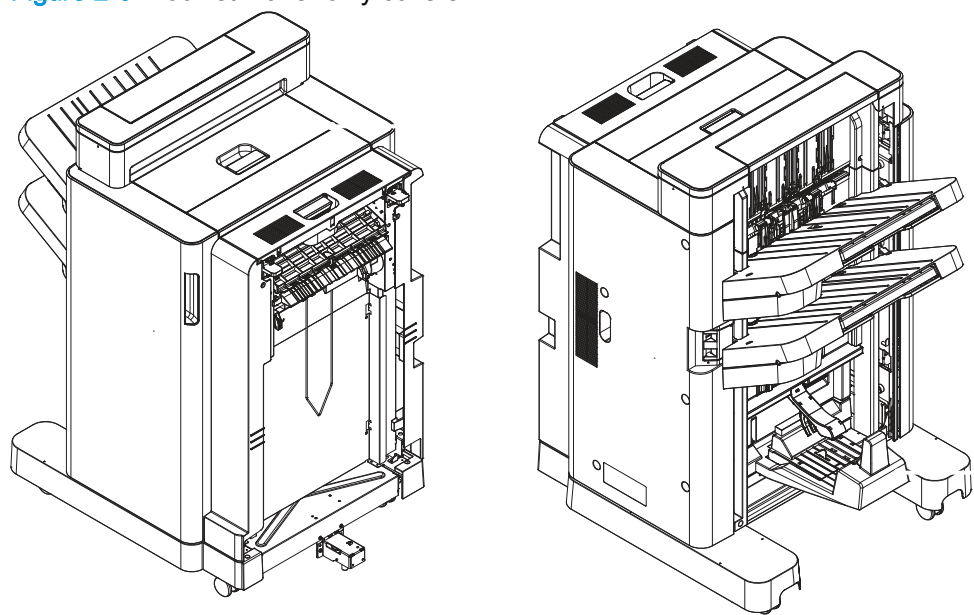
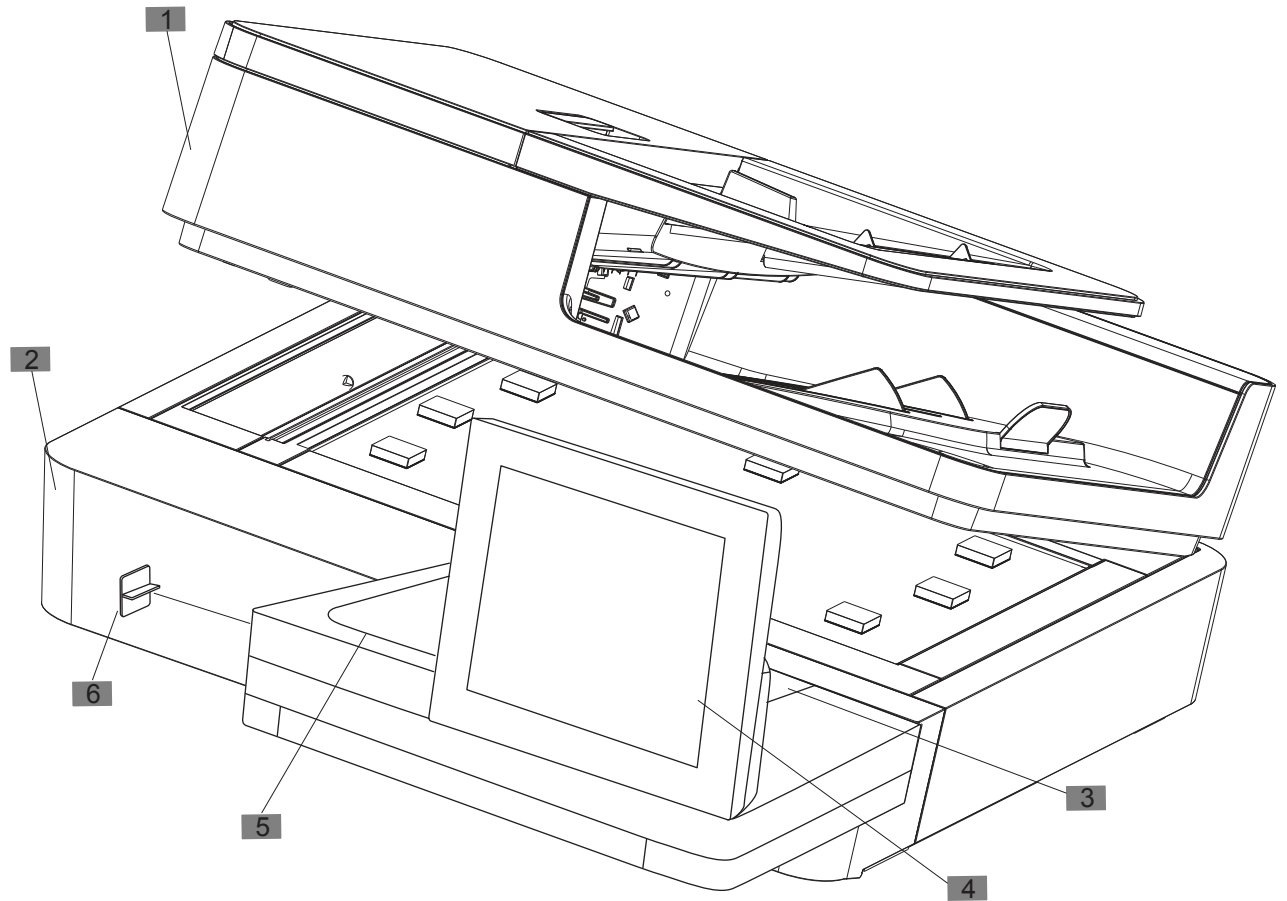


Table 2-11 Booklet maker only covers

| Item | Description                      | Item | Description         |
|------|----------------------------------|------|---------------------|
| 1    | Upper (top) cover with extension | 2    | Saddle bin assembly |

## Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830)

Figure 2-7 Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830)

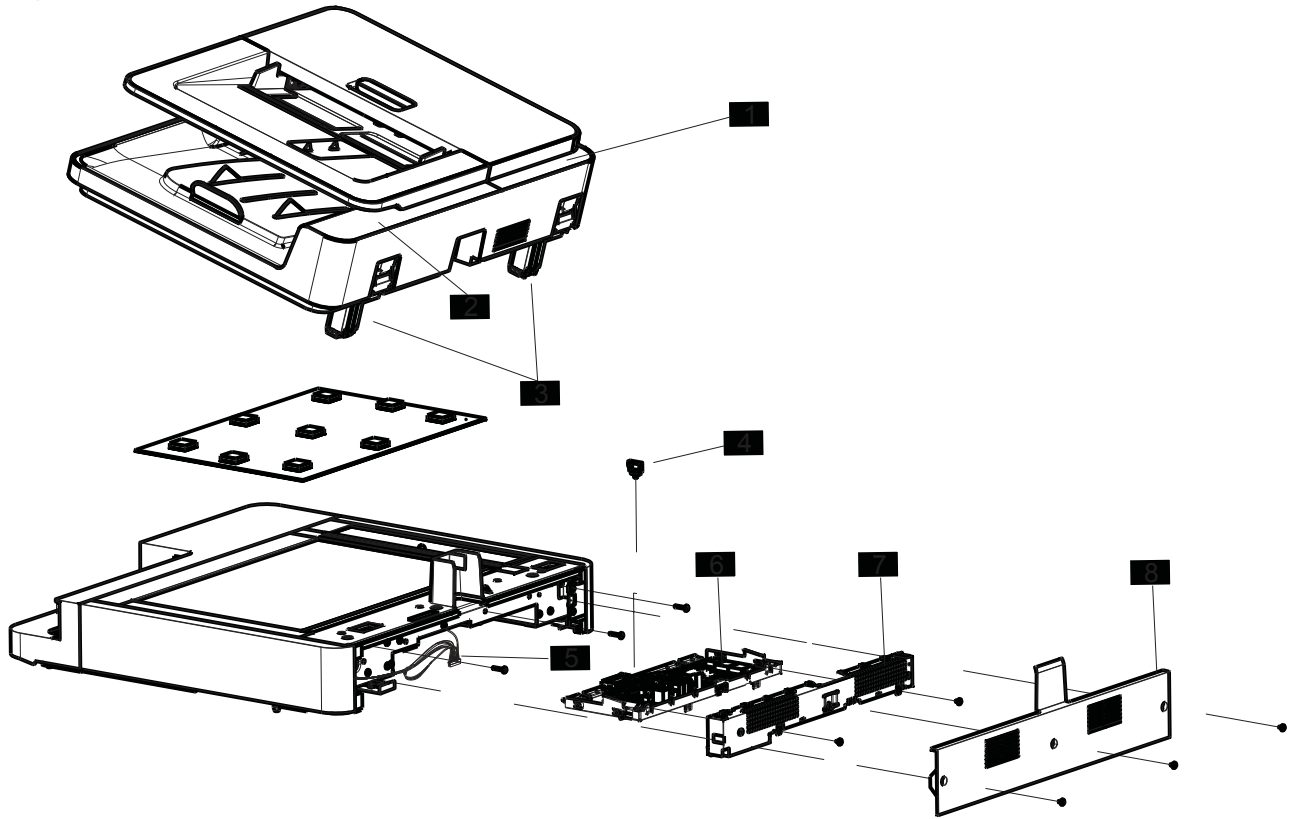


**Table 2-12 Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830)**

| Ref       | Description                                                 | Part number | Qty |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----|
| 1         | Kit, ADF whole unit, A3 (includes white backing kit) (M830) | CF367-67920 | 1   |
| 2         | Kit, scanner whole unit (includes white backing kit) (M830) | CF367-67919 | 1   |
| 3         | Cover, control panel access (M830)                          | 5042-9118   | 1   |
| 4         | Kit, control panel (without keyboard) (M830)                | 5851-5952   | 1   |
| 5         | Cover, HIP (M830)                                           | 5851-5361   | 1   |
| 6         | Cover, USB (M830)                                           | 5851-5360   | 1   |
| Not shown | Kit, white backing, A3 (M830)                               | 5851-5864   | 1   |
| Not shown | Kit, ADF Mylar, A3 (M930)                                   | 5851-5857   | 1   |

## Document feeder assemblies (M830)

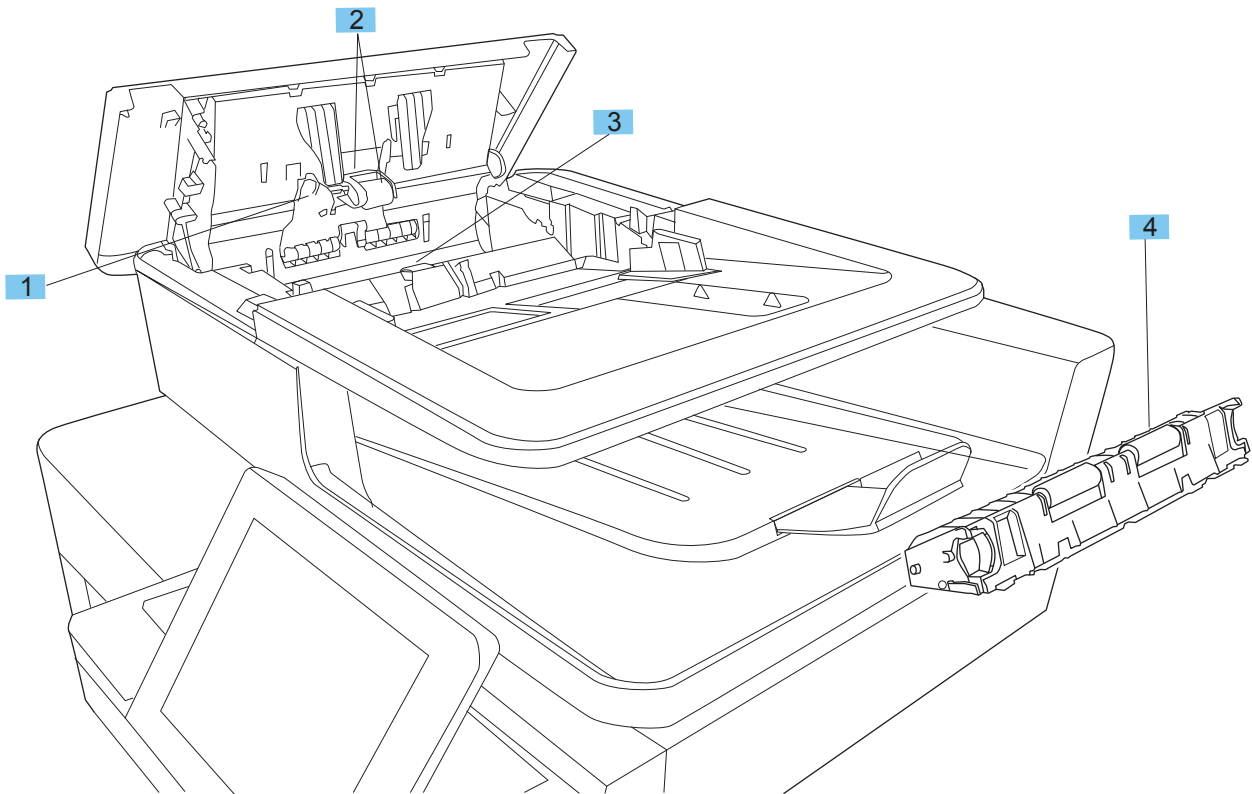
Figure 2-8 Document feeder assemblies ( M830; 1 of 2)



**Table 2-13** Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830)

| Ref       | Description                                   | Part number | Qty |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------|-----|
| 1         | Cover, rear, left ADF (M830)                  | A8T68-40067 | 1   |
| 2         | Cover, rear, right ADF (M830)                 | A8T68-40066 | 1   |
| 3         | Assembly, ADF hinge (M830)                    | A8T68-60025 | 2   |
| 4         | Clip, ISA cable (M830)                        | 5851-4725   | 1   |
| 5         | Cable, power, integrated scan assembly (M830) | CF367-60127 | 1   |
| 6         | Scanner control board (SCB; M830)             | CF367-60002 | 1   |
| 7         | Cage, back, SCB cover (M830)                  | CF367-00018 | 1   |
| 8         | Cover, back, scanner (M830)                   | CF368-60142 | 1   |
| Not shown | Flag, paper presence (M830)                   | A8T68-40033 | 1   |
| Not shown | Photosensor with connector (M830)             | CC355-80014 | 1   |
| Not shown | Stopper, load-front (M830)                    | A8T68-40034 | 1   |
| Not shown | Stopper, load-rear (M830)                     | A8T68-40035 | 1   |
| Not shown | Stopper, front (M830)                         | A8T68-40042 | 1   |
| Not shown | Stopper, rear (M830)                          | A8T68-40042 | 1   |
| Not shown | Lift plate assembly (M830)                    | A8T68-60006 | 1   |

Figure 2-9 Document feeder assemblies ( M830; 2 of 2)

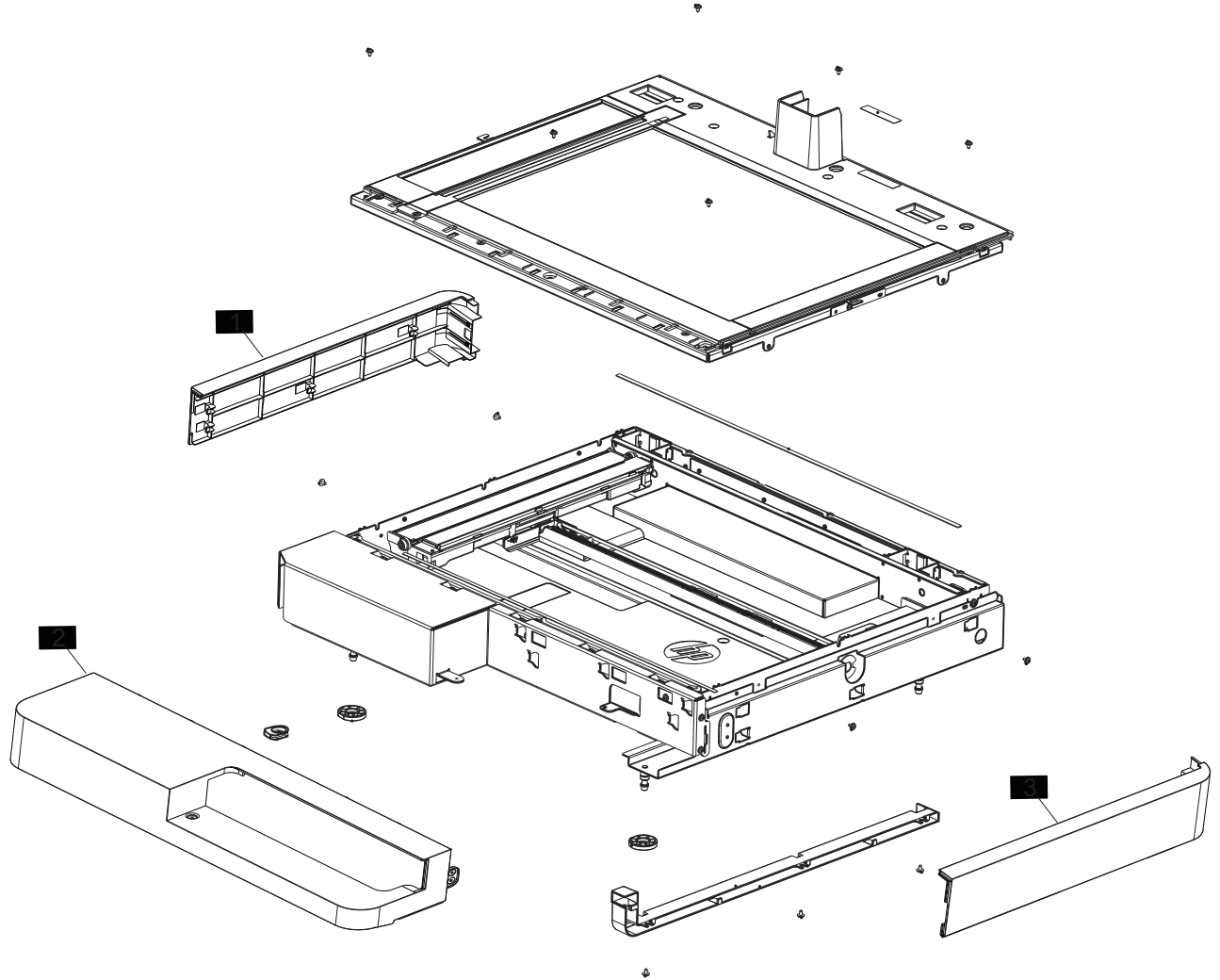


**Table 2-14** Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830)

| Ref       | Description                                  | Part number | Qty |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------|-------------|-----|
| 1         | Cover, ADF roller (M830)                     | A8T68-40072 | 1   |
| 2         | Kit, ADF roller (M830)                       | C1P70-67901 | 1   |
| 3         | Background selector for backside scan (M830) | A8T68-60021 | 1   |
| Not shown | Kit, ADF separation pad spring (M830)        | 5851-5855   | 1   |

# Scanner assemblies (M830)

Figure 2-10 Scanner assemblies



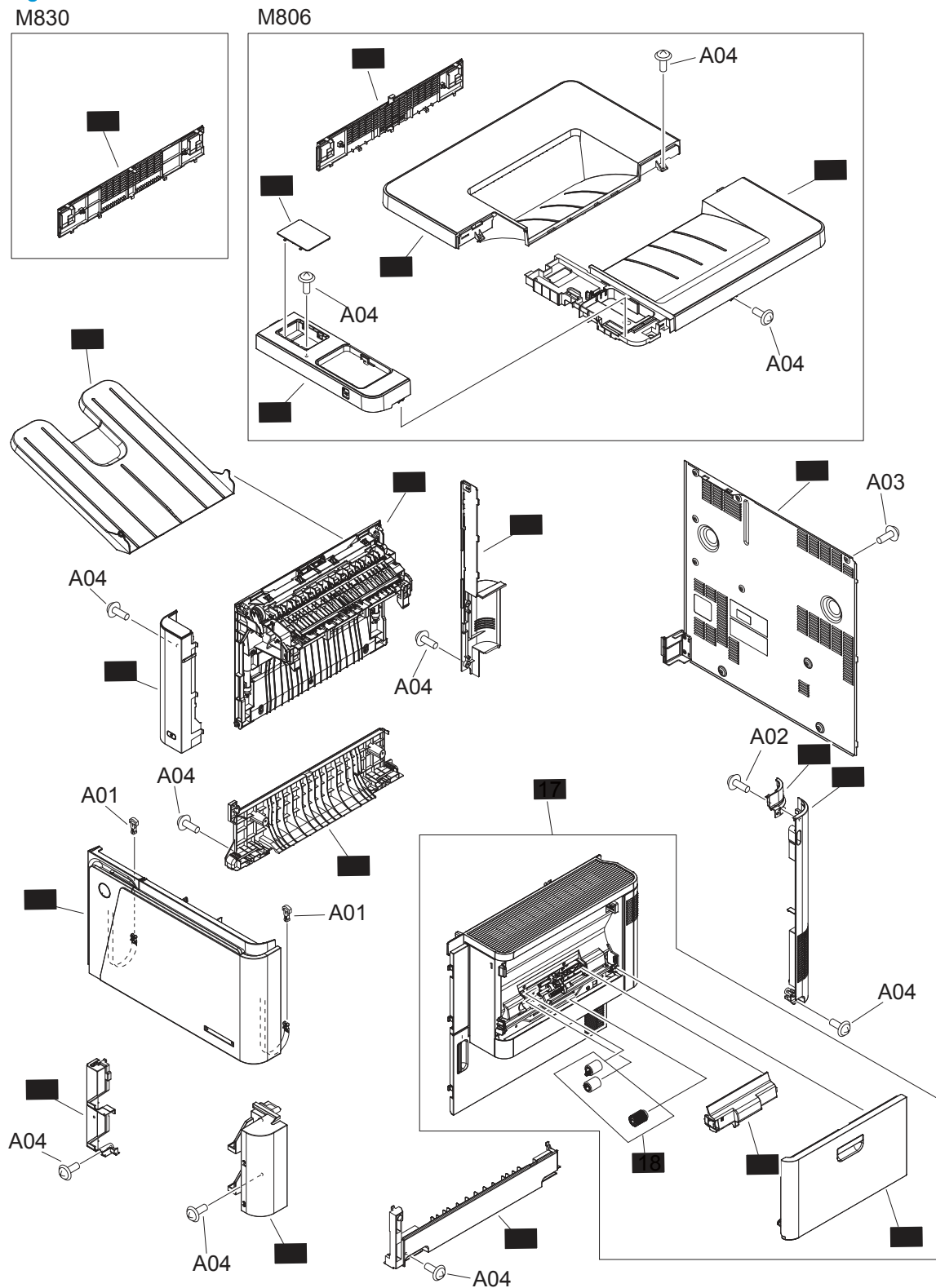


**Table 2-15** Scanner assemblies

| Ref | Description                  | Part number | Qty |
|-----|------------------------------|-------------|-----|
| 1   | Cover, left, scanner (M830)  | CF367-40003 | 1   |
| 2   | Cover, front, scanner (M830) | CF367-40002 | 1   |
| 3   | Cover, right, scanner (M830) | CF367-40004 | 1   |

# Covers

**Figure 2-11** Covers



**Table 2-16 Covers**

| Ref | Description                          | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|--------------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Cover, top right (M806)              | RC3-3945-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Cover, top left (M806)               | RC3-3946-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Cover, operation panel, top (M806)   | RC3-3947-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Cover, hip (M806)                    | RC3-3948-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Cover, left lower                    | RC3-3949-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Cover, corner, left rear             | RC3-3952-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Cover, right rear corner, lower      | RC3-3954-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Cover, right rear corner, upper      | RC3-3955-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Cover, right lower                   | RC3-3956-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Cover, corner, right front           | RC3-3957-000CN | 2   |
| 11  | Cover, corner, left front            | RC3-3958-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Cover, left upper (M806)             | RC3-3979-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Cover, left upper (M830)             | RC3-4589-000CN | 1   |
| 13  | Tray, face-up                        | RC3-3985-000CN | 1   |
| 14  | Front left lower cover assembly      | RM1-9722-000CN | 1   |
| 15  | Left door assembly                   | RM1-9736-000CN | 1   |
| 16  | Kit, front door assembly             | CF367-67909    | 1   |
| 17  | Right door assembly                  | RM1-9769-000CN | 1   |
| 18  | Kit, tray 2-X roller                 | CF367-67903    | 1   |
| 19  | Roller cover assembly                | RM1-9809-000CN | 1   |
| 20  | Multi-purpose tray (Tray 1) assembly | RM1-9774-000CN | 1   |
| 21  | Rear cover assembly                  | RM1-9787-000CN | 1   |

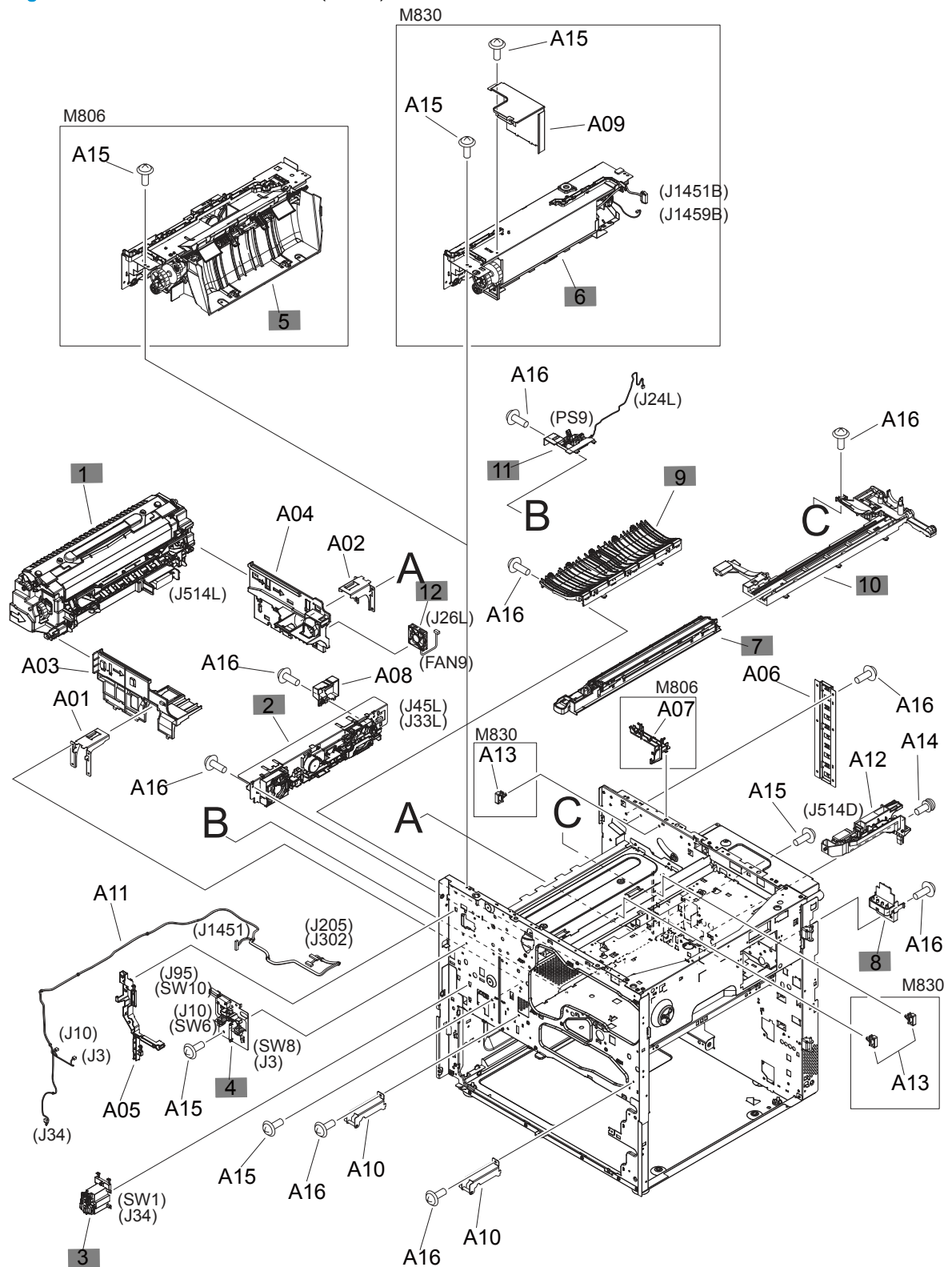
## Internal assemblies (1 of 4)

**Table 2-17 Internal assemblies (1 of 4)**

| Ref | Description                | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|----------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Limiter, torque            | RB2-5759-000CN | 2   |
| 2   | Guide, cartridge, front    | RC3-3968-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Dial, jam dispose          | RC3-4269-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Lid, jam dispose dial      | RC4-2004-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Kit, tray 2 roller         | CF367-67903    | 4   |
| 6   | Control lever assembly     | RG5-5746-030CN | 1   |
| 7   | Right door switch assembly | RM1-9725-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Registration assembly      | RM1-9742-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Paper pickup assembly      | RM1-9745-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Front inner cover assembly | RM1-9760-000CN | 1   |
| 11  | Cartridge lifter assembly  | RM1-9775-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Drum drive assembly        | RM1-9784-000CN | 1   |
| 13  | Fusing drive assembly      | RM1-9788-000CN | 1   |

## Internal assemblies (2 of 4)

Figure 2-13 Internal assemblies (2 of 4)

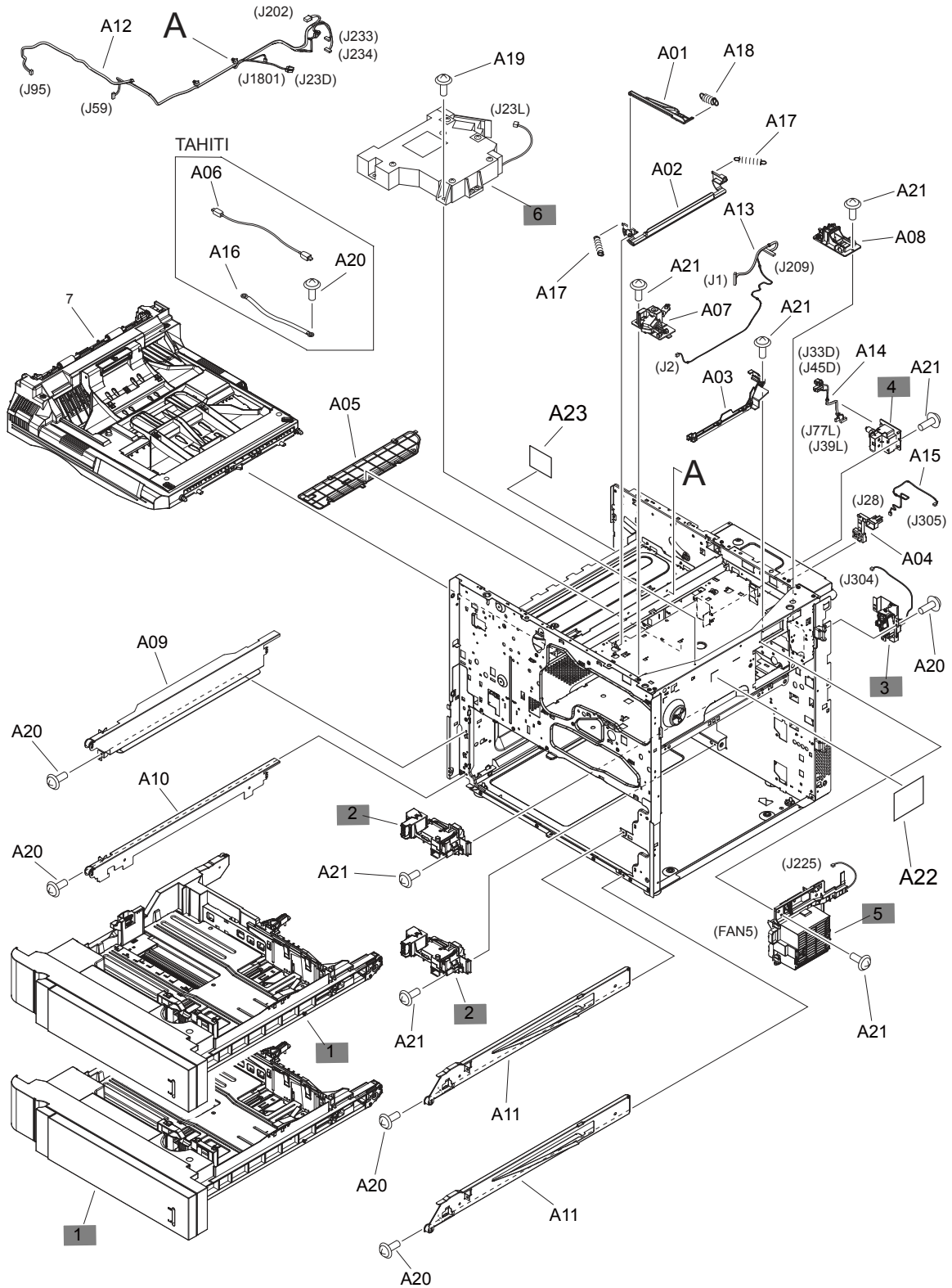


**Table 2-18 Internal assemblies (2 of 4)**

| Ref | Description                              | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|------------------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Kit, fuser assembly, 110V                | CF367-67905    | 1   |
| 1   | Kit, fuser assembly, 220V                | CF367-67906    | 1   |
| 2   | Cooling unit assembly                    | RM1-9720-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Power switch assembly                    | RM1-9723-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Interlock assembly                       | RM1-9724-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Face-down paper delivery assembly (M806) | RM1-9732-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Paper delivery fan assembly (M830)       | RM1-9734-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Kit, transfer roller assembly            | CF367-67907    | 1   |
| 8   | Cartridge contact assembly               | RM1-9758-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Transfer paper feed assembly             | RM1-9705-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Transfer holder assembly                 | RM1-9706-000CN | 1   |
| 11  | Sensor unit, loop                        | RM1-9707-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Fan                                      | RK2-5004-000CN | 1   |

## Internal assemblies (3 of 4)

**Figure 2-14** Internal assemblies (3 of 4)



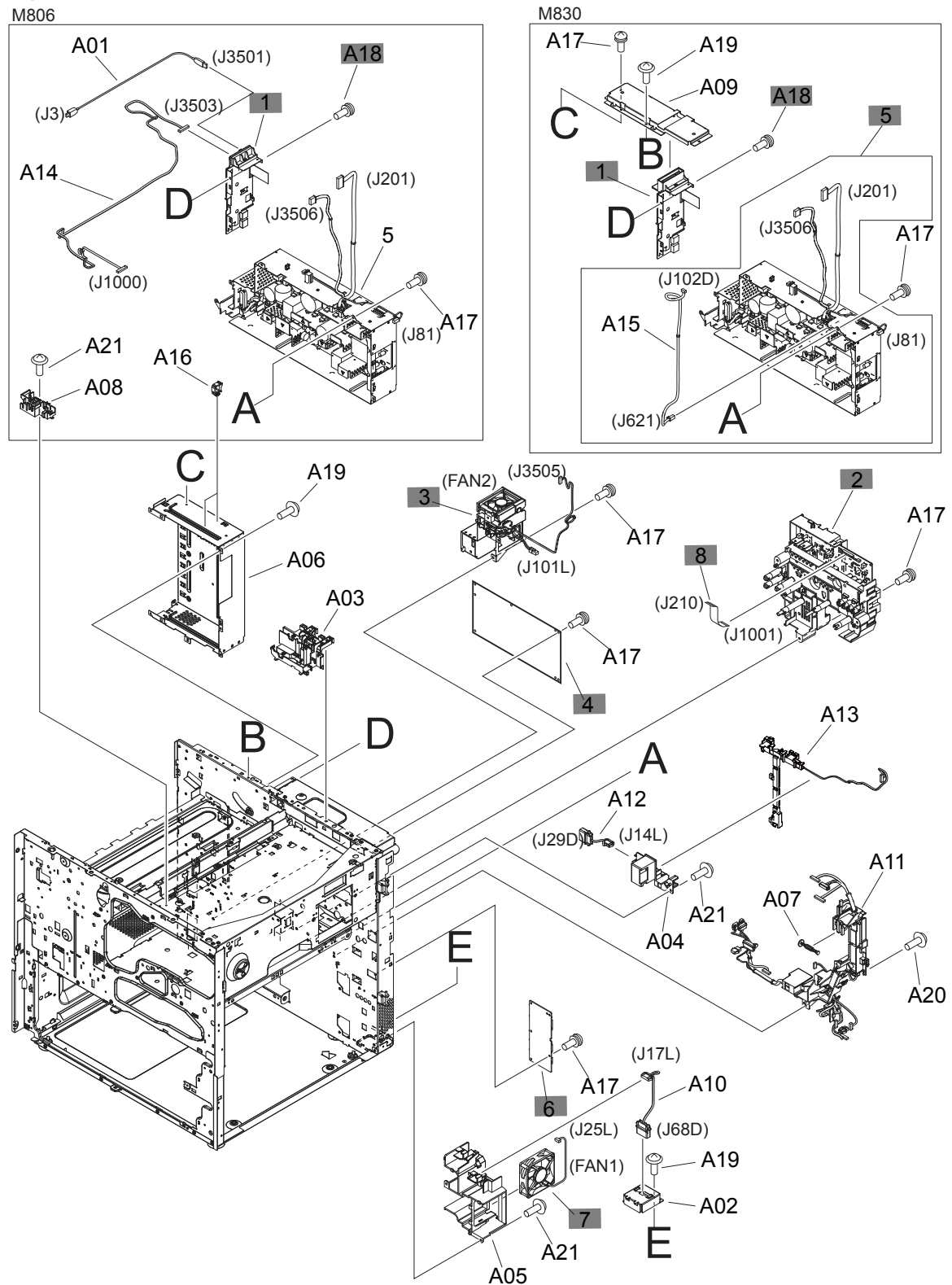


**Table 2-19 Internal assemblies (3 of 4)**

| Ref | Description                  | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Cassette assembly            | RM1-9726-000CN | 2   |
| 2   | Auto close assembly          | RM1-9757-000CN | 2   |
| 3   | Tag assembly                 | RM1-9759-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Fixing bias contact assembly | RM1-9762-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Cartridge fan assembly       | RM1-9768-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Laser scanner assembly       | RM2-5207-000CN | 1   |

## Internal assemblies (4 of 4)

**Figure 2-15** Internal assemblies (4 of 4)



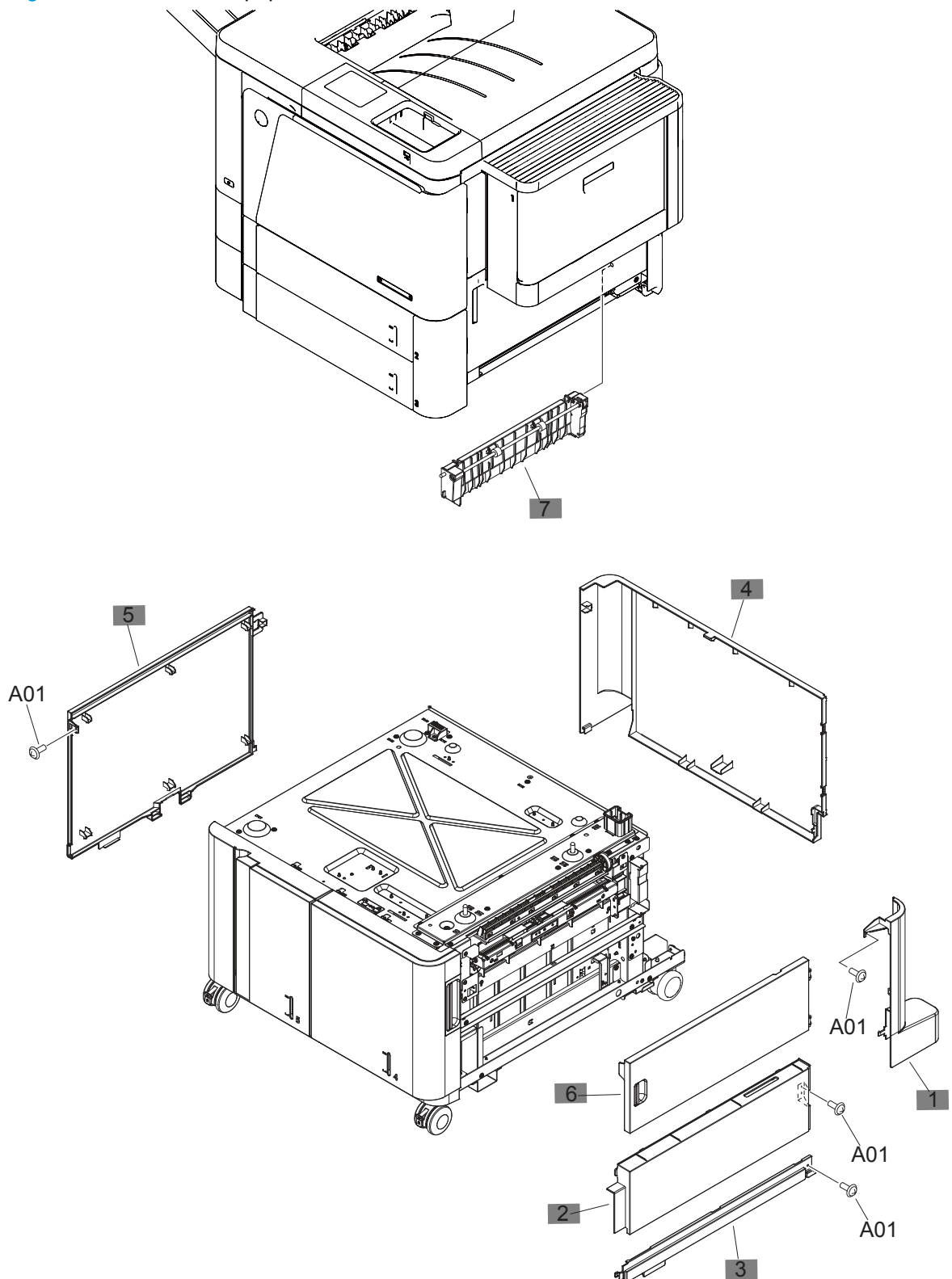
**Table 2-20 Internal assemblies (4 of 4)**

| Ref | Description                               | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|-------------------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | ICB PCA assembly (M806)                   | RM1-9764-000CN | 1   |
| 1   | ICB PCA assembly (M830)                   | RM1-9765-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | High voltage power supply                 | RM1-9767-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Option connector assembly                 | RM1-9778-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | DC controller PCA assembly                | RM2-0540-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Low-voltage power supply, 110-127V (M806) | RM2-0544-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Low-voltage power supply, 220-240V (M806) | RM2-0545-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Low-voltage power supply, 110-127V (M830) | RM2-0548-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Low-voltage power supply, 220-240V (M830) | RM2-0549-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Driver PCA assembly                       | RM2-0558-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Fan                                       | RK2-4997-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Cable, flexible flat                      | RK2-5013-000CN | 1   |
| A18 | Connector                                 | VS17258-012CN  | 1   |

## 3500-sheet paper feeder (HCI)

### 3500-sheet paper feeder covers

Figure 2-16 3500-sheet paper feeder covers

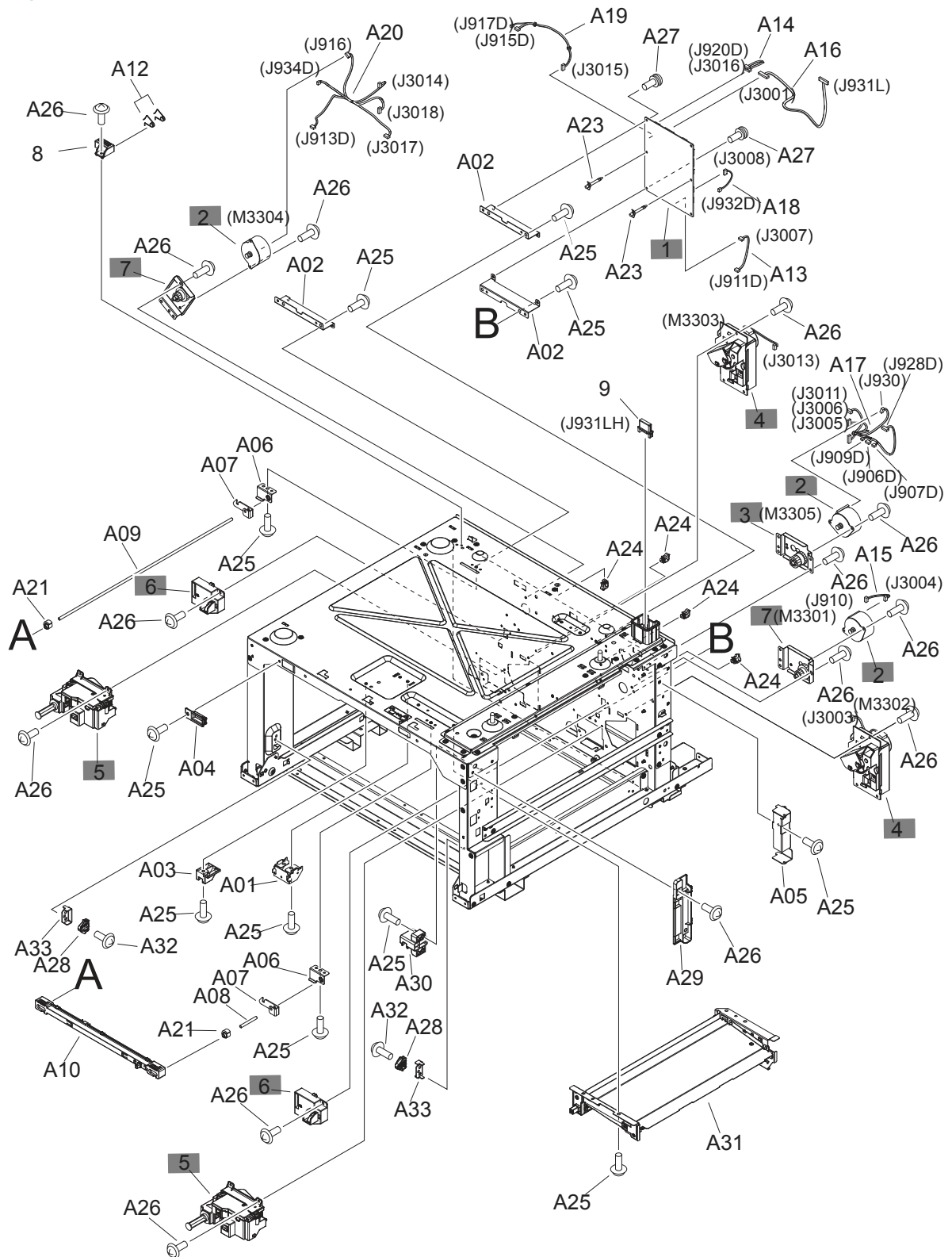


**Table 2-21** 3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3)

| Ref | Description                    | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|--------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Cover, corner, right rear      | RC3-4715-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Cover, right center            | RC3-4716-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Cover, right lower             | RC3-4717-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Cover, rear                    | RC3-4718-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Cover, left                    | RC3-4719-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Right door assembly            | RM1-9577-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Paper path connection assembly | RG5-6227-040CN | 1   |

## 3500-sheet paper deck components

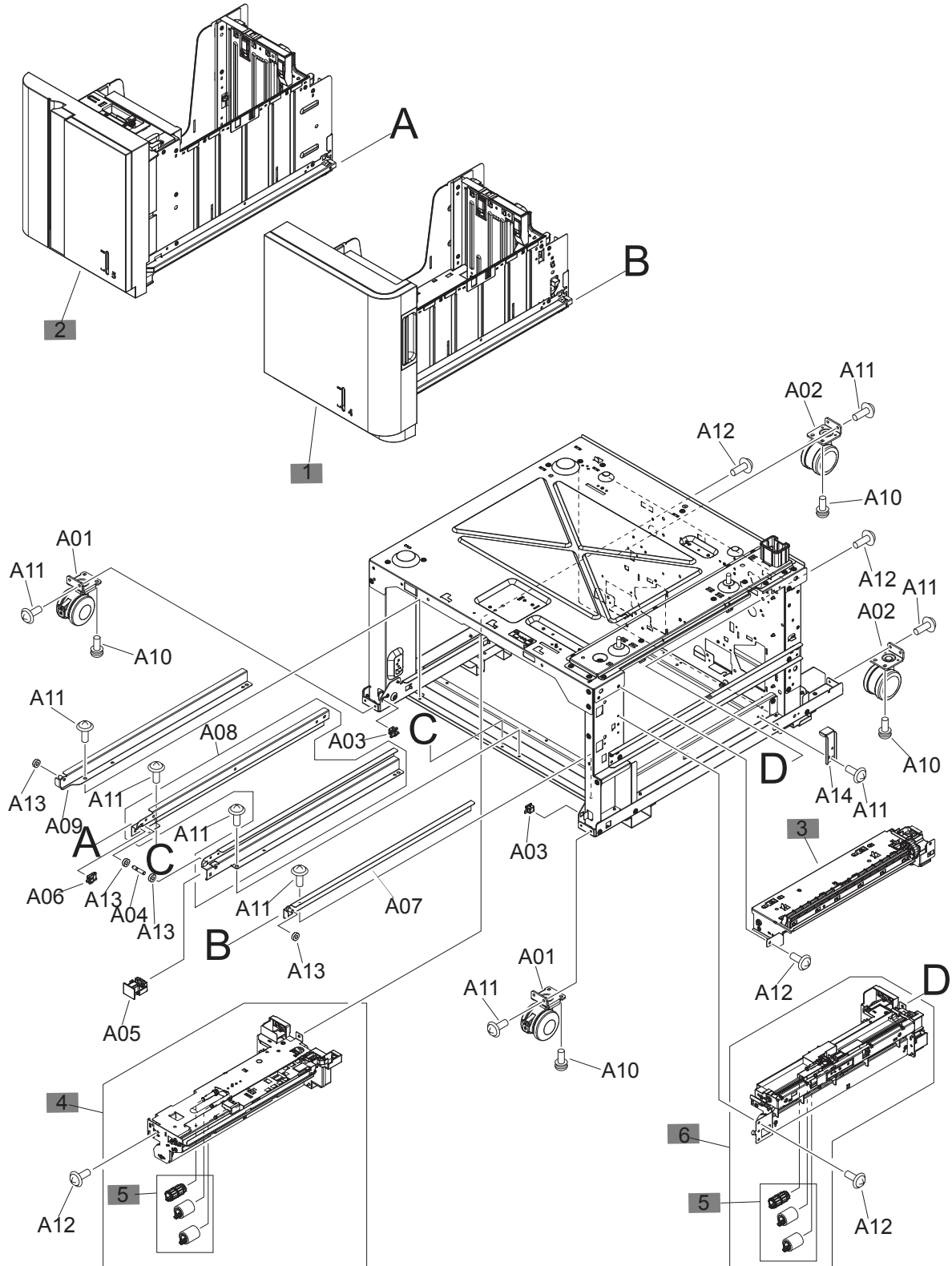
Figure 2-17 3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2)



**Table 2-22 3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2)**

| Ref | Description                   | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|-------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Controller PCA assembly       | RM2-0567-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Motor, stepping, DC           | RK2-1331-000CN | 3   |
| 3   | Crossing drive assembly       | RM1-9582-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Lifter drive assembly         | RM1-8879-000CN | 2   |
| 5   | Auto close assembly           | RM1-8880-000CN | 2   |
| 6   | Paper remnant detect assembly | RM1-9579-000CN | 2   |
| 7   | Paper pick-up drive assembly  | RM1-9581-000CN | 2   |

Figure 2-18 3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2)





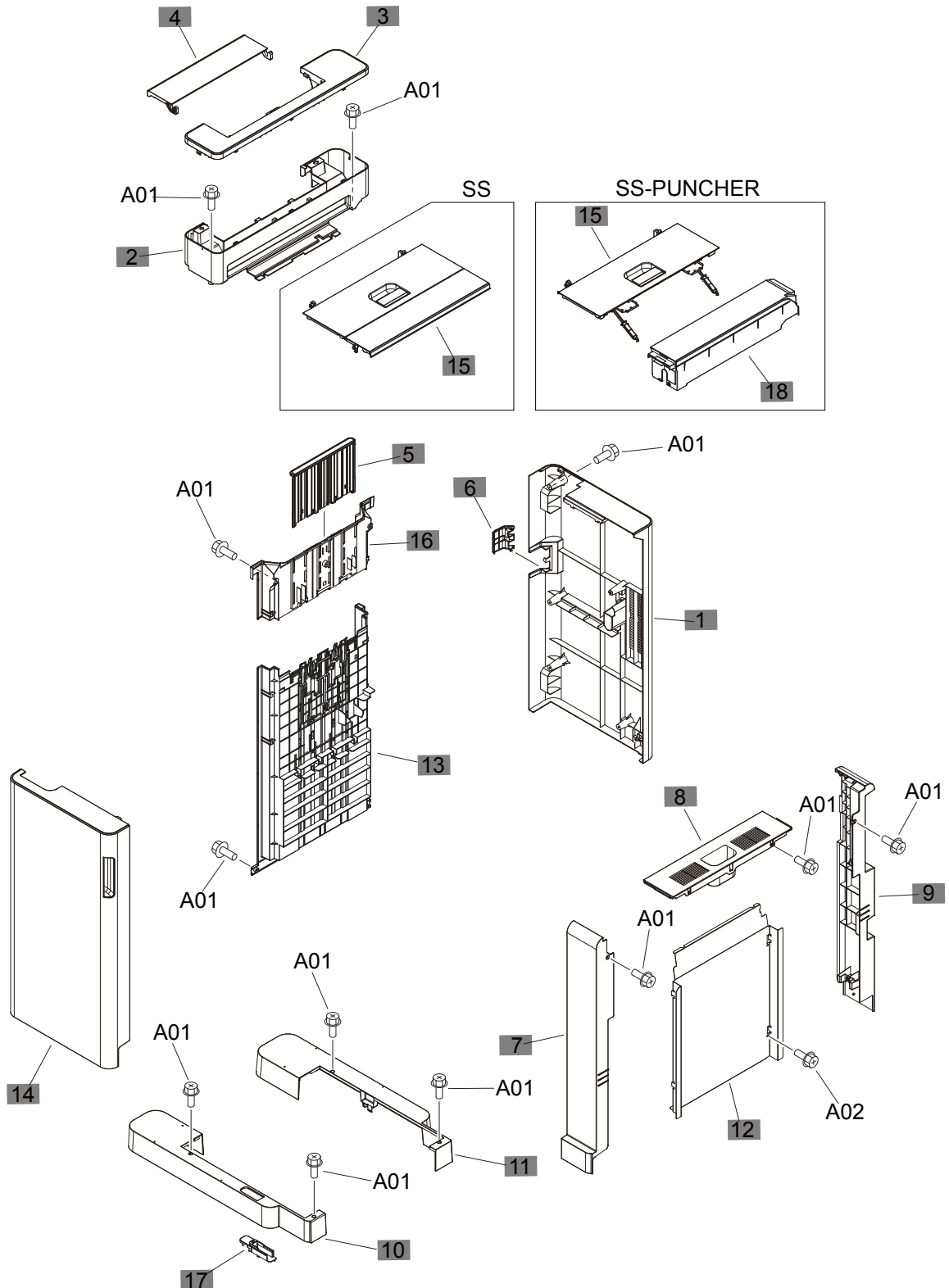
**Table 2-23** 3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2)

| Ref | Description                      | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|----------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Kit, HCI right tray              | CZ244-67903    | 1   |
| 2   | Kit, HCI left tray               | CZ244-67904    | 1   |
| 3   | Crossing paper feed assembly     | RM1-9883-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Paper pick-up assembly           | RM2-0708-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Kit, tray 2-x roller             | CF367-67903    | 2   |
| 6   | Paper pickup paper feed assembly | RM2-0709-000CN | 1   |

# Stapler stacker/booklet maker

## Stapler stacker covers

Figure 2-19 Stapler stacker covers

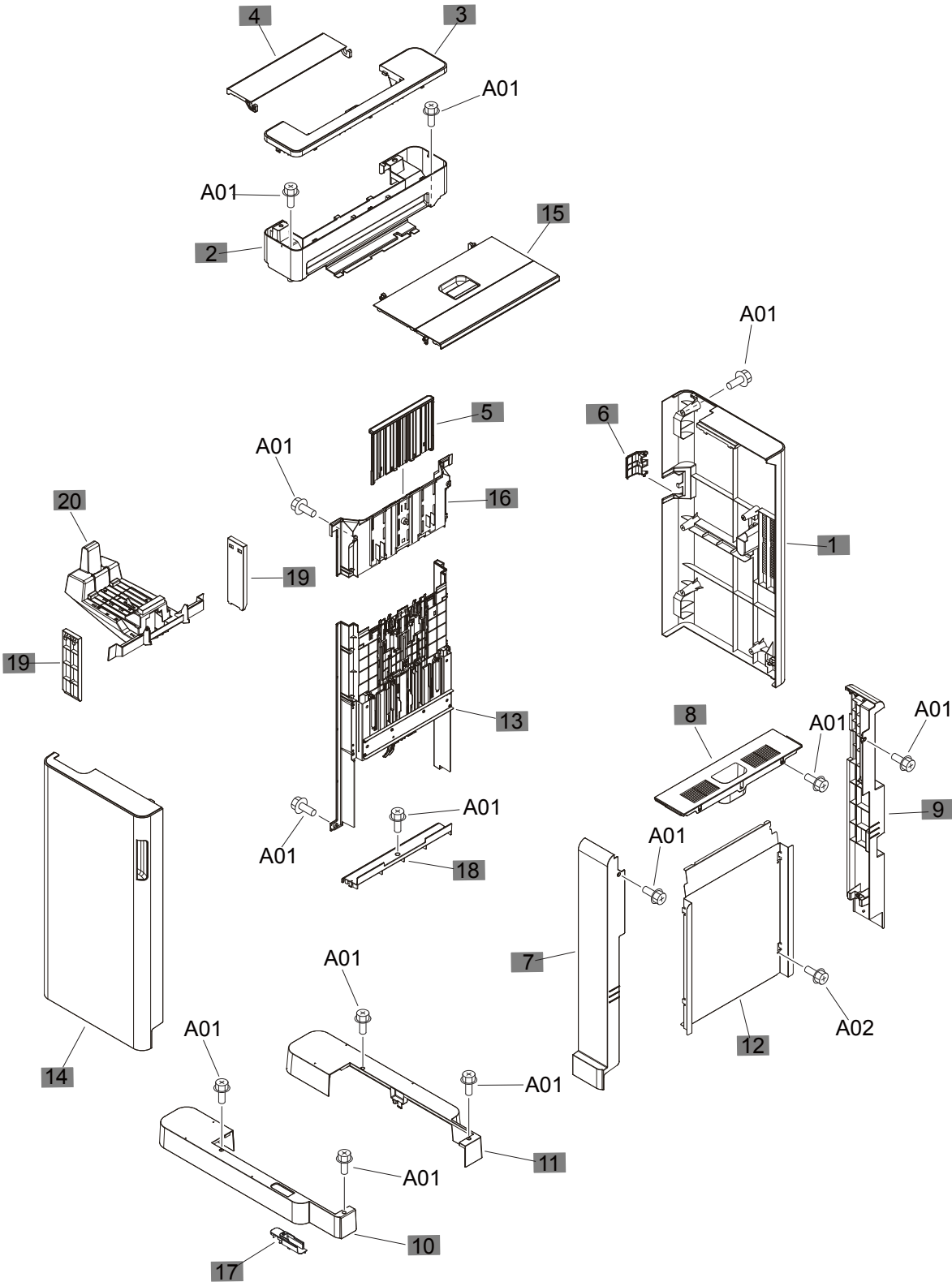


**Table 2-24 Stapler stacker covers**

| Ref | Description                                                | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Cover, rear                                                | RC4-2444-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Cover, stepped, lower                                      | RC4-2447-000CN |     |
| 3   | Cover, stepped, upper                                      | RC4-2448-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Cover, open/close stepped                                  | RC4-2449-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Guide, wall, upper                                         | RC4-2455-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Cover, tray cable                                          | RC4-2462-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Cover, pre-reverse                                         | RC4-2519-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Cover, reverse, upper                                      | RC4-2520-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Cover, reverse, rear                                       | RC4-2521-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Cover, foot, front                                         | RM2-6056-000CN | 1   |
| 11  | Cover, foot, rear                                          | RM2-6057-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Cover, right                                               | RC4-2565-000CN | 1   |
| 13  | Height wall lower assembly                                 | RM2-5853-000CN | 1   |
| 14  | Front cover assembly                                       | RM2-5320-000CN | 1   |
| 15  | Upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker)                     | RM2-5322-000CN | 1   |
| 15  | Upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher)       | RM2-5535-000CN | 1   |
| 16  | Stack wall upper assembly                                  | RM2-5343-000CN | 1   |
| 17  | Handle, lock release                                       | RC4-2584-000CN | 1   |
| 18  | Punch upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | RM2-5515-000CN | 1   |

Booklet maker covers

Figure 2-20 Booklet maker covers

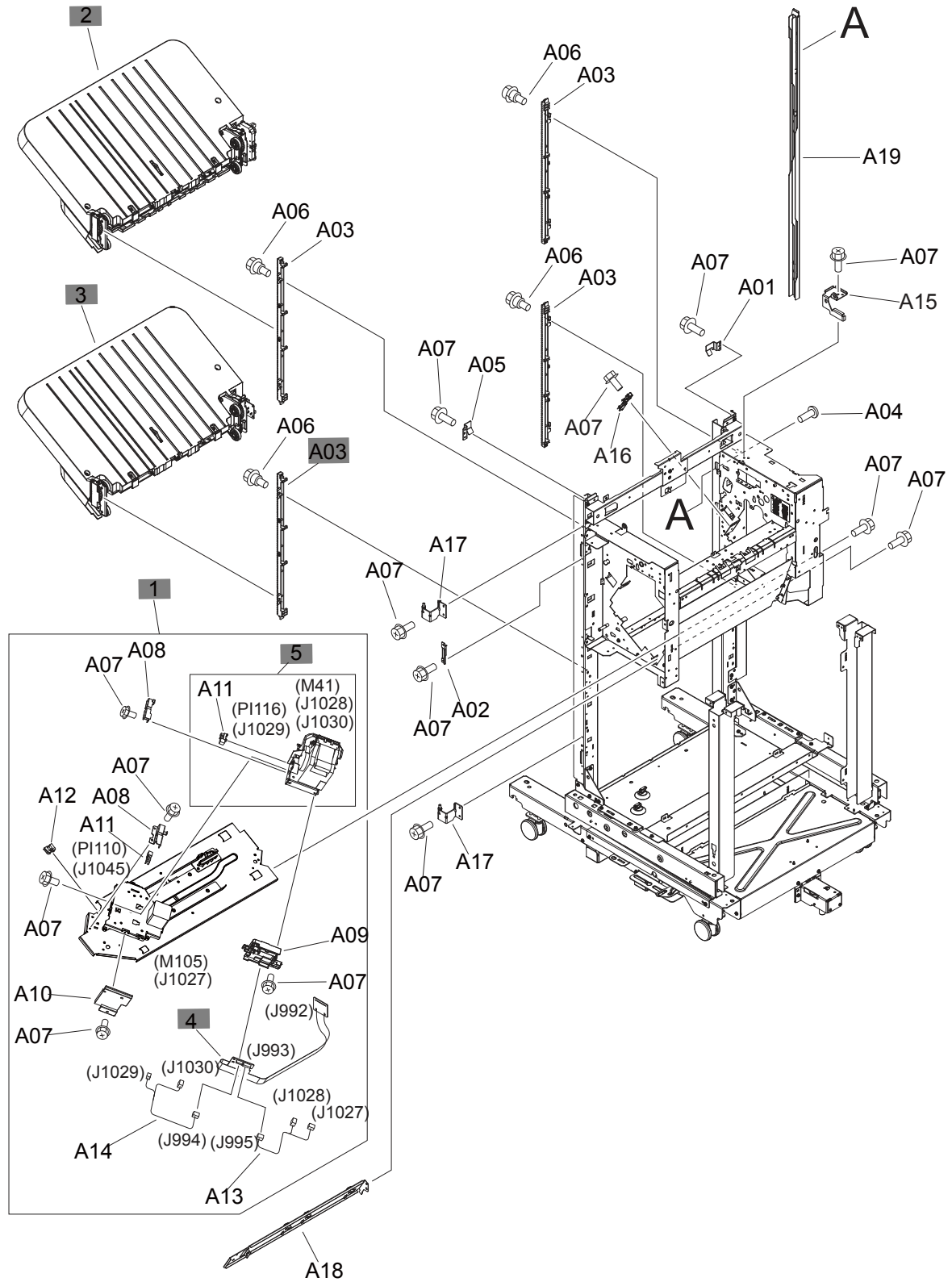


**Table 2-25 Booklet maker covers**

| Ref | Description                  | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Cover, rear                  | RC4-2444-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Cover, stepped, lower        | RC4-2447-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Cover, stepped, upper        | RC4-2448-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Cover, open/close stepped    | RC4-2449-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Guide, wall, upper           | RC4-2455-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Cover, tray cable            | RC4-2462-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Cover, pre-reverse           | RC4-2519-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Cover, reverse, upper        | RC4-2520-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Cover, reverse, rear         | RC4-2521-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Cover, foot, front           | RM2-6056-000CN | 1   |
| 11  | Cover, foot, rear            | RM2-6057-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Cover, right                 | RC4-2565-000CN | 1   |
| 13  | Height wall center assembly  | RM2-5852-000CN | 1   |
| 14  | Front cover assembly         | RM2-5320-000CN | 1   |
| 15  | Upper cover assembly         | RM2-5322-000CN | 1   |
| 16  | Stack wall upper assembly    | RM2-5343-000CN | 1   |
| 17  | Handle, lock release         | RC4-2584-000CN | 1   |
| 18  | Guide, left lower            | RC4-2467-000CN | 1   |
| 19  | Cover, saddle delivery inner | RC4-2471-000CN | 2   |
| 20  | Saddle tray assembly         | RM2-5318-000   | 1   |

## Finisher main body (1 of 3)

Figure 2-21 Finisher main body (1 of 3)

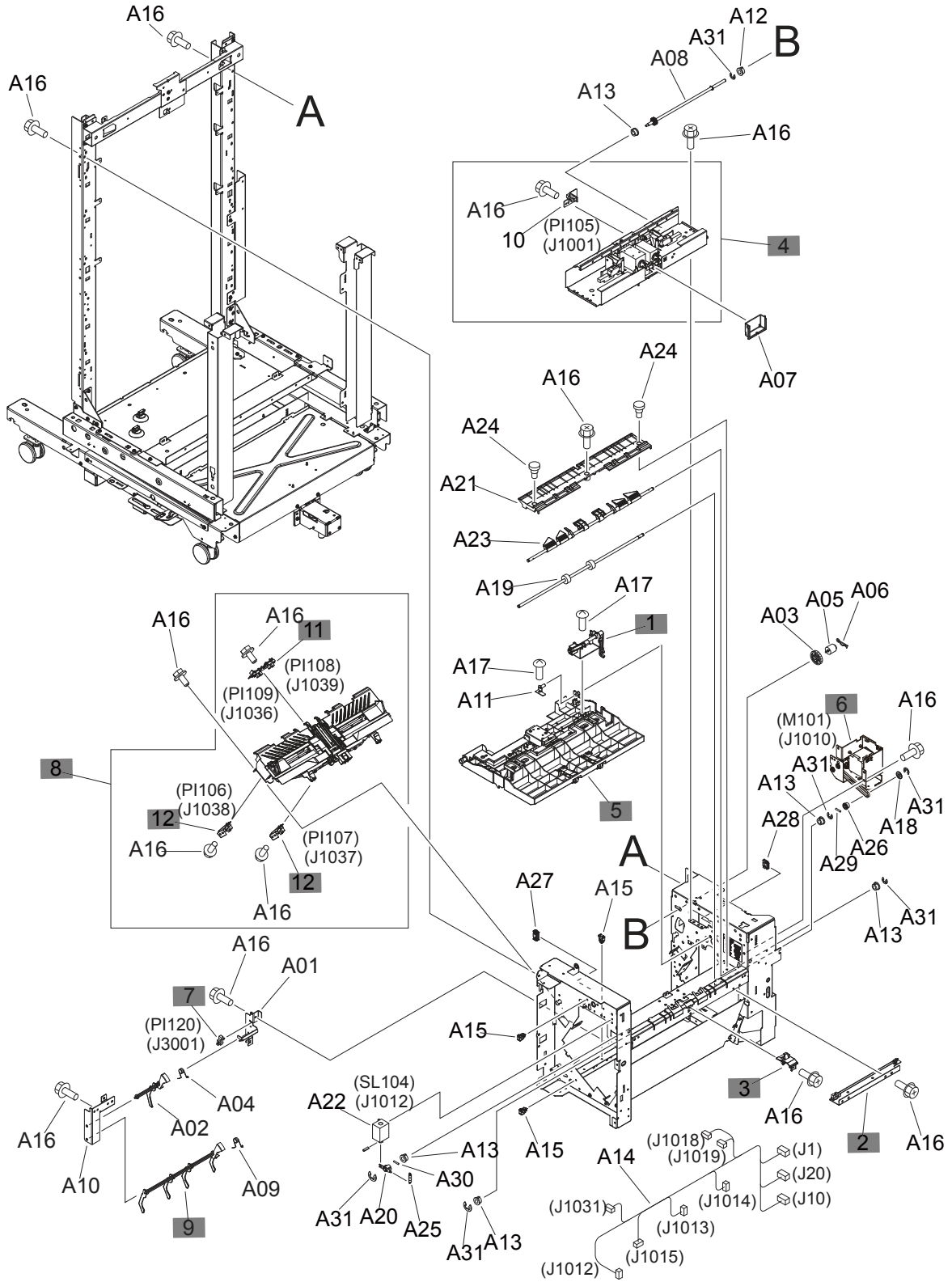


**Table 2-26 Finisher main body (1 of 3)**

| Ref | Description               | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|---------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Staple assembly           | 4G3-0938-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Stack upper tray assembly | RM2-5324-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Stack lower tray assembly | RM2-5339-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Cable, staple connecting  | 4G3-1777-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Staple sub assembly       | 4G3-0939-000CN | 1   |
| A03 | Rack, rail                | FC5-5436-000CN | 1   |

## Finisher main body (2 of 3)

**Figure 2-22** Finisher main body (2 of 3)



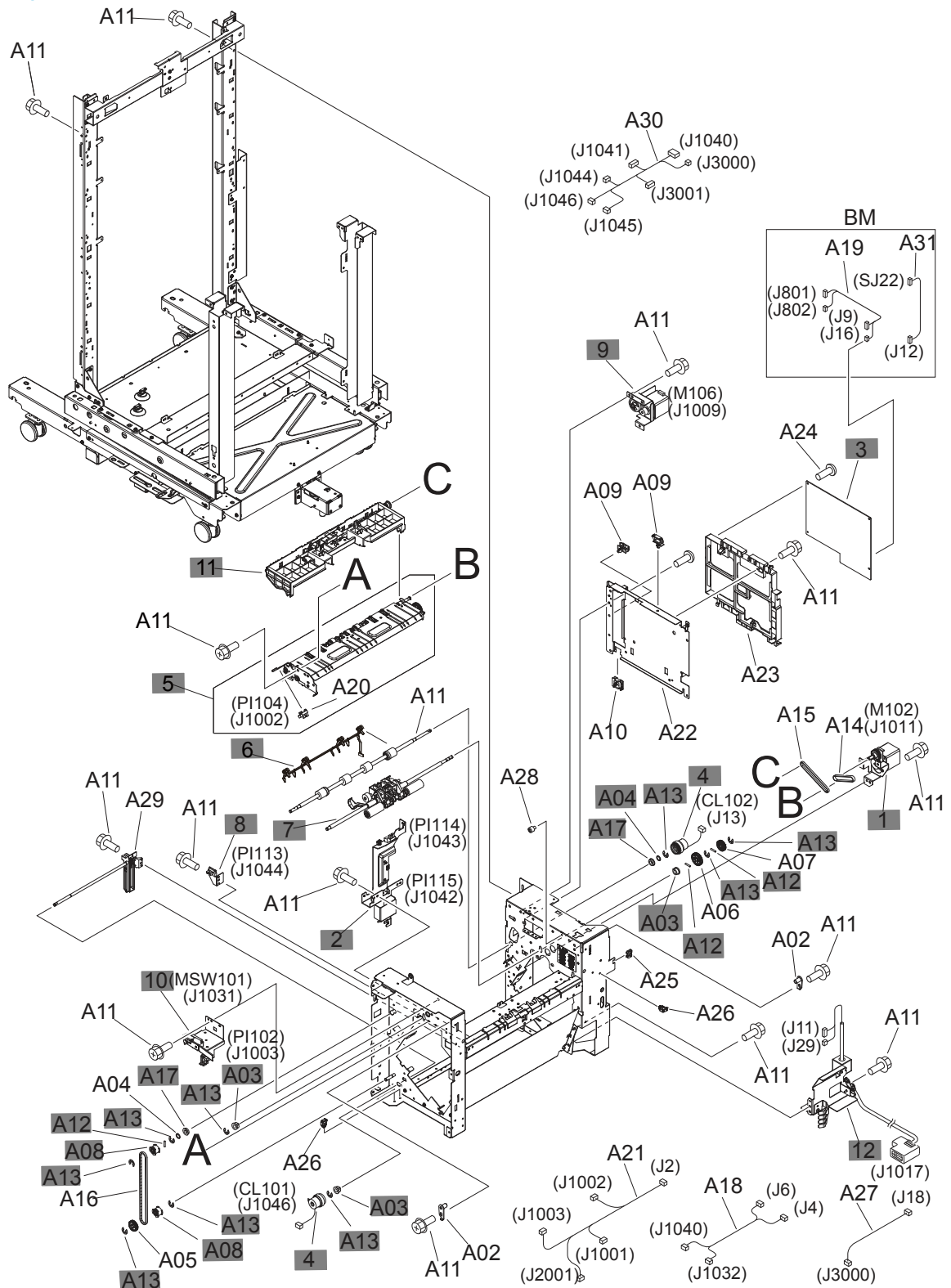


**Table 2-27 Finisher main body (2 of 3)**

| Ref | Description                                     | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Upper cover lock assembly                       | 4G3-0210-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Entrance sensor bracket assembly                | FM2-0717-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Entrance sensor flag assembly                   | RM2-5849-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Upper cross-member assembly                     | FM0-1882-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Entrance upper guide assembly (booklet maker)   | RM2-6024-000CN | 1   |
| 5   | Entrance upper guide assembly (stapler stacker) | FM0-1683-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Paper feed motor assembly                       | FM0-1889-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Photo interrupter tlp1242                       | WG8-5593-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Operation tray assembly                         | RM2-5309-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Flag, paper sensing sensor                      | FC5-5004-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Swing H.P. sensor assembly                      | 4G3-1564-000CN | 1   |
| 11  | Assist sensor assembly                          | FM2-1396-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Adjust guide H.P. sensor assembly               | FM2-1393-000CN | 1   |

## Finisher main body (3 of 3)

Figure 2-23 Finisher main body (3 of 3)

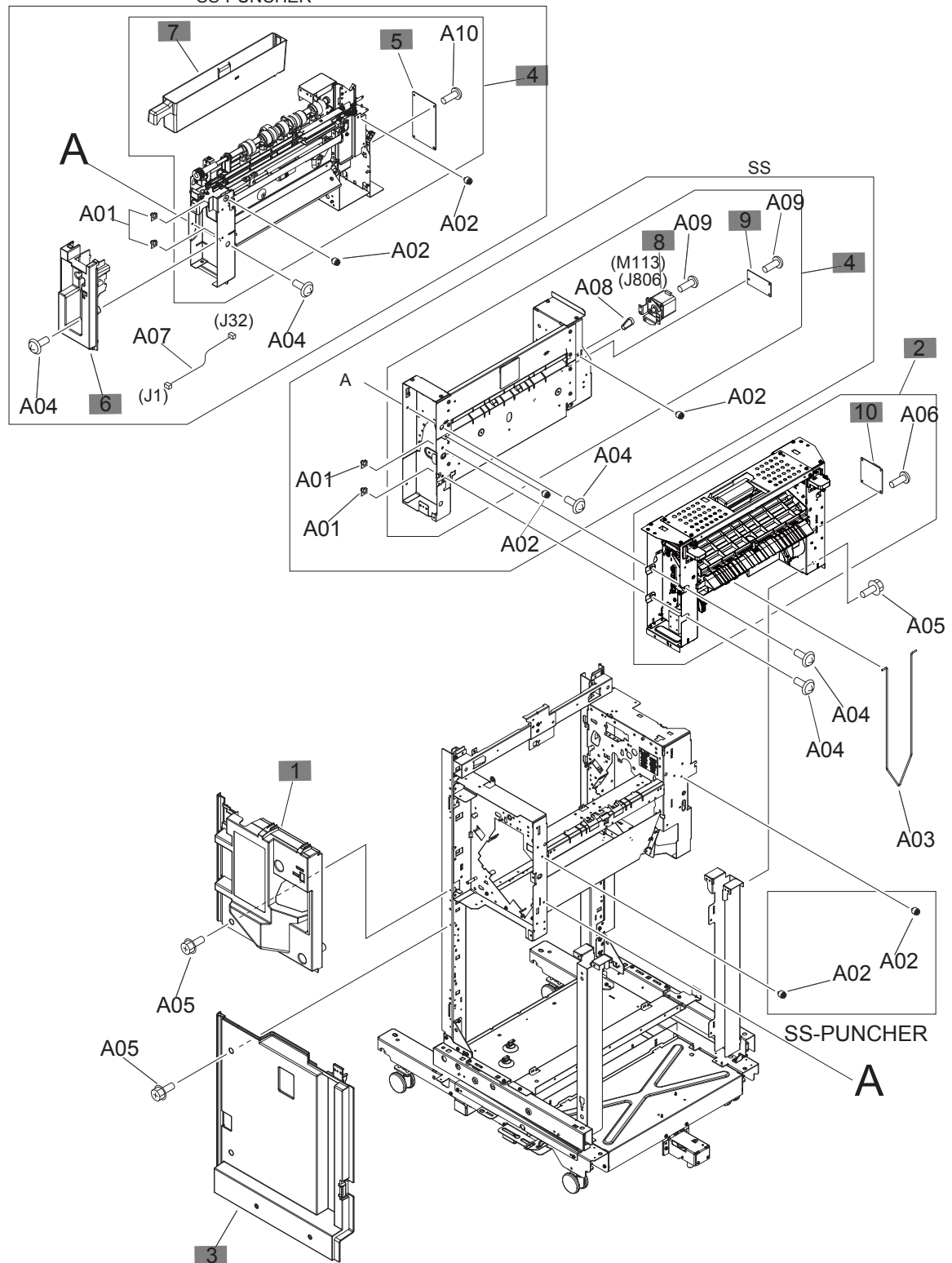


**Table 2-28 Finisher main body (3 of 3)**

| Ref | Description                      | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|----------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Stack ejection motor assembly    | 4G3-0769-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Paper face sensor assembly       | 4G3-0934-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Main controller PCB assembly     | RM2-7595-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Clutch, electromagnetic          | 4H3-0370-000CN | 2   |
| 5   | Return roller assembly           | FM0-2403-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Paper detect holder assembly, up | FM0-2429-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Pressure roller assembly         | FM2-0730-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Shutter H.P. sensor assembly     | FM2-1401-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Press motor assembly             | FM2-1409-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Sensor/switch assembly           | FM2-1417-000CN | 1   |
| 11  | Swing guide assembly             | RM2-5307-000CN | 1   |
| 12  | Interface cable assembly         | RM2-5539-000CN | 1   |
| A03 | Bushing                          | FS5-1805-000CN | 3   |
| A04 | Washer                           | FS5-6488-000CN | 2   |
| A08 | Pulley, 20T                      | FU5-3086-000CN | 2   |
| A12 | Pin, dowel                       | XD3-2200-102CN | 3   |
| A13 | E-ring                           | XD9-0136-000CN | 9   |
| A17 | Bearing, ball MF 106ZZS          | XG9-0520-000CN | 2   |

## Stapler/stacker finisher main body

Figure 2-24 Stapler/stacker finisher main body  
SS-PUNCHER

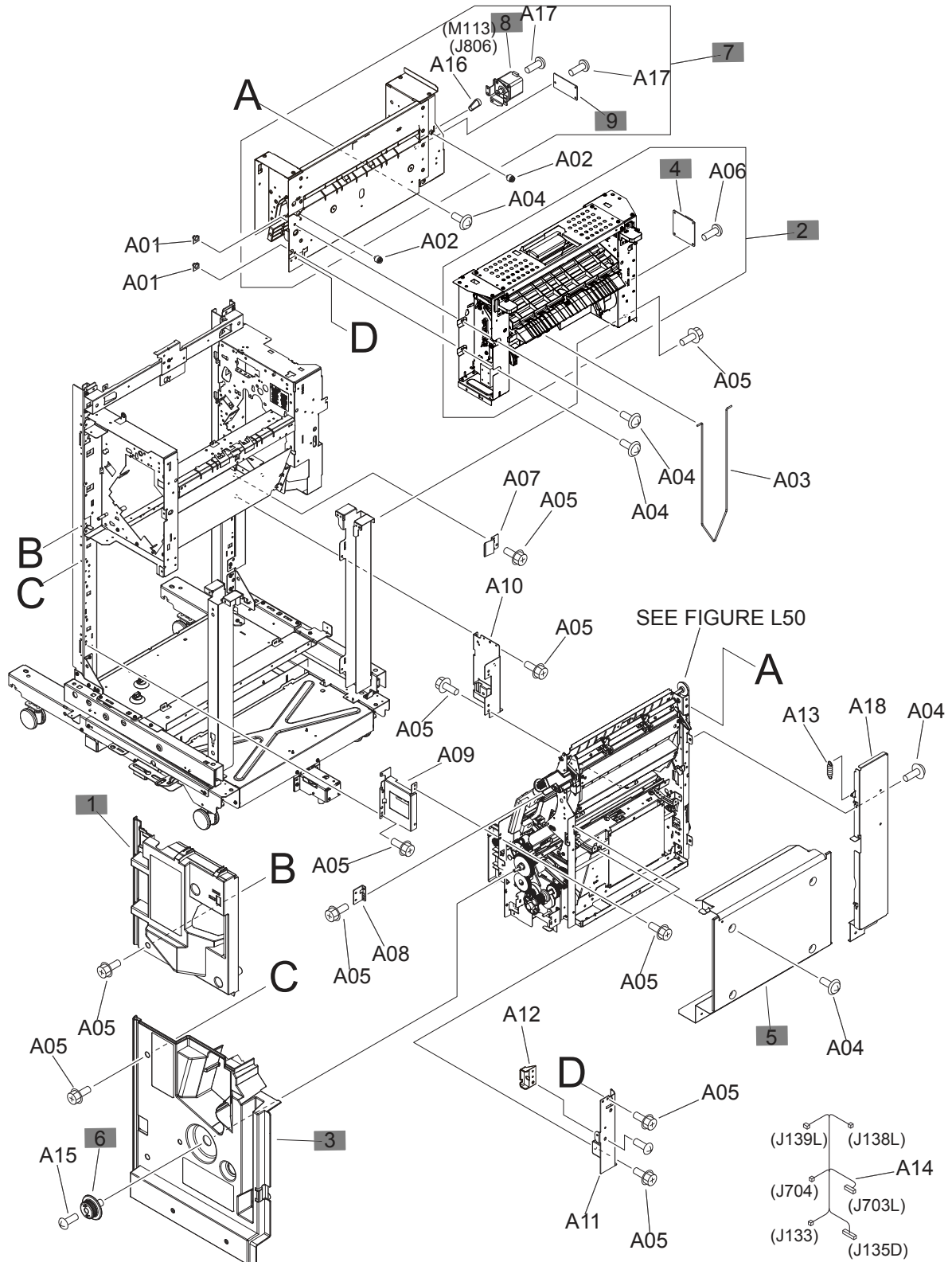


**Table 2-29 Stapler/stacker finisher main body**

| Ref | Description                                                | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Inner cover upper assembly                                 | RM2-5305-000CN | 1   |
| 2   | Reverse assembly                                           | RM2-5490-000CN | 1   |
| 3   | Cover, inner, lower                                        | RC4-2526-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Paper pass assembly                                        | RM2-5334-000CN | 2   |
| 4   | Punch hole assembly (stapler/stacker 2/3 hole punch)       | RM2-5455-000CN | 2   |
| 4   | Punch hole assembly stapler/stacker 3/4 hole punch         | RM2-5456-000CN | 2   |
| 5   | Punch controller PCB assembly                              | RM2-7742-000CN | 1   |
| 6   | Punch inner cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | RM2-5516-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Box, dust (stapler/stacker, hole puncher)                  | RL2-1249-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Saddle motor assembly (stapler/stacker)                    | FM2-0737-000CN | 1   |
| 9   | Driver PCA assembly (stapler/stacker)                      | RM2-7590-000CN | 1   |
| 10  | Reverse driver PCA assembly                                | RM2-7597-000CN | 1   |

## Booklet maker finisher main body

Figure 2-25 Booklet maker finisher main body

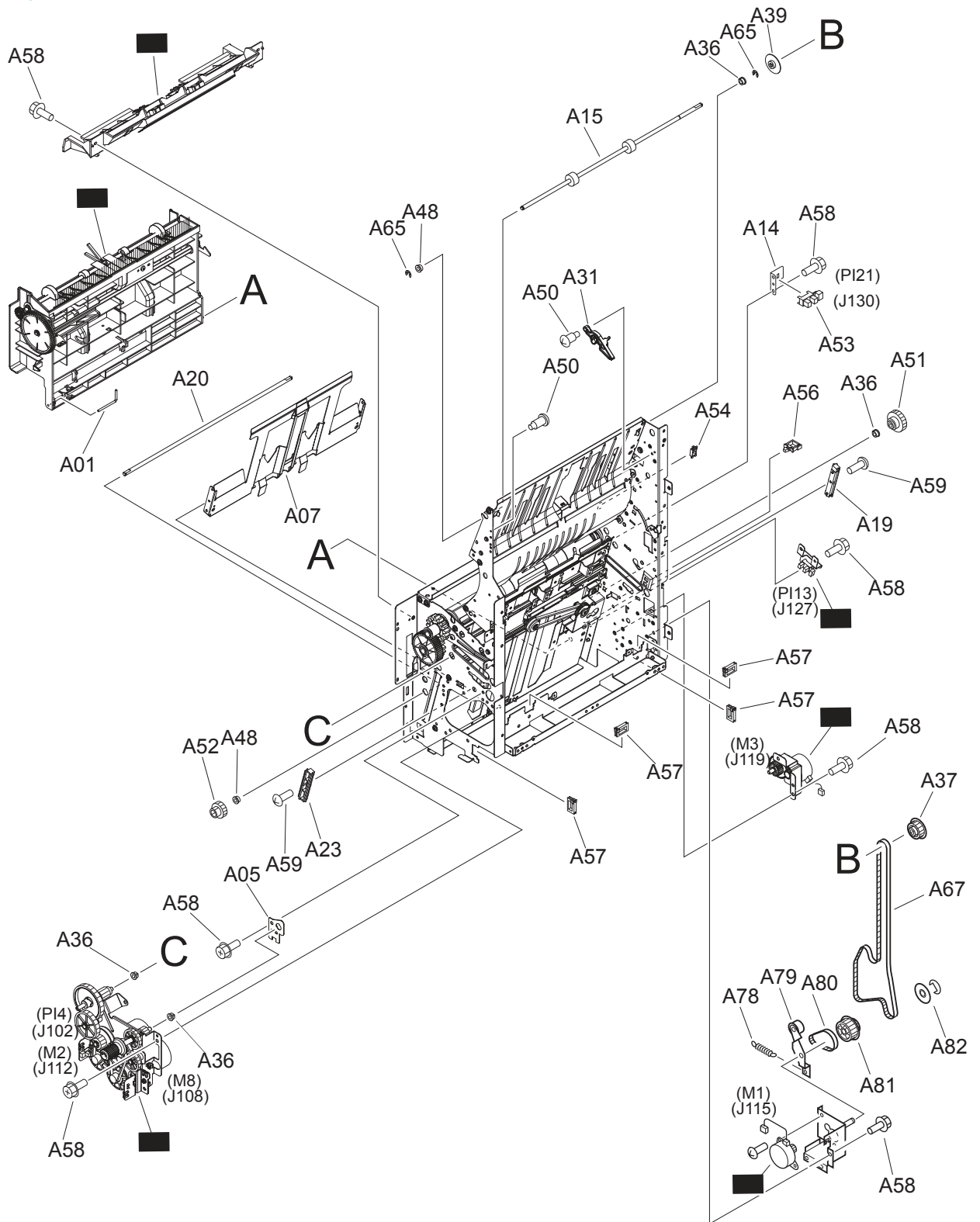


**Table 2-30** Booklet maker finisher main body

| Ref | Description                  | Part number    | Qty |
|-----|------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1   | Inner cover upper assembly   | RM2-5305-000   | 1   |
| 2   | Reverse assembly             | RM2-5490-000   | 1   |
| 3   | Cover, inner, lower assembly | RM2-5479-000CN | 1   |
| 4   | Reverse driver PCA assembly  | RM2-7597-000   | 2   |
| 5   | Cover, right                 | FB3-7958-040CN | 1   |
| 6   | Knob                         | FB3-7881-000CN | 1   |
| 7   | Saddle paper feed assembly   | RM2-5351-000CN | 1   |
| 8   | Saddle motor assembly        | FM2-0737-000   | 1   |
| 9   | Driver PCA assembly          | RM2-7590-000   | 1   |

## Booklet maker saddle assembly

Figure 2-26 Booklet maker saddle assembly (1 of 3)





[illegible]

This diagram is an exploded view of a mechanical assembly, likely a printer or copier, showing various components and their assembly points. The parts are labeled with alphanumeric codes:

- Top Section:** Includes components like A18, A30, A63, A58, A49, (SL1) (J118), A58, A74, (SL2) (J117), A58, A68, A75, (SL4) (J116), A66, A47, A03, A35, A29, A40, A61, A35, A66, A47, A03, A64, A47, A66, A46, A43, A53, A77, A43, A12, A13, A58, A13, A44, A76, A38, A65, A59, and a bracket labeled 7.
- Bottom Section:** Includes components like A18, A30, A63, A58, A49, (SL1) (J118), A58, A74, (SL2) (J117), A58, A68, A75, (SL4) (J116), A66, A47, A03, A35, A29, A40, A61, A35, A66, A47, A03, A64, A47, A66, A46, A43, A53, A77, A43, A12, A13, A58, A13, A44, A76, A38, A65, A59, and a bracket labeled 5.
- Assembly Points:** Indicated by dashed lines and labels such as (PI18) (PI19) (PI20), (J304), (J123), (PI14) (J128), and (J123).
- Other Labels:** A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z, AA, AB, AC, AD, AE, AF, AG, AH, AI, AJ, AK, AL, AM, AN, AO, AP, AQ, AR, AS, AT, AU, AV, AW, AX, AY, AZ, BA, BB, BC, BD, BE, BF, BG, BH, BI, BJ, BK, BL, BM, BN, BO, BP, BQ, BR, BS, BT, BU, BV, BW, BX, BY, BZ, CA, CB, CC, CD, CE, CF, CG, CH, CI, CJ, CK, CL, CM, CN, CO, CP, CQ, CR, CS, CT, CU, CV, CW, CX, CY, CZ, DA, DB, DC, DD, DE, DF, DG, DH, DI, DJ, DK, DL, DM, DN, DO, DP, DQ, DR, DS, DT, DU, DV, DW, DX, DY, DZ, EA, EB, EC, ED, EE, EF, EG, EH, EI, EJ, EK, EL, EM, EN, EO, EP, EQ, ER, ES, ET, EU, EV, EW, EX, EY, EZ, FA, FB, FC, FD, FE, FF, FG, FH, FI, FJ, FK, FL, FM, FN, FO, FP, FQ, FR, FS, FT, FU, FV, FW, FX, FY, FZ, GA, GB, GC, GD, GE, GF, GG, GH, GI, GJ, GK, GL, GM, GN, GO, GP, GQ, GR, GS, GT, GU, GV, GW, GX, GY, GZ, HA, HB, HC, HD, HE, HF, HG, HH, HI, HJ, HK, HL, HM, HN, HO, HP, HQ, HR, HS, HT, HU, HV, HW, HX, HY, HZ, IA, IB, IC, ID, IE, IF, IG, IH, II, IJ, IK, IL, IM, IN, IO, IP, IQ, IR, IS, IT, IU, IV, IW, IX, IY, IZ, JA, JB, JC, JD, JE, JF, JG, JH, JI, JJ, JK, JL, JM, JN, JO, JP, JQ, JR, JS, JT, JU, JV, JW, JX, JY, JZ, KA, KB, KC, KD, KE, KF, KG, KH, KI, KJ, KK, KL, KM, KN, KO, KP, KQ, KR, KS, KT, KU, KV, KW, KX, KY, KZ, LA, LB, LC, LD, LE, LF, LG, LH, LI, LJ, LK, LL, LM, LN, LO, LP, LQ, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, LW, LX, LY, LZ, MA, MB, MC, MD, ME, MF, MG, MH, MI, MJ, MK, ML, MM, MN, MO, MP, MQ, MR, MS, MT, MU, MV, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NB, NC, ND, NE, NF, NG, NH, NI, NJ, NK, NL, NM, NN, NO, NP, NQ, NR, NS, NT, NU, NV, NW, NX, NY, NZ, OA, OB, OC, OD, OE, OF, OG, OH, OI, OJ, OK, OL, OM, ON, OO, OP, OQ, OR, OS, OT, OU, OV, OW, OX, OY, OZ, PA, PB, PC, PD, PE, PF, PG, PH, PI, PJ, PK, PL, PM, PN, PO, PP, PQ, PR, PS, PT, PU, PV, PW, PX, PY, PZ, QA, QB, QC, QD, QE, QF, QG, QH, QI, QJ, QK, QL, QM, QN, QO, QP, QQ, QR, QS, QT, QU, QV, QW, QX, QY, QZ, RA, RB, RC, RD, RE, RF, RG, RH, RI, RJ, RK, RL, RM, RN, RO, RP, RQ, RR, RS, RT, RU, RV, RW, RX, RY, RZ, SA, SB, SC, SD, SE, SF, SG, SH, SI, SJ, SK, SL, SM, SN, SO, SP, SQ, SR, SS, ST, SU, SV, SW, SX, SY, SZ, TA, TB, TC, TD, TE, TF, TG, TH, TI, TJ, TK, TL, TM, TN, TO, TP, TQ, TR, TS, TT, TU, TV, TW, TX, TY, TZ, UA, UB, UC, UD, UE, UF, UG, UH, UI, UJ, UK, UL, UM, UN, UO, UP, UQ, UR, US, UT, UU, UV, UW, UX, UY, UZ, VA, VB, VC, VD, VE, VF, VG, VH, VI, VJ, VK, VL, VM, VN, VO, VP, VQ, VR, VS, VT, VU, VV, VW, VX, VY, VZ, WA, WB, WC, WD, WE, WF, WG, WH, WI, WJ, WK, WL, WM, WN, WO, WP, WQ, WR, WS, WT, WU, WV, WW, WX, WY, WZ, XA, XB, XC, XD, XE, XF, XG, XH, XI, XJ, XK, XL, XM, XN, XO, XP, XQ, XR, XS, XT, XU, XV, XW, XX, XY, XZ, YA, YB, YC, YD, YE, YF, YG, YH, YI, YJ, YK, YL, YM, YN, YO, YP, YQ, YR, YS, YT, YU, YV, YW, YX, YY, YZ, ZA, ZB, ZC, ZD, ZE, ZF, ZG, ZH, ZI, ZJ, ZK, ZL, ZM, ZN, ZO, ZP, ZQ, ZR, ZS, ZT, ZU, ZV, ZW, ZX, ZY, ZZ.

**Table 2-31 Booklet maker saddle assembly**

| Ref       | Description                     | Part number    | Qty |
|-----------|---------------------------------|----------------|-----|
| 1         | Inner side plate assembly       | 4G3-0671-000CN | 1   |
| 2         | Guide motor assembly            | 4G3-0725-000CN | 1   |
| 3         | Saddle feed motor assembly      | 4H3-0369-000CN | 1   |
| 4         | Saddle guide assembly           | 4G3-1940-000CN | 2   |
| 5         | Saddle stapler assembly         | 4G3-2721-000CN | 1   |
| 6         | Motor mount assembly            | FM0-1686-000CN | 1   |
| 7         | Rear end sensor assembly        | FM2-0763-000CN | 1   |
| 8         | Guide sensor assembly           | FM6-2283-000CN | 1   |
| 9         | Saddle paper delivery assembly  | RM2-5332-000CN | 1   |
| 10        | Upper delivery guide assembly   | RM2-5349-000CN | 1   |
| 11        | Delivery switch mount assembly  | RM2-5633-000CN | 1   |
| 12        | Saddle controller PCA assembly  | RM2-7604-000CN | 1   |
| Not shown | Assembly, E-ring saddle stapler | XD9-0136-000CN | 1   |

# Alphabetical parts list

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list**

| Description                                   | Part number    | Table and page                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Adjust guide H.P. sensor assembly             | FM2-1393-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Assembly, ADF hinge (M830)                    | A8T68-60025    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Assembly, E-ring saddle stapler               | XD9-0136-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>             |
| Assist sensor assembly                        | FM2-1396-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Auto close assembly                           | RM1-9757-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>              |
| Auto close assembly                           | RM1-8880-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>          |
| Background selector for backside scan (M830)  | A8T68-60021    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a> |
| Bearing, ball MF 106ZZS                       | XG9-0520-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Box, dust (stapler/stacker, hole puncher)     | RL2-1249-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a>        |
| Bushing                                       | FS5-1805-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Cable, flexible flat                          | RK2-5013-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>              |
| Cable, power, integrated scan assembly (M830) | CF367-60127    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Cable, staple connecting                      | 4G3-1777-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>               |
| Cage, back, SCB cover (M830)                  | CF367-00018    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Cartridge contact assembly                    | RM1-9758-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>              |
| Cartridge fan assembly                        | RM1-9768-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>              |
| Cartridge lifter assembly                     | RM1-9775-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>              |
| Cassette assembly                             | RM1-9726-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>              |
| Clip, ISA cable (M830)                        | 5851-4725      | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Clutch, electromagnetic                       | 4H3-0370-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                        | Part number    | Table and page                                                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connector                          | VS17258-012CN  | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Control lever assembly             | RG5-5746-030CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>                  |
| Controller PCA assembly            | RM2-0567-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>              |
| Cooling unit assembly              | RM1-9720-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| Cover, ADF roller (M830)           | A8T68-40072    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a>     |
| Cover, back, scanner (M830)        | CF368-60142    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| Cover, control panel access (M830) | 5042-9118      | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Cover, corner, left front          | RC3-3958-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, corner, left rear           | RC3-3952-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, corner, right front         | RC3-3957-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, corner, right rear          | RC3-4715-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>              |
| Cover, foot, front                 | RM2-6056-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                        |
| Cover, foot, front                 | RM2-6056-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                          |
| Cover, foot, rear                  | RM2-6057-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                        |
| Cover, foot, rear                  | RM2-6057-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                          |
| Cover, front, scanner (M830)       | CF367-40002    | <a href="#">Scanner assemblies on page 571</a>                            |
| Cover, hip (M806)                  | RC3-3948-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, HIP (M830)                  | 5851-5361      | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Cover, inner, lower                | RC4-2526-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a>            |
| Cover, inner, lower assembly       | RM2-5479-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>              |
| Cover, left                        | RC3-4719-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>              |
| Cover, left lower                  | RC3-3949-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, left upper (M806)           | RC3-3979-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                        | Part number    | Table and page                                                        |
|------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cover, left upper (M830)           | RC3-4589-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                    |
| Cover, left, scanner (M830)        | CF367-40003    | <a href="#">Scanner assemblies on page 571</a>                        |
| Cover, open/close stepped          | RC4-2449-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Cover, open/close stepped          | RC4-2449-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Cover, operation panel, top (M806) | RC3-3947-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                    |
| Cover, pre-reverse                 | RC4-2519-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Cover, pre-reverse                 | RC4-2519-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Cover, rear                        | RC3-4718-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>          |
| Cover, rear                        | RC4-2444-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Cover, rear                        | RC4-2444-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Cover, rear, left ADF (M830)       | A8T68-40067    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Cover, rear, right ADF (M830)      | A8T68-40066    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Cover, reverse, rear               | RC4-2521-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Cover, reverse, rear               | RC4-2521-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Cover, reverse, upper              | RC4-2520-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Cover, reverse, upper              | RC4-2520-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Cover, right                       | RC4-2565-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Cover, right                       | RC4-2565-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Cover, right                       | FB3-7958-040CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>          |
| Cover, right center                | RC3-4716-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>          |
| Cover, right lower                 | RC3-3956-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                    |
| Cover, right lower                 | RC3-4717-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>          |
| Cover, right, scanner (M830)       | CF367-40004    | <a href="#">Scanner assemblies on page 571</a>                        |

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                           | Part number    | Table and page                                                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cover, saddle delivery inner          | RC4-2471-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                          |
| Cover, stepped, lower                 | RC4-2447-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                        |
| Cover, stepped, lower                 | RC4-2447-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                          |
| Cover, stepped, upper                 | RC4-2448-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                        |
| Cover, stepped, upper                 | RC4-2448-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                          |
| Cover, top left (M806)                | RC3-3946-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, top right (M806)               | RC3-3945-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, tray cable                     | RC4-2462-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                        |
| Cover, tray cable                     | RC4-2462-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                          |
| Cover, USB (M830)                     | 5851-5360      | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Cover, right rear corner, lower       | RC3-3954-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Cover, right rear corner, upper       | RC3-3955-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Crossing drive assembly               | RM1-9582-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>              |
| Crossing paper feed assembly          | RM1-9883-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>              |
| DC controller PCA assembly            | RM2-0540-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Delivery switch mount assembly        | RM2-5633-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| Dial, jam dispose                     | RC3-4269-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>                  |
| Driver PCA assembly                   | RM2-0558-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Driver PCA assembly                   | RM2-7590-000   | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>              |
| Driver PCA assembly (stapler/stacker) | RM2-7590-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a>            |
| Drum drive assembly                   | RM1-9784-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>                  |
| E-ring                                | XD9-0136-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>                   |
| Entrance sensor bracket assembly      | FM2-0717-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                                     | Part number    | Table and page                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Entrance sensor flag assembly                   | RM2-5849-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Entrance upper guide assembly (booklet maker)   | RM2-6024-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Entrance upper guide assembly (stapler stacker) | FM0-1683-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Face-down paper delivery assembly (M806)        | RM1-9732-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>              |
| Fan                                             | RK2-5004-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>              |
| Fan                                             | RK2-4997-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>              |
| Fixing bias contact assembly                    | RM1-9762-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>              |
| Flag, paper presence (M830)                     | A8T68-40033    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Flag, paper sensing sensor                      | FC5-5004-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Front cover assembly                            | RM2-5320-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Front cover assembly                            | RM2-5320-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Front inner cover assembly                      | RM1-9760-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>              |
| Front left lower cover assembly                 | RM1-9722-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                    |
| Fusing drive assembly                           | RM1-9788-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>              |
| Guide motor assembly                            | 4G3-0725-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>             |
| Guide sensor assembly                           | FM6-2283-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>             |
| Guide, cartridge, front                         | RC3-3968-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>              |
| Guide, left lower                               | RC4-2467-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Guide, wall, upper                              | RC4-2455-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Guide, wall, upper                              | RC4-2455-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Handle, lock release                            | RC4-2584-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Handle, lock release                            | RC4-2584-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |



**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                                                 | Part number    | Table and page                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Height wall center assembly                                 | RM2-5852-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                          |
| Height wall lower assembly                                  | RM2-5853-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                        |
| High voltage power supply                                   | RM1-9767-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| ICB PCA assembly (M806)                                     | RM1-9764-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| ICB PCA assembly (M830)                                     | RM1-9765-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Inner cover upper assembly                                  | RM2-5305-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a>            |
| Inner cover upper assembly                                  | RM2-5305-000   | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>              |
| Inner side plate assembly                                   | 4G3-0671-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| Interface cable assembly                                    | RM2-5539-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>                   |
| Interlock assembly                                          | RM1-9724-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| Kit, ADF Mylar, A3 (M930)                                   | 5851-5857      | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Kit, ADF roller (M830)                                      | C1P70-67901    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a>     |
| Kit, ADF separation pad spring (M830)                       | 5851-5855      | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a>     |
| Kit, ADF whole unit, A3 (includes white backing kit) (M830) | CF367-67920    | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Kit, control panel (without keyboard) (M830)                | 5851-5952      | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Kit, front door assembly                                    | CF367-67909    | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Kit, fuser assembly, 110V                                   | CF367-67905    | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| Kit, fuser assembly, 220V                                   | CF367-67906    | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| Kit, HCI left tray                                          | CZ244-67904    | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>              |
| Kit, HCI right tray                                         | CZ244-67903    | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>              |

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                                                 | Part number    | Table and page                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Kit, scanner whole unit (includes white backing kit) (M830) | CF367-67919    | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Kit, transfer roller assembly                               | CF367-67907    | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| Kit, tray 2 roller                                          | CF367-67903    | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>                  |
| Kit, tray 2-X roller                                        | CF367-67903    | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Kit, tray 2-x roller                                        | CF367-67903    | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>              |
| Kit, white backing, A3 (M830)                               | 5851-5864      | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| Knob                                                        | FB3-7881-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>              |
| Laser scanner assembly                                      | RM2-5207-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>                  |
| Left door assembly                                          | RM1-9736-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Lid, jam dispose dial                                       | RC4-2004-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>                  |
| Lift plate assembly (M830)                                  | A8T68-60006    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| Lifter drive assembly                                       | RM1-8879-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>              |
| Limiter, torque                                             | RB2-5759-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>                  |
| Low-voltage power supply, 110-127V (M806)                   | RM2-0544-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Low-voltage power supply, 110-127V (M830)                   | RM2-0548-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Low-voltage power supply, 220-240V (M806)                   | RM2-0545-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Low-voltage power supply, 220-240V (M830)                   | RM2-0549-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>                  |
| Main controller PCB assembly                                | RM2-7595-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>                   |
| Motor mount assembly                                        | FM0-1686-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| Motor, stepping, DC                                         | RK2-1331-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>              |
| Multi-purpose tray (Tray 1) assembly                        | RM1-9774-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| Operation tray assembly                                     | RM2-5309-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                                          | Part number    | Table and page                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Option connector assembly                            | RM1-9778-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>              |
| Paper delivery fan assembly (M830)                   | RM1-9734-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>              |
| Paper detect holder assembly, up                     | FM0-2429-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Paper face sensor assembly                           | 4G3-0934-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Paper feed motor assembly                            | FM0-1889-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Paper pass assembly                                  | RM2-5334-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a>        |
| Paper path connection assembly                       | RG5-6227-040CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>          |
| Paper pick-up assembly                               | RM2-0708-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>          |
| Paper pick-up drive assembly                         | RM1-9581-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>          |
| Paper pickup assembly                                | RM1-9745-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>              |
| Paper pickup paper feed assembly                     | RM2-0709-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>          |
| Paper remnant detect assembly                        | RM1-9579-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>          |
| Photo interrupter tlp1242                            | WG8-5593-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Photosensor with connector (M830)                    | CC355-80014    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Pin, dowel                                           | XD3-2200-102CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Power switch assembly                                | RM1-9723-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>              |
| Press motor assembly                                 | FM2-1409-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Pressure roller assembly                             | FM2-0730-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Pulley, 20T                                          | FU5-3086-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Punch controller PCB assembly                        | RM2-7742-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a>        |
| Punch hole assembly (stapler/stacker 2/3 hole punch) | RM2-5455-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a>        |

**Table 2-32 Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

| Description                                                | Part number    | Table and page                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Punch hole assembly stapler/stacker 3/4 hole punch         | RM2-5456-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| Punch inner cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | RM2-5516-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| Punch upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | RM2-5515-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| Rack, rail                                                 | FC5-5436-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>        |
| Rear cover assembly                                        | RM1-9787-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| Rear end sensor assembly                                   | FM2-0763-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| Registration assembly                                      | RM1-9742-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>       |
| Return roller assembly                                     | FM0-2403-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| Reverse assembly                                           | RM2-5490-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| Reverse assembly                                           | RM2-5490-000   | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| Reverse driver PCA assembly                                | RM2-7597-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| Reverse driver PCA assembly                                | RM2-7597-000   | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| Right door assembly                                        | RM1-9769-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| Right door assembly                                        | RM1-9577-000CN | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>   |
| Right door switch assembly                                 | RM1-9725-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>       |
| Roller cover assembly                                      | RM1-9809-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| Saddle controller PCA assembly                             | RM2-7604-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| Saddle feed motor assembly                                 | 4H3-0369-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| Saddle guide assembly                                      | 4G3-1940-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| Saddle motor assembly                                      | FM2-0737-000   | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| Saddle motor assembly (stapler/stacker)                    | FM2-0737-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| Saddle paper delivery assembly                             | RM2-5332-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| Saddle paper feed assembly                                 | RM2-5351-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |

**Table 2-32** Alphabetical parts list (continued)

| Description                       | Part number    | Table and page                                                        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Saddle stapler assembly           | 4G3-2721-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>             |
| Saddle tray assembly              | RM2-5318-000   | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Scanner control board (SCB; M830) | CF367-60002    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Sensor unit, loop                 | RM1-9707-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>              |
| Sensor/switch assembly            | FM2-1417-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Shutter H.P. sensor assembly      | FM2-1401-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Stack ejection motor assembly     | 4G3-0769-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Stack lower tray assembly         | RM2-5339-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>               |
| Stack upper tray assembly         | RM2-5324-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>               |
| Stack wall upper assembly         | RM2-5343-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>                    |
| Stack wall upper assembly         | RM2-5343-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>                      |
| Staple assembly                   | 4G3-0938-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>               |
| Staple sub assembly               | 4G3-0939-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>               |
| Stopper, front (M830)             | A8T68-40042    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Stopper, load-front (M830)        | A8T68-40034    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Stopper, load-rear (M830)         | A8T68-40035    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Stopper, rear (M830)              | A8T68-40042    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a> |
| Swing guide assembly              | RM2-5307-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>               |
| Swing H.P. sensor assembly        | 4G3-1564-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>               |
| Tag assembly                      | RM1-9759-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>              |
| Transfer holder assembly          | RM1-9706-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>              |

**Table 2-32** Alphabetical parts list (continued)

| Description                                          | Part number    | Table and page                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Transfer paper feed assembly                         | RM1-9705-000CN | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>  |
| Tray, face-up                                        | RC3-3985-000CN | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                        |
| Upper cover assembly                                 | RM2-5322-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>          |
| Upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker)               | RM2-5322-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>        |
| Upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | RM2-5535-000CN | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>        |
| Upper cover lock assembly                            | 4G3-0210-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>   |
| Upper cross-member assembly                          | FM0-1882-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>   |
| Upper delivery guide assembly                        | RM2-5349-000CN | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a> |
| Washer                                               | FS5-6488-000CN | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>   |

# Numerical parts list

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list**

| Part number    | Description                           | Table and page                                                            |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4G3-0210-000CN | Upper cover lock assembly             | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |
| 4G3-0671-000CN | Inner side plate assembly             | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| 4G3-0725-000CN | Guide motor assembly                  | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| 4G3-0769-000CN | Stack ejection motor assembly         | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>                   |
| 4G3-0934-000CN | Paper face sensor assembly            | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>                   |
| 4G3-0938-000CN | Staple assembly                       | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>                   |
| 4G3-0939-000CN | Staple sub assembly                   | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>                   |
| 4G3-1564-000CN | Swing H.P. sensor assembly            | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |
| 4G3-1777-000CN | Cable, staple connecting              | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>                   |
| 4G3-1940-000CN | Saddle guide assembly                 | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| 4G3-2721-000CN | Saddle stapler assembly               | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| 4H3-0369-000CN | Saddle feed motor assembly            | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| 4H3-0370-000CN | Clutch, electromagnetic               | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>                   |
| 5042-9118      | Cover, control panel access (M830)    | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| 5851-4725      | Clip, ISA cable (M830)                | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| 5851-5360      | Cover, USB (M830)                     | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| 5851-5361      | Cover, HIP (M830)                     | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| 5851-5855      | Kit, ADF separation pad spring (M830) | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a>     |
| 5851-5857      | Kit, ADF Mylar, A3 (M930)             | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number | Description                                   | Table and page                                                            |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5851-5864   | Kit, white backing, A3 (M830)                 | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| 5851-5952   | Kit, control panel (without keyboard) (M830)  | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| A8T68-40033 | Flag, paper presence (M830)                   | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-40034 | Stopper, load-front (M830)                    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-40035 | Stopper, load-rear (M830)                     | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-40042 | Stopper, front (M830)                         | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-40042 | Stopper, rear (M830)                          | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-40066 | Cover, rear, right ADF (M830)                 | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-40067 | Cover, rear, left ADF (M830)                  | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-40072 | Cover, ADF roller (M830)                      | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a>     |
| A8T68-60006 | Lift plate assembly (M830)                    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| A8T68-60021 | Background selector for backside scan (M830)  | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a>     |
| A8T68-60025 | Assembly, ADF hinge (M830)                    | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| C1P70-67901 | Kit, ADF roller (M830)                        | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (2 of 2; M830) on page 569</a>     |
| CC355-80014 | Photosensor with connector (M830)             | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| CF367-00018 | Cage, back, SCB cover (M830)                  | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| CF367-40002 | Cover, front, scanner (M830)                  | <a href="#">Scanner assemblies on page 571</a>                            |
| CF367-40003 | Cover, left, scanner (M830)                   | <a href="#">Scanner assemblies on page 571</a>                            |
| CF367-40004 | Cover, right, scanner (M830)                  | <a href="#">Scanner assemblies on page 571</a>                            |
| CF367-60002 | Scanner control board (SCB; M830)             | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| CF367-60127 | Cable, power, integrated scan assembly (M830) | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |



**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                                                 | Table and page                                                            |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CF367-67903    | Kit, tray 2-X roller                                        | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| CF367-67903    | Kit, tray 2 roller                                          | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>                  |
| CF367-67903    | Kit, tray 2-x roller                                        | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>              |
| CF367-67905    | Kit, fuser assembly, 110V                                   | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| CF367-67906    | Kit, fuser assembly, 220V                                   | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| CF367-67907    | Kit, transfer roller assembly                               | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>                  |
| CF367-67909    | Kit, front door assembly                                    | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                                        |
| CF367-67919    | Kit, scanner whole unit (includes white backing kit) (M830) | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| CF367-67920    | Kit, ADF whole unit, A3 (includes white backing kit) (M830) | <a href="#">Document feeder and scanner assemblies (M830) on page 565</a> |
| CF368-60142    | Cover, back, scanner (M830)                                 | <a href="#">Document feeder assemblies (1 of 2; M830) on page 567</a>     |
| CZ244-67903    | Kit, HCI right tray                                         | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>              |
| CZ244-67904    | Kit, HCI left tray                                          | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>              |
| FB3-7881-000CN | Knob                                                        | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>              |
| FB3-7958-040CN | Cover, right                                                | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>              |
| FC5-5004-000CN | Flag, paper sensing sensor                                  | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |
| FC5-5436-000CN | Rack, rail                                                  | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>                   |
| FM0-1683-000CN | Entrance upper guide assembly (stapler stacker)             | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |
| FM0-1686-000CN | Motor mount assembly                                        | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>                 |
| FM0-1882-000CN | Upper cross-member assembly                                 | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |
| FM0-1889-000CN | Paper feed motor assembly                                   | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>                   |
| FM0-2403-000CN | Return roller assembly                                      | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>                   |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                             | Table and page                                                 |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| FM0-2429-000CN | Paper detect holder assembly, up        | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| FM2-0717-000CN | Entrance sensor bracket assembly        | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>        |
| FM2-0730-000CN | Pressure roller assembly                | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| FM2-0737-000   | Saddle motor assembly                   | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| FM2-0737-000CN | Saddle motor assembly (stapler/stacker) | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| FM2-0763-000CN | Rear end sensor assembly                | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| FM2-1393-000CN | Adjust guide H.P. sensor assembly       | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>        |
| FM2-1396-000CN | Assist sensor assembly                  | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>        |
| FM2-1401-000CN | Shutter H.P. sensor assembly            | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| FM2-1409-000CN | Press motor assembly                    | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| FM2-1417-000CN | Sensor/switch assembly                  | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| FM6-2283-000CN | Guide sensor assembly                   | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| FS5-1805-000CN | Bushing                                 | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| FS5-6488-000CN | Washer                                  | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| FU5-3086-000CN | Pulley, 20T                             | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| RB2-5759-000CN | Limiter, torque                         | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>       |
| RC3-3945-000CN | Cover, top right (M806)                 | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3946-000CN | Cover, top left (M806)                  | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3947-000CN | Cover, operation panel, top (M806)      | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3948-000CN | Cover, hip (M806)                       | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3949-000CN | Cover, left lower                       | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3952-000CN | Cover, corner, left rear                | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3954-000CN | Cover, right rear corner, lower         | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3955-000CN | Cover, right rear corner, upper         | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RC3-3956-000CN | Cover, right lower                      | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                | Table and page                                               |
|----------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| RC3-3957-000CN | Cover, corner, right front | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RC3-3958-000CN | Cover, corner, left front  | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RC3-3968-000CN | Guide, cartridge, front    | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>     |
| RC3-3979-000CN | Cover, left upper (M806)   | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RC3-3985-000CN | Tray, face-up              | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RC3-4269-000CN | Dial, jam dispose          | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>     |
| RC3-4589-000CN | Cover, left upper (M830)   | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RC3-4715-000CN | Cover, corner, right rear  | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a> |
| RC3-4716-000CN | Cover, right center        | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a> |
| RC3-4717-000CN | Cover, right lower         | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a> |
| RC3-4718-000CN | Cover, rear                | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a> |
| RC3-4719-000CN | Cover, left                | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a> |
| RC4-2004-000CN | Lid, jam dispose dial      | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>     |
| RC4-2444-000CN | Cover, rear                | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>           |
| RC4-2444-000CN | Cover, rear                | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>             |
| RC4-2447-000CN | Cover, stepped, lower      | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>           |
| RC4-2447-000CN | Cover, stepped, lower      | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>             |
| RC4-2448-000CN | Cover, stepped, upper      | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>           |
| RC4-2448-000CN | Cover, stepped, upper      | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>             |
| RC4-2449-000CN | Cover, open/close stepped  | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>           |
| RC4-2449-000CN | Cover, open/close stepped  | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>             |
| RC4-2455-000CN | Guide, wall, upper         | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>           |
| RC4-2455-000CN | Guide, wall, upper         | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>             |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                    | Table and page                                                 |
|----------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| RC4-2462-000CN | Cover, tray cable              | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RC4-2462-000CN | Cover, tray cable              | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RC4-2467-000CN | Guide, left lower              | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RC4-2471-000CN | Cover, saddle delivery inner   | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RC4-2519-000CN | Cover, pre-reverse             | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RC4-2519-000CN | Cover, pre-reverse             | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RC4-2520-000CN | Cover, reverse, upper          | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RC4-2520-000CN | Cover, reverse, upper          | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RC4-2521-000CN | Cover, reverse, rear           | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RC4-2521-000CN | Cover, reverse, rear           | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RC4-2526-000CN | Cover, inner, lower            | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RC4-2565-000CN | Cover, right                   | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RC4-2565-000CN | Cover, right                   | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RC4-2584-000CN | Handle, lock release           | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RC4-2584-000CN | Handle, lock release           | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RG5-5746-030CN | Control lever assembly         | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>       |
| RG5-6227-040CN | Paper path connection assembly | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>   |
| RK2-1331-000CN | Motor, stepping, DC            | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>   |
| RK2-4997-000CN | Fan                            | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>       |
| RK2-5004-000CN | Fan                            | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RK2-5013-000CN | Cable, flexible flat           | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>       |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                               | Table and page                                                 |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| RL2-1249-000CN | Box, dust (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM1-8879-000CN | Lifter drive assembly                     | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>   |
| RM1-8880-000CN | Auto close assembly                       | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>   |
| RM1-9577-000CN | Right door assembly                       | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 3) on page 583</a>   |
| RM1-9579-000CN | Paper remnant detect assembly             | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>   |
| RM1-9581-000CN | Paper pick-up drive assembly              | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>   |
| RM1-9582-000CN | Crossing drive assembly                   | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>   |
| RM1-9705-000CN | Transfer paper feed assembly              | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9706-000CN | Transfer holder assembly                  | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9707-000CN | Sensor unit, loop                         | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9720-000CN | Cooling unit assembly                     | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9722-000CN | Front left lower cover assembly           | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RM1-9723-000CN | Power switch assembly                     | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9724-000CN | Interlock assembly                        | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9725-000CN | Right door switch assembly                | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>       |
| RM1-9726-000CN | Cassette assembly                         | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>       |
| RM1-9732-000CN | Face-down paper delivery assembly (M806)  | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9734-000CN | Paper delivery fan assembly (M830)        | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>       |
| RM1-9736-000CN | Left door assembly                        | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                             |
| RM1-9742-000CN | Registration assembly                     | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>       |
| RM1-9745-000CN | Paper pickup assembly                     | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>       |
| RM1-9757-000CN | Auto close assembly                       | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>       |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                               | Table and page                                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| RM1-9758-000CN | Cartridge contact assembly                | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (2 of 4) on page 577</a>     |
| RM1-9759-000CN | Tag assembly                              | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>     |
| RM1-9760-000CN | Front inner cover assembly                | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>     |
| RM1-9762-000CN | Fixing bias contact assembly              | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>     |
| RM1-9764-000CN | ICB PCA assembly (M806)                   | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM1-9765-000CN | ICB PCA assembly (M830)                   | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM1-9767-000CN | High voltage power supply                 | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM1-9768-000CN | Cartridge fan assembly                    | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>     |
| RM1-9769-000CN | Right door assembly                       | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RM1-9774-000CN | Multi-purpose tray (Tray 1) assembly      | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RM1-9775-000CN | Cartridge lifter assembly                 | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>     |
| RM1-9778-000CN | Option connector assembly                 | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM1-9784-000CN | Drum drive assembly                       | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>     |
| RM1-9787-000CN | Rear cover assembly                       | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RM1-9788-000CN | Fusing drive assembly                     | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (1 of 4) on page 575</a>     |
| RM1-9809-000CN | Roller cover assembly                     | <a href="#">Covers on page 573</a>                           |
| RM1-9883-000CN | Crossing paper feed assembly              | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a> |
| RM2-0540-000CN | DC controller PCA assembly                | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM2-0544-000CN | Low-voltage power supply, 110-127V (M806) | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM2-0545-000CN | Low-voltage power supply, 220-240V (M806) | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM2-0548-000CN | Low-voltage power supply, 110-127V (M830) | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM2-0549-000CN | Low-voltage power supply, 220-240V (M830) | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |
| RM2-0558-000CN | Driver PCA assembly                       | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>     |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                            | Table and page                                                 |
|----------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| RM2-0567-000CN | Controller PCA assembly                | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (1 of 2) on page 585</a>   |
| RM2-0708-000CN | Paper pick-up assembly                 | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>   |
| RM2-0709-000CN | Paper pickup paper feed assembly       | <a href="#">3500-sheet paper feeder (2 of 2) on page 587</a>   |
| RM2-5207-000CN | Laser scanner assembly                 | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (3 of 4) on page 579</a>       |
| RM2-5305-000   | Inner cover upper assembly             | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| RM2-5305-000CN | Inner cover upper assembly             | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-5307-000CN | Swing guide assembly                   | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| RM2-5309-000CN | Operation tray assembly                | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>        |
| RM2-5318-000   | Saddle tray assembly                   | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RM2-5320-000CN | Front cover assembly                   | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-5320-000CN | Front cover assembly                   | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RM2-5322-000CN | Upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker) | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-5322-000CN | Upper cover assembly                   | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RM2-5324-000CN | Stack upper tray assembly              | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>        |
| RM2-5332-000CN | Saddle paper delivery assembly         | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| RM2-5334-000CN | Paper pass assembly                    | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-5339-000CN | Stack lower tray assembly              | <a href="#">Finisher main body (1 of 3) on page 593</a>        |
| RM2-5343-000CN | Stack wall upper assembly              | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-5343-000CN | Stack wall upper assembly              | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RM2-5349-000CN | Upper delivery guide assembly          | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| RM2-5351-000CN | Saddle paper feed assembly             | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |

**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                                                | Table and page                                                 |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| RM2-5455-000CN | Punch hole assembly (stapler/stacker 2/3 hole punch)       | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-5456-000CN | Punch hole assembly stapler/stacker 3/4 hole punch         | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-5479-000CN | Cover, inner, lower assembly                               | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| RM2-5490-000   | Reverse assembly                                           | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| RM2-5490-000CN | Reverse assembly                                           | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-5515-000CN | Punch upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-5516-000CN | Punch inner cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher) | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-5535-000CN | Upper cover assembly (stapler/stacker, hole puncher)       | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-5539-000CN | Interface cable assembly                                   | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| RM2-5633-000CN | Delivery switch mount assembly                             | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| RM2-5849-000CN | Entrance sensor flag assembly                              | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>        |
| RM2-5852-000CN | Height wall center assembly                                | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RM2-5853-000CN | Height wall lower assembly                                 | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-6024-000CN | Entrance upper guide assembly (booklet maker)              | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>        |
| RM2-6056-000CN | Cover, foot, front                                         | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-6056-000CN | Cover, foot, front                                         | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RM2-6057-000CN | Cover, foot, rear                                          | <a href="#">Stapler stacker covers on page 589</a>             |
| RM2-6057-000CN | Cover, foot, rear                                          | <a href="#">Booklet maker covers on page 591</a>               |
| RM2-7590-000   | Driver PCA assembly                                        | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| RM2-7590-000CN | Driver PCA assembly (stapler/stacker)                      | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-7595-000CN | Main controller PCB assembly                               | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |



**Table 2-33 Numerical parts list (continued)**

| Part number    | Description                     | Table and page                                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| RM2-7597-000   | Reverse driver PCA assembly     | <a href="#">Booklet maker finisher main body on page 601</a>   |
| RM2-7597-000CN | Reverse driver PCA assembly     | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| RM2-7604-000CN | Saddle controller PCA assembly  | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| RM2-7742-000CN | Punch controller PCB assembly   | <a href="#">Stapler/stacker finisher main body on page 599</a> |
| VS17258-012CN  | Connector                       | <a href="#">Internal assemblies (4 of 4) on page 581</a>       |
| WG8-5593-000CN | Photo interrupter tlp1242       | <a href="#">Finisher main body (2 of 3) on page 595</a>        |
| XD3-2200-102CN | Pin, dowel                      | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| XD9-0136-000CN | E-ring                          | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |
| XD9-0136-000CN | Assembly, E-ring saddle stapler | <a href="#">Booklet maker saddle assembly on page 605</a>      |
| XG9-0520-000CN | Bearing, ball MF 106ZZS         | <a href="#">Finisher main body (3 of 3) on page 597</a>        |



---

# Index

## A

accessories  
    ordering 552  
    part number 556  
after-service checklist 4  
auto-close assembly  
    removing and replacing 173

## B

background selector (M830 only)  
    removing and replacing 35  
before-service checklist 4  
bin cable cover  
    removing and replacing 317  
booklet maker  
    part number 556  
booklet maker accessory  
    removing and replacing  
        procedures 466  
booklet maker controller PCA  
    removing and replacing 471

## C

cartridge  
    ordering 553  
    part number 553  
cartridge contact assembly  
    removing and replacing 193  
cartridge fan  
    removing and replacing 160  
cartridge-lifter assembly (M806 only)  
    removing and replacing 208  
cartridge-lifter assembly (M830 only)  
    removing and replacing 217  
cartridge-release lever  
    removing and replacing 151  
cautions iii

center right cover, high capacity  
    input (HCI) feeder  
        removing and replacing 278  
clutch (front side)  
    removing and replacing 336  
clutch (rear side)  
    removing and replacing 443  
common driver PCA (booklet maker and stapler/stacker)  
    removing and replacing 454  
control panel (M830 only)  
    removing and replacing 44  
control panel assembly (M806 only)  
    removing and replacing 38  
control-panel base cover  
    removing and replacing 94  
controller fan  
    removing and replacing 164  
controller PCA main  
    removing and replacing 353  
controller PCA, high capacity input (HCI) feeder  
    removing and replacing 299  
conventions, document iii  
cooling-unit assembly  
    removing and replacing 258  
covers  
    front door assembly,  
        removing 104

## D

DC controller (M806 only)  
    removing and replacing 187  
DC controller (M830 only)  
    removing and replacing 190  
delivery switch mount assembly  
    removing and replacing 494  
diagrams 551

## DIMM

    removing and replacing 24  
document conventions iii  
document feeder assembly  
    removing and replacing 141  
document feeder mylar strips  
    removing and replacing 27  
document feeder white backing  
    removing and replacing 30  
document-feeder roller  
    removing and replacing 58  
document-feeder roller and separation pad  
    removing and replacing 60  
drive assembly (M806 only)  
    removing and replacing 196  
drive assembly (M830 only)  
    removing and replacing 199  
driver PCA  
    removing and replacing 228  
drum motor  
    removing and replacing 195  
duplexer  
    removing and replacing 9  
dust collector (stapler/stacker with hole punch)  
    removing and replacing 539

## E

electrostatic discharge (ESD) 2  
entrance upper guide assembly  
    removing and replacing 368  
ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 2

## F

face-down paper-delivery assembly  
    removing and replacing 234

- Face-up tray (output bin)
  - removing and replacing 87
- fax PCA
  - removing and replacing 26
- field-replaceable units (FRUs)
  - replacing 2
- finishing accessories
  - removing and replacing
    - procedures 300
- finishing accessory covers and doors
  - Identifying 305
- folding-motor mount assembly
  - removing and replacing 489
- formatter
  - removing and replacing 12
- formatter cage
  - removing and replacing 252
- front door
  - removing and replacing 330
- front foot cover
  - removing and replacing 344
- front inner cover
  - removing and replacing 106
- FRUs (field-replaceable units)
  - replacing 2
- fuser
  - removing and replacing 10
- fuser bias contact assembly
  - removing and replacing 254
- fuser drive assembly
  - removing and replacing 242

## G

- guide motor assembly
  - removing and replacing 481
- guide sensor assembly
  - removing and replacing 479

## H

- hard disk drive (HDD)
  - removing and replacing 16
- hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M806 only)
  - removing and replacing 88
- hardware integration pocket (HIP) cover (M830 only)
  - removing and replacing 91
- height wall assembly
  - removing and replacing 401

- high capacity input (HCI) feeder
  - center right cover, removing and replacing 278
- controller PCA, removing and replacing 299
- left cover, removing and replacing 277
- left tray automatic close assembly, removing and replacing 292
- left tray lifter drive assembly, removing and replacing 288
- left tray media-level sensor assembly, removing and replacing 290
- left tray pickup assembly, removing and replacing 295
- left tray pickup drive, removing and replacing 285
- left tray pickup motor, removing and replacing 284
- left tray, removing and replacing 273
- lower right cover, removing and replacing 280
- merge assembly, removing and replacing 297
- merge drive assembly, removing and replacing 286
- rear and right-rear corner covers, removing and replacing 274
- removing and replacing 268
- right door assembly, removing and replacing 276
- right tray automatic close assembly, removing and replacing 291
- right tray lifter drive assembly, removing and replacing 287
- right tray media-level sensor assembly, removing and replacing 289
- right tray pickup assembly, removing and replacing 293
- right tray pickup drive, removing and replacing 283

- right tray pickup motor, removing and replacing 282
- right tray, removing and replacing 272
- high-capacity input rollers
  - removing and replacing 70
- high-voltage power supply (M806 only)
  - removing and replacing 182, 184

## I

- inner lower cover
  - removing and replacing 339
- inner side plate assembly
  - removing and replacing 472
- inner upper cover
  - removing and replacing 333
- input accessory
  - accessory 267
- installation 2
  - screws 2
- See also* replacing parts
- interconnect PCA
  - removing and replacing 248
- interface cable
  - removing and replacing 456

## K

- keyboard assembly(M830 only)
  - removing and replacing 49
- knob (booklet maker)
  - removing and replacing 467

## L

- laser scanner
  - cautions for servicing 2
- laser/scanner assembly
  - removing and replacing 231
- left cover, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
  - removing and replacing 277
- left door assembly
  - removing and replacing 116
- left front cover
  - removing and replacing 121
- left rear cover
  - removing and replacing 109
- left top cover
  - removing and replacing 102

- left top cover (M806 only)
    - removing and replacing 102
  - left tray automatic close assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 292
  - left tray lifter drive assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 288
  - left tray media-level sensor assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 290
  - left tray pickup assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 295
  - left tray pickup drive, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 285
  - left tray pickup motor, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 284
  - left tray, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 273
  - low-voltage power supply (M806 only)
    - removing and replacing 177
  - low-voltage power supply (M830 only)
    - removing and replacing 179
  - lower left guide
    - removing and replacing 499
  - Lower lock release handle cover
    - removing and replacing 347
  - lower right cover, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 280
  - lower stepped cover
    - removing and replacing 324
- M**
- major components, finishing accessories 562
  - major components, high capacity input (HCI) 561
  - merge assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 297
  - merge drive assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 286
  - mylar strips
    - replace mylar 28
- N**
- notes iii
- O**
- open/closed stepped cover
    - removing and replacing 321
  - operation tray assembly
    - removing and replacing 419
  - option-connector assembly
    - removing and replacing 263
  - order parts by authorized service providers
    - order parts 552
  - ordering
    - product documents 552
    - supplies and accessories 552
    - toner cartridge 553
- P**
- paper detect holder assembly
    - removing and replacing 417
  - paper face sensor and flag assembly
    - removing and replacing 403
  - paper feed drive assembly
    - removing and replacing 390
  - paper pass assembly (stapler/stacker and booklet maker)
    - removing and replacing 462
  - paper-delivery fan assembly (M830 only)
    - removing and replacing 237
  - paper-pickup assembly
    - removing and replacing 167
  - part number
    - toner cartridge 553
  - part numbers
    - accessories 556
    - replacement parts 553
    - supplies 553
    - toner cartridges 553
  - parts 551
  - parts lists and diagrams
    - covers 572
  - internal assemblies (1 of 4) 574
  - internal assemblies (2 of 4) 576
    - using 556
  - pickup, feed, and separation rollers and pads, remove 57
  - power supply fan
    - removing and replacing 157
  - power switch assembly
    - removing and replacing 247
  - pre-reverse cover
    - removing and replacing 312
  - press motor
    - removing and replacing 450
  - pressure roller assembly
    - removing and replacing 392
  - punch controller PCA
    - removing and replacing 538
  - punch hole assembly (stapler/stacker with hole punch)
    - removing and replacing 545
  - punch inner cover (stapler/stacker with hole punch)
    - removing and replacing 540
  - punch top cover
    - removing and replacing 541
- R**
- rear and right-rear corner covers, high capacity input (HCI) feeder
    - removing and replacing 274
  - rear cover
    - removing and replacing 110, 349
  - rear foot cover
    - removing and replacing 371
  - rear reverse cover
    - removing and replacing 314
  - registration assembly
    - removing and replacing 171
  - registration-jam-removal knob
    - removing and replacing 154
  - related documentation and software
    - order parts 552
  - removal order
    - removing order 4
  - removal strategy
    - removing and replacing 2

remove the booklet maker controller PCA  
booklet maker controller PCA, removing and replacing 471

remove the clutch (front side)  
clutch (front side), removing and replacing 336

remove the clutch (rear side)  
clutch (rear side), removing and replacing 443

remove the common driver PCA (booklet maker and stapler/stacker)  
controller driver PCA (booklet maker and stapler/stacker), removing and replacing 454

remove the delivery switch mount assembly (booklet maker)  
delivery switch mount assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 494

remove the document feeder assembly (M830 only)  
document feeder assembly (M830 only), removing and replacing 141

remove the entrance upper guide assembly  
entrance upper guide assembly, removing and replacing 368

remove the folding-motor mount assembly  
folding-motor mount assembly, removing and replacing 489

remove the guide motor assembly (booklet maker)  
guide motor assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 481

remove the guide sensor assembly (booklet maker)  
guide sensor assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 479

remove the HCI center right cover  
HCI center right cover, removing and replacing 278

remove the HCI controller PCA rear cover, removing and replacing 299

remove the HCI left cover  
left cover, removing and replacing 277

remove the HCI left ray automatic close assembly  
HCI left ray automatic close assembly, removing and replacing 292

remove the HCI left tray lifter drive assembly  
HCI left tray lifter drive assembly, removing and replacing 288

remove the HCI left tray media-level sensor assembly  
left tray media-level sensor assembly, removing and replacing 290

remove the HCI left tray pickup assembly  
HCI left tray pickup, removing and replacing 295

remove the HCI lower right cover rear cover, removing and replacing 280

remove the HCI merge assembly  
merge assembly, removing and replacing 297

remove the HCI merge drive assembly  
HCI merge drive assembly, removing and replacing 286

remove the HCI right door assembly  
right door assembly, removing and replacing 276

remove the HCI right tray automatic close assembly  
HCI right tray automatic close assembly, removing and replacing 291

remove the HCI right tray lifter drive assembly  
HCI right tray lifter drive assembly, removing and replacing 287

remove the HCI right tray media-level sensor assembly  
right tray media-level sensor assembly, removing and replacing 289

Remove the HCI right tray pickup assembly  
HCI right tray pickup assembly, removing and replacing 293

remove the HCI right tray pickup drive  
left tray pickup drive, removing and replacing 284, 285  
right tray pickup drive, removing and replacing 283

remove the HCI right tray pickup motor  
right tray pickup drive, removing and replacing 282

remove the height wall assembly  
height wall assembly, removing and replacing 401

remove the inner side plate assembly (booklet maker)  
inner side plate assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 472

remove the interface cable  
interface cable, removing and replacing 456

remove the lower left guide  
lower left guide, removing and replacing 499

remove the lower stepped cover  
stepped cover lower, removing and replacing 324

remove the main controller PCA  
controller PCA main, removing and replacing 353

remove the operation tray assembly  
operation tray assembly, removing and replacing 420

remove the paper detect holder assembly  
paper detect holder assembly, removing and replacing 417

|                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| remove the paper face sensor and flag assembly<br>paper face sensor and flag assembly, removing and replacing 403                                         | remove the reverse driver PCA<br>reverse driver PCA, removing and replacing 458                                                             | remove the saddle rear end sensor assembly (booklet maker)<br>saddle rear end sensor assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 531 |
| remove the paper feed drive assembly<br>paper feed drive assembly, removing and replacing 390                                                             | remove the right cover (booklet maker PCA)<br>right cover (booklet maker PCA), removing and replacing 470                                   | remove the saddle stapler assembly (booklet maker)<br>saddle stapler assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 497                 |
| remove the paper pass assembly (stapler/stacker and booklet maker)<br>paper pass assembly (stapler/stacker and booklet maker), removing and replacing 462 | remove the saddle assembly (booklet maker)<br>saddle assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 515                                   | remove the scanner assembly<br>scanner assembly, removing and replacing 146                                                               |
| remove the press motor<br>press motor, removing and replacing 450                                                                                         | remove the saddle delivery inner cover, front<br>saddle delivery inner cover front, removing and replacing 501                              | remove the scanner control board (SCB)<br>scanner control board (SCB), removing and replacing 135                                         |
| remove the pressure roller assembly<br>pressure roller assembly, removing and replacing 392                                                               | remove the saddle delivery inner cover, rear<br>saddle delivery inner cover rear, removing and replacing 503                                | remove the scanner front cover<br>scanner front cover, removing and replacing 80                                                          |
| remove the punch controller PCA<br>controller PCA, removing and replacing 538                                                                             | remove the saddle feed assembly<br>saddle feed assembly, removing and replacing 511                                                         | remove the scanner left cover<br>scanner left cover, removing and replacing 76                                                            |
| remove the punch hole assembly (stapler/stacker with hole punch)<br>punch hole assembly (stapler/stacker with hole punch), removing and replacing 545     | remove the saddle feed motor assembly (booklet maker)<br>saddle feed motor assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 485             | remove the scanner right cover<br>scanner right cover, removing and replacing 78                                                          |
| remove the punch inner cover (stapler/stacker with hole punch)<br>punch inner cover (stapler/stacker with hole punch), removing and replacing 540         | remove the saddle guide assembly (booklet maker)<br>saddle guide assembly (booklet maker), removing and replacing 506                       | remove the sensor switch assembly<br>sensor switch assembly, removing and replacing 337                                                   |
| remove the punch top cover<br>punch top cover, removing and replacing 541                                                                                 | remove the saddle motor (stapler/stacker and booklet maker)<br>saddle motor (stapler/stacker and booklet maker), removing and replacing 483 | remove the stack ejection motor<br>stack ejection motor, removing and replacing 446                                                       |
| remove the rear cover<br>rear cover, removing and replacing 349                                                                                           | remove the saddle paper delivery assembly<br>saddle paper delivery assembly, removing and replacing 526                                     | remove the stack upper bin and lower bin<br>lower bin stack, removing and replacing 397                                                   |
| remove the rear foot cover<br>rear foot cover, removing and replacing 371                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                             | upper bin stack, removing and replacing 397                                                                                               |
| remove the return roller assembly<br>return roller assembly, removing and replacing 442                                                                   |                                                                                                                                             | remove the stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide<br>stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide, removing and replacing 375   |
| remove the reverse assembly<br>reverse assembly, removing and replacing 459                                                                               |                                                                                                                                             | remove the staple assembly<br>staple assembly, removing and replacing 413                                                                 |

|                                                                          |     |  |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--|--|
| remove the staple connecting cable                                       |     |  |  |
| staple assembly, removing and replacing                                  | 411 |  |  |
| remove the staple sub assembly                                           |     |  |  |
| staple sub assembly, removing and replacing                              | 408 |  |  |
| remove the swing guide assembly                                          |     |  |  |
| swing guide assembly, removing and replacing                             | 431 |  |  |
| remove the upper delivery guide assembly (booklet maker)                 |     |  |  |
| upper delivery guide assembly, removing and replacing                    | 524 |  |  |
| remove the uppercross member assembly                                    |     |  |  |
| upper crossmember assembly, removing and replacing                       | 378 |  |  |
| removing parts                                                           |     |  |  |
| after-service checklist                                                  | 4   |  |  |
| before-service checklist                                                 | 4   |  |  |
| front door assembly                                                      | 104 |  |  |
| service approach                                                         | 3   |  |  |
| tools, required                                                          | 3   |  |  |
| repair approach                                                          | 3   |  |  |
| replace covers and doors                                                 |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing covers and doors                                  | 72  |  |  |
| replacement parts                                                        |     |  |  |
| part numbers                                                             | 553 |  |  |
| replacing parts                                                          |     |  |  |
| about                                                                    | 2   |  |  |
| after-service checklist                                                  | 4   |  |  |
| before-service checklist                                                 | 4   |  |  |
| screws                                                                   | 2   |  |  |
| service approach                                                         | 3   |  |  |
| tools, required                                                          | 3   |  |  |
| return roller assembly                                                   |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 441 |  |  |
| reverse assembly                                                         |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 459 |  |  |
| reverse driver PCA                                                       |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 458 |  |  |
| right cover                                                              |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 311 |  |  |
| right cover (booklet maker PCA)                                          |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 470 |  |  |
| right door assembly                                                      |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 118 |  |  |
| right door assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder                    |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 276 |  |  |
| right lower cover                                                        |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 128 |  |  |
| right lower front cover                                                  |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 126 |  |  |
| right rear cover                                                         |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 113 |  |  |
| right top cover                                                          |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 98  |  |  |
| right top cover (M806 only)                                              |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 98  |  |  |
| right tray automatic close assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder    |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 291 |  |  |
| right tray lifter drive assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder       |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 287 |  |  |
| right tray media-level sensor assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 289 |  |  |
| right tray pickup assembly, high capacity input (HCI) feeder             |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 293 |  |  |
| right tray pickup drive, high capacity input (HCI) feeder                |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 283 |  |  |
| right tray pickup motor, high capacity input (HCI) feeder                |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 282 |  |  |
| right tray, high capacity input (HCI) feeder                             |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 272 |  |  |
| <b>S</b>                                                                 |     |  |  |
| saddle assembly (booklet maker)                                          |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 514 |  |  |
| saddle delivery inner cover, front                                       |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 501 |  |  |
| saddle delivery inner cover, rear                                        |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 503 |  |  |
| saddle feed assembly                                                     |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 511 |  |  |
| saddle feed motor assembly                                               |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 485 |  |  |
| saddle guide assembly                                                    |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 505 |  |  |
| saddle motor (stapler/stacker and booklet maker)                         |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 483 |  |  |
| saddle output bin assembly                                               |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing procedures                                        | 468 |  |  |
| saddle paper delivery assembly                                           |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 526 |  |  |
| saddle rear end sensor assembly (booklet maker)                          |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 531 |  |  |
| saddle stapler assembly                                                  |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 497 |  |  |
| scanner assembly                                                         |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 146 |  |  |
| scanner back cover                                                       |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 75  |  |  |
| scanner control board (SCB)                                              |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 135 |  |  |
| scanner front cover                                                      |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 80  |  |  |
| scanner left cover                                                       |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 76  |  |  |
| scanner right cover                                                      |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 78  |  |  |
| screwdrivers, required                                                   | 3   |  |  |
| screws                                                                   |     |  |  |
| installing                                                               | 2   |  |  |
| types of                                                                 | 3   |  |  |
| sensor switch assembly                                                   |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 337 |  |  |
| service approach                                                         | 3   |  |  |
| service replacement parts                                                |     |  |  |
| order parts                                                              | 555 |  |  |
| shared finish accessory assemblies                                       |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing procedures                                        | 307 |  |  |
| solid state module (SSM)                                                 |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 16  |  |  |
| stack ejection motor                                                     |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 446 |  |  |
| stack upper bin and lower bin assemblies                                 |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 397 |  |  |
| stack wall upper assembly and upper wall guide                           |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 375 |  |  |
| staple assembly                                                          |     |  |  |
| removing and replacing                                                   | 413 |  |  |



- staple connecting cable
  - removing and replacing 411
- stapler sub assembly
  - removing and replacing 408
- stapler/stacker
  - part number 556
- stapler/stacker and stapler/stacker
  - with hole punch accessories
    - removing and replacing
      - procedures 537
- static, precautions for 2
- supplies
  - ordering 552
  - part numbers 553
- supplies part numbers
  - order parts 553
- swing guide assembly
  - removing and replacing 430

## T

- tag assembly
  - removing and replacing 261
- tips iii
- toner cartridge
  - ordering 553
  - part number 553
  - removing and replacing 5
- toner cartridges
  - part numbers 553
- tools, required 3
- top door assembly
  - removing and replacing 328
- transfer paper-feed assembly
  - removing and replacing 202
- transfer-holder assembly
  - removing and replacing 205
- transfer-roller assembly
  - removing and replacing 8
- Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
  - removing and replacing 84
- Tray 1 rollers
  - removing and replacing 65
- Tray 2 and Tray 3
  - removing and replacing 86
- Tray 2 and Tray 3 rollers
  - removing and replacing 68
- troubleshooting
  - service approach 3

## U

- upper cover lock assembly
  - removing and replacing 309
- upper crossmember assembly
  - removing and replacing 378
- upper delivery guide assembly
  - removing and replacing 524
- upper left cover (M806 only)
  - removing and replacing 122
- upper left cover (M830 only)
  - removing and replacing 124
- upper reverse cover
  - removing and replacing 316
- upper stepped cover
  - removing and replacing 322

## W

- warnings iii
- white backing
  - removing and replacing 31, 37







CZ244-90966

